Workshop Manual

Audi A3 Cabriolet 2015 ➢

General body repairs, exterior

Edition 06.2016

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Repair Group

00 - Technical data
50 - Body - front
55 - Bonnet, rear lid
57 - Front doors, door components, central locking
58 - Rear doors, door components
61 - Convertible roof, hardtop, canopy
63 - Bumpers
64 - Glazing
66 - Exterior equipment

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

All rights reserved.
No reproduction without prior agreement from publisher.

Copyright © 2016 Audi AG, Ingolstadt

Contents

00 - Technical data 1
1 Safety precautions 1
1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system 1
1.2 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test 1
1.3 Safety precautions when working on the cooling system 1
1.4 Safety precautions when working on the hydraulic system 2
2 Notes on repairs 3
2.1 Routing and attaching pipes and wiring 3
2.2 Contact corrosion 3
2.3 Rules for cleanliness 3
2.4 Bonding surfaces for adhesive strips 4
2.5 Self-locking bolts 4
3 Manual operation of convertible roof 5
3.1 General notes 5
50 - Body - front 6
1 Lock carrier 6
1.1 Exploded view - lock carrier 6
1.2 Removing and installing lock carrier 8
1.3 Removing and installing struts 13
1.4 Removing and installing cover for arrester 13
1.5 Removing and installing air duct for radiator 14
1.6 Removing and installing air duct - vehicles with manual gearbox 14
2 Wing 16
2.1 Exploded view - wing 16
2.2 Exploded view - repair set for wing 17
2.3 Removing and installing wing 17
2.4 Removing and installing wing panel brace 20
2.5 Removing and installing closure plate 21
3 Bulkhead 22
3.1 Exploded view - plenum chamber partition panel 22
3.2 Exploded view - plenum chamber cover 23
3.3 Removing and installing plenum chamber cover 23
3.4 Removing and installing plenum chamber partition panel 24
3.5 Removing and installing sealing element 25
55 - Bonnet, rear lid 26
1 Bonnet 26
1.1 Exploded view - bonnet 26
1.2 Exploded view - Bowden cable 28
1.3 Removing and installing bonnet 28
1.4 Adjusting bonnet 29
1.5 Removing and installing hinges 32
1.6 Resetting hinge 34
1.7 Removing and installing striker 35
1.8 Removing and installing gas strut 36
1.9 Releasing gas from gas strut 37
1.10 Removing and installing insulation 37
1.11 Removing and installing impact guard 39
1.12 Removing and installing Bowden cable 40
1.13 Removing and installing arrester 42
1.14 Removing and installing bonnet lock 42

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.15 Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet lock 44
2 Rear lid 47
2.1 Exploded view - rear lid 47
2.2 Removing and installing rear lid 50
2.3 Adjusting rear lid 51
2.4 Removing and installing hinges 54
2.5 Removing and installing rear lid seal 54
2.6 Removing and installing adjusting buffer 55
2.7 Removing and installing gas strut 55
2.8 Releasing gas from gas strut 56
2.9 Removing and installing rear lid lock 56
2.10 Removing and installing cable for rear lid lock 56
2.11 Removing and installing lock cylinder 57
2.12 Removing and installing striker 58
2.13 Removing and installing actuator 58
3 Convertible roof compartment lid 59
3.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid 59
3.2 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment lid 62
3.3 Adjusting convertible roof compartment lid 63
3.4 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment seal 67
3.5 Removing and installing mounting for outer convertible roof compartment seal 68
3.6 Removing and installing hinge for convertible roof compartment lid 68
3.7 Removing and installing adjusting buffer 69
3.8 Removing and installing manual release cable 69
3.9 Removing and installing striker 70
3.10 Removing and installing convertible roof box lid lock motor V222 70
3.11 Removing and installing crash hook for convertible roof compartment lid 71
3.12 Removing and installing trim for convertible roof compartment lid 72
4 Tank flap unit 74
4.1 Exploded view - tank flap unit 74
4.2 Removing and installing tank flap unit 75
4.3 Removing and installing trim panel for tank flap unit 76
4.4 Removing and installing drain hose for tank flap unit 77
4.5 Removing and installing manual release cable 78

57 - Front doors, door components, central locking 79
1 Door 79
1.1 Exploded view - door 79
1.2 Exploded view - door seals 80
1.3 Removing and installing door 80
1.4 Adjusting door 82
1.5 Removing and installing door arrester 85
1.6 Removing and installing inner door seal 86
1.7 Removing and installing outer door seal 88
2 Door components 92
2.1 Exploded view - window regulator 92
2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock 93
2.3 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips 96
2.4 Removing and installing window regulator 96
2.5 Removing and installing window regulator motor 97
2.6 Removing and installing microswitch for lowering window E621 / E622 98
2.7 Removing and installing door handle 99
2.8 Removing and installing door handle trim 100
2.9 Removing and installing mounting bracket 101
2.10 Removing and installing operating cable for exterior door handle 102

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.11 Removing and installing lock cylinder . . . 104
2.12 Removing and installing cap for lock cylinder . . . 104
2.13 Removing and installing housing . . . 105
2.14 Removing and installing door lock . . . 105
2.15 Removing and installing cover for door lock . . . 106
2.16 Removing and installing striker . . . 107
2.17 Removing and installing operating cable for interior door handle . . . 107
2.18 Removing and installing inner door cover . . . 108
2.19 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip . . . 108
2.20 Removing and installing outer window slot trim strip . . . 110

3 Central locking system . . . 112
3.1 Overview of fitting locations - central locking system . . . 112
3.2 Removing and installing driver door control unit J386 and front passenger door control unit J387 . . . 113
3.3 Removing and installing control unit with rear driver side window regulator motor J1016 and control unit with rear passenger side window regulator motor J1017 . . . 113
3.4 Removing and installing interface control unit for vehicle location system J843 . . . 114
3.5 Removing and installing bonnet contact switch F266 . . . 114
3.6 Removing and installing tank filler flap locking motor V155 . . . 115

58 - Rear doors, door components . . . 116

1 Door components . . . 116
1.1 Exploded view - window regulator . . . 116
1.2 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips . . . 117
1.3 Removing and installing window regulator . . . 117
1.4 Removing and installing window regulator motor . . . 119
1.5 Removing and installing mounting for side window . . . 120
1.6 Removing and installing inner cover . . . 121
1.7 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip . . . 122
1.8 Removing and installing outer window slot trim strip . . . 123

61 - Convertible roof, hardtop, canopy . . . 125

1 Convertible roof . . . 125
1.1 Exploded view - convertible roof . . . 125
1.2 Exploded view - main mounting for convertible roof . . . 127
1.3 Exploded view - locking mechanism for convertible roof . . . 128
1.4 Removing and installing convertible roof . . . 129
1.5 Removing and installing retaining plate for convertible roof . . . 134
1.6 Removing and installing convertible roof locking mechanism . . . 135
1.7 Removing and installing locking element . . . 135
1.8 Removing and installing convertible roof lock motor V223 . . . 136
1.9 Removing and installing drive unit for convertible roof locking mechanism . . . 136
1.10 Service position of convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid . . . 137
1.11 Manual operation . . . 138

2 Convertible roof cover . . . 142
2.1 Exploded view - insulation and convertible roof headliner . . . 142
2.2 Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables, convertible roof headliner . . . 143
2.3 Removing and installing convertible roof cover . . . 145
2.4 Removing and installing tensioning cable for convertible roof cover . . . 149
2.5 Removing and installing guide strap for convertible roof cross strut . . . 150
2.6 Removing and installing convertible roof headliner . . . 154

3 Attachments . . . 158
3.1 Exploded view - convertible roof seals . . . 158
3.2 Removing and installing convertible roof seals . . . 159
3.3 Removing and installing convertible roof trim . . . 161

4 Hydraulic system . . . 163

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.1 Exploded view - hydraulic system . . . 163
4.2 Exploded view - motor and fluid reservoir for hydraulic pump . . . 165
4.3 Exploded view - hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof . . . 166
4.4 Exploded view - hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid . . . 167
4.5 Removing and installing hydraulic pump . . . 167
4.6 Removing and installing hydraulic pump motor . . . 168
4.7 Removing and installing hydraulic fluid reservoir . . . 170
4.8 Checking fluid level in hydraulic system . . . 171
4.9 Filling and bleeding the hydraulic system . . . 171
4.10 Removing and installing power operated convertible roof valve N272 / N341 / N342 . . . 174
4.11 Removing and installing hydraulic line . . . 174
4.12 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinders . . . 177

5 Electrical and electronic components . . . 180
5.1 Exploded view - convertible roof actuation button . . . 180
5.2 Removing and installing convertible roof actuation control unit J256 . . . 183
5.3 Removing and installing switches . . . 184
5.4 Removing and installing permanent magnets . . . 191

63 - Bumpers . . . 195

1 Bumper (front) . . . 195
1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover . . . 195
1.2 Exploded view - impact bar . . . 201
1.3 Removing and installing bumper cover . . . 202
1.4 Adjusting bumper cover . . . 205
1.5 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting . . . 207
1.6 Removing and installing impact bar . . . 207
1.7 Removing and installing attachments . . . 210

2 Bumper (rear) . . . 222
2.1 Exploded view - bumper cover . . . 222
2.2 Exploded view - impact bar . . . 227
2.3 Removing and installing bumper cover . . . 228
2.4 Removing and installing impact bar . . . 230
2.5 Removing and installing attachments . . . 232

64 - Glazing . . . 235

1 Notes on repairs . . . 235
1.1 Minimum drying times for flush-bonded windows . . . 235
1.2 Repairing windows . . . 235
1.3 Notes on installing flush-bonded windows . . . 236
1.4 Preparing undamaged windows for installation . . . 239
1.5 Preparing new windows for installation . . . 239
1.6 Preparing body flange for installation . . . 241
1.7 Cleaning off adhesive sealant . . . 241

2 Windscreen . . . 242
2.1 Exploded view - windscreen . . . 242
2.2 Removing and installing windscreen . . . 243

3 Side windows . . . 248
3.1 Exploded view - rear side window . . . 248
3.2 Removing and installing rear side window . . . 248
3.3 Adjusting rear side window . . . 249

4 Door windows . . . 256
4.1 Exploded view - front door window . . . 256
4.2 Removing and installing front door window . . . 256
4.3 Adjusting front door window . . . 257

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

66 - Exterior equipment 264
1 Radiator grille/front trim panel 264
1.1 Exploded view - radiator grille 264
1.2 Removing and installing radiator grille 267
2 Strips / trim panels / extensions 271
2.1 Exploded view - trim strip and covers 271
2.2 Exploded view - trim panel for A-pillar 274
2.3 Exploded view - sill panel trim 275
2.4 Exploded view - side member trim 276
2.5 Exploded view - heat shield 277
2.6 Removing and installing trim strip 278
2.7 Removing and installing trim panel for A-pillar 281
2.8 Removing and installing sill panel trim 281
2.9 Removing and installing side member trim 283
2.10 Removing and installing heat shield for floor 286
3 Noise insulation 290
3.1 Exploded view - noise insulation 290
3.2 Removing and installing noise insulation 291
4 Underbody trim 292
4.1 Exploded view - underbody trim 292
4.2 Exploded view - underbody struts 293
4.3 Removing and installing underbody trim 294
4.4 Removing and installing tunnel cross-piece 294
4.5 Removing and installing diagonal struts 295
5 Exterior mirrors 296
5.1 Exploded view - exterior mirror 296
5.2 Removing and installing mirror glass 297
5.3 Removing and installing mirror adjustment unit 298
5.4 Removing and installing mirror trim 298
5.5 Removing and installing cover for mirror 299
5.6 Removing and installing exterior mirror 299
6 Wheel housing liners 301
6.1 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front) 301
6.2 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (rear) 302
6.3 Removing and installing wheel housing liner (front) 303
6.4 Removing and installing wheel housing liner (rear) 304
7 Model badges and brand emblems 307
7.1 Exploded view - model badges and brand emblems 307
7.2 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on rear 308
7.3 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on side 309
7.4 General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems 309
7.5 Removing and installing model badges and emblems for radiator grille 310
8 Towing bracket 313
8.1 Exploded view - towing bracket 313
8.2 Removing and installing trailer detector control unit J345 313

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

00 – Technical data

1 Safety precautions

(ARL004687; Edition 06.2016)

⇒ “1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system”, page 1

⇒ “1.2 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test”, page 1

⇒ “1.3 Safety precautions when working on the cooling system”, page 1

⇒ “1.4 Safety precautions when working on the hydraulic system”, page 2

1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system

Engine can start unexpectedly - risk of injury!

On vehicles with activated start/stop system, the engine may start automatically on demand. A message in the instrument cluster indicates whether the start/stop system is activated.

– To deactivate start/stop system: Switch off ignition.

1.2 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Risk of injury if test equipment is not secured

If an accident occurs and the front passenger's airbag is triggered, test equipment which is not secured adequately may be catapulted through the vehicle with potentially serious consequences.

– Secure test equipment on the rear seat.

Or:

– Have a second mechanic operate test equipment on the rear seat.

1.3 Safety precautions when working on the cooling system

Danger of scalding due to hot coolant

The cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Danger of scalding due to hot steam and hot coolant.

– Wear protective gloves.

– Wear safety goggles.

– Dissipate the pressure by covering coolant expansion tank cap with a cloth and opening it carefully.

1.4 Safety precautions when working on the hydraulic system

When performing repairs on vehicles with a hydraulic system, note the following:

WARNING

Risk of injury to persons and/or damage to vehicle.

- *When performing work, always secure convertible roof mechanism to prevent unintentional opening and closing.*

- The hydraulic system is self-bleeding and maintenance-free.
- When renewing the hydraulic cylinder or hoses, it is NOT necessary to top up the hydraulic fluid.
- The system contains enough hydraulic fluid to ensure that the fluid level does not fall to the "Min" mark.
- If work has to be performed due to a loss of hydraulic fluid, check and, if necessary, correct the fluid level before operating the convertible roof.

WARNING

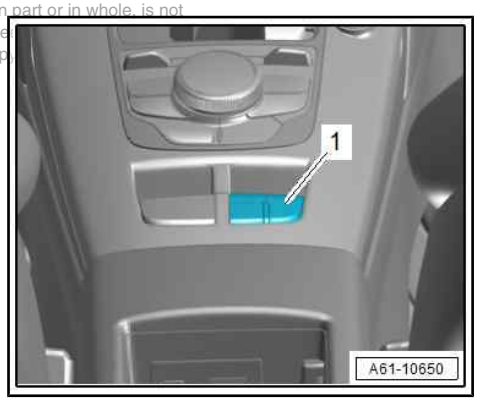
Risk of injury due to pressurised hydraulic system.

- *The hydraulic pressure in the system must be released before working on the convertible roof system.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

– With ignition switched off, press and hold convertible roof actuation button - E137- -item 1- for approx. 5 seconds.

• This releases the pressure in the hydraulic system.



2 Notes on repairs

⇒ “2.1 Routing and attaching pipes and wiring”, page 3

⇒ “2.2 Contact corrosion”, page 3

⇒ “2.3 Rules for cleanliness”, page 3

⇒ “2.4 Bonding surfaces for adhesive strips ”, page 4

⇒ “2.5 Self-locking bolts”, page 4

2.1 Routing and attaching pipes and wiring

Make sketches or take photographs when unfastening or removing and installing hydraulic and pneumatic lines or electrical wires. This ensures that you can re-install them at the original location.

2.2 Contact corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if unsuitable fasteners (bolts, nuts, washers etc.) are used on the vehicle.

For this reason, only fasteners with a special surface coating are fitted.

In addition, all rubber or plastic parts and all adhesives are made of non-conductive materials.

Should you have any doubts whether certain parts can be re-used, use new parts (refer to Electronic parts catalogue).

Please note:

- We recommend using genuine replacement parts only, as these have been checked and are compatible with aluminium.
- We recommend using Audi Genuine Accessories.
- Damage caused by contact corrosion is not covered by the warranty.

2.3 Rules for cleanliness

Caution

Risk of damage to paintwork.

- *Hydraulic fluid damages the paintwork.*
- *For this reason it is important to immediately remove any hydraulic fluid from painted surfaces.*

Even slight contamination can cause faults. Therefore it is important to observe the following rules for cleanliness when working on the hydraulic system:

- Thoroughly clean connection points and the surrounding areas before opening the connection.
- Before opening the hydraulic system, open filler plug on fluid reservoir to equalise the pressure and close it again with specified torque.
- After all repairs in which the hydraulic system is opened, check the hydraulic fluid level and top up if necessary.
- Immediately seal open lines and connections with clean plugs, e.g. from engine bung set - VAS 6122- .
- Place removed components on a clean surface and cover them. Use foil or paper. Use only lint-free cloths!

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Carefully cover / seal opened components if repairs are not performed immediately.
- Only install clean components; replacement parts must not be removed from their packaging until just before installation.
- Place containers, plastic foil or cloths under connections to be opened, so that no hydraulic fluid comes into contact with painted surfaces.
- Do not work with compressed air when the system is open. If possible, do not move the vehicle.
- Protect unplugged connectors against dirt and moisture; connectors must be dry when they are plugged in.

2.4 Bonding surfaces for adhesive strips

- The vehicle must be at room temperature before fitting e.g. self-adhesive covers or door seals with adhesive strips etc.
- Bonding surfaces on the body must be free of dust and grease.
- Clean bonding surfaces with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .
- Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- to bonding surfaces on body using applicator - D 009 500 25- and allow to flash off.
- Heat bonding surfaces with a hot air blower to approx. 40°C.
- After installation, press covers attached with adhesive strips on again using a roller.
- Subsequently, check that components are attached securely by pulling them with your hand.

Processing, copy, duplication or forwarding to third parties of this document, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5 Self-locking bolts

If bolts secured with microencapsulation have been removed, they must be renewed, and the threaded holes must be cleaned with a suitable tap.

3 Manual operation of convertible roof

⇒ “3.1 General notes”, page 5

3.1 General notes

- If there is a malfunction, the convertible roof can be closed by hand after first checking whether the overload protection is active ⇒ page 138 .
- If the overload protection is not active, the following steps must be performed to close the convertible roof ⇒ page 139 .
- It is advisable to have a second person help you when opening the convertible roof compartment lid and when raising and closing the convertible roof.

WARNING

Risk of injury.

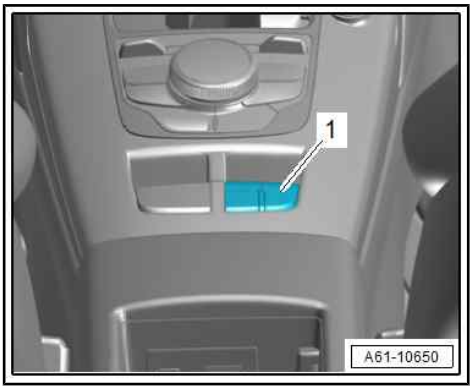
- *While you are closing the convertible roof, the ignition must be switched off the entire time.*
- *When raising the convertible roof, keep your hands away from the convertible roof linkage or other moving parts to avoid trapping your hands.*
- *Never drive the vehicle if the convertible roof is not properly locked in position at the windscreen frame.*
- *There is a risk of the convertible roof being opened by the air stream while driving; this can lead to injuries or cause damage to the vehicle.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Risk of injury if convertible roof compartment lid is not completely open.

- *In addition, the hydraulic pressure in the system must be released before working on the convertible roof system.*
- *Reason: After approx. 6 minutes, the convertible roof control unit abruptly releases the hydraulic pressure in the system, which could cause the convertible roof compartment lid to close suddenly.*
- *The hydraulic pressure must be released before performing any further work.*



– With ignition switched off, press and hold convertible roof actuation button - E137- -item 1- for approx. 5 seconds.

• This releases the pressure in the hydraulic system.

50 – Body - front

1 Lock carrier

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - lock carrier”, page 6

⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing lock carrier”, page 8

⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing struts”, page 13

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing cover for arrester”, page 13

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing air duct for radiator”, page 14

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing air duct - vehicles with manual gearbox”, page 14

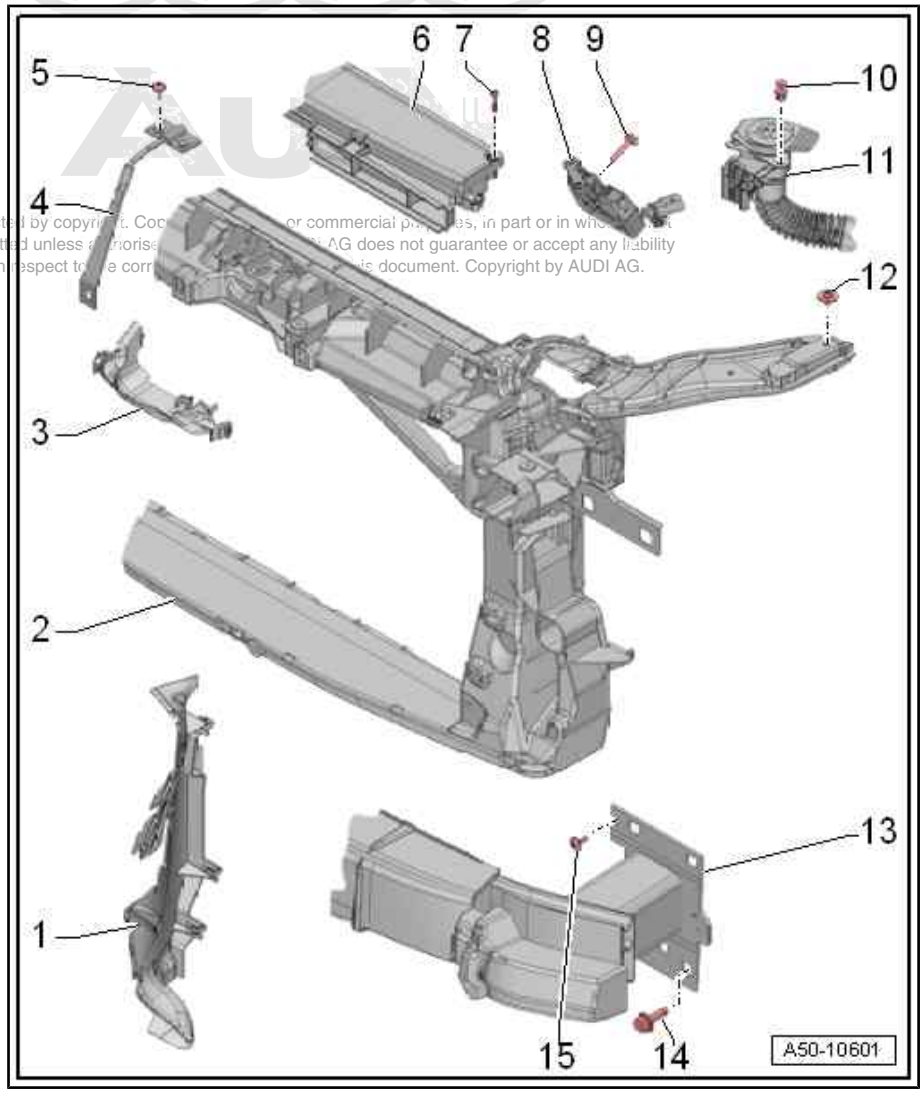
1.1 Exploded view - lock carrier

Exploded view - lock carrier ⇒ page 6

Exploded view - air duct for manual gearbox, equipment version ⇒ page 7

Exploded view - lock carrier struts ⇒ page 7

Exploded view - lock carrier



1 - Air duct

- ❑ For radiator
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 14

2 - Lock carrier

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 8

3 - Cover

- ❑ For arrester
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 13

4 - Retaining bracket

- ❑ For bonnet release lever

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 42

6 - Air duct

- ❑ For air cleaner housing

7 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 23 ; Air cleaner; Exploded view - air cleaner housing or ⇒ Rep. gr. 24 ; Air cleaner; Exploded view - air cleaner housing

8 - Bonnet lock

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Tightening torque
  ⇒ page 42

10 - Fastener

11 - Filler neck

- ❑ For washer fluid reservoir

12 - Bolt

- ❑ 10 Nm

13 - Impact bar

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 201

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 201

15 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 201

Exploded view - air duct for manual gearbox, equipment version

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

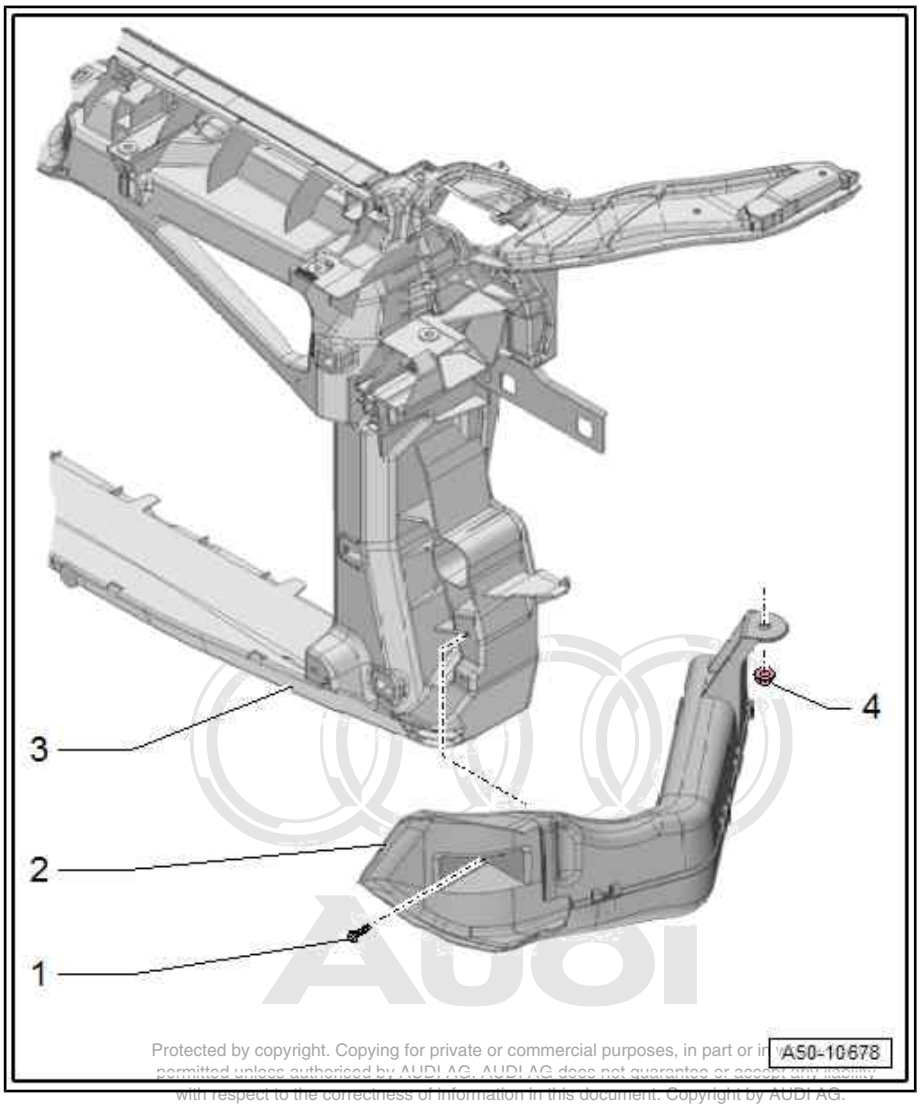
2 - Air duct

- ❑ For manual gearbox
- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ page 14

3 - Lock carrier

4 - Nut

- ❑ 16 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Exploded view - lock carrier struts

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

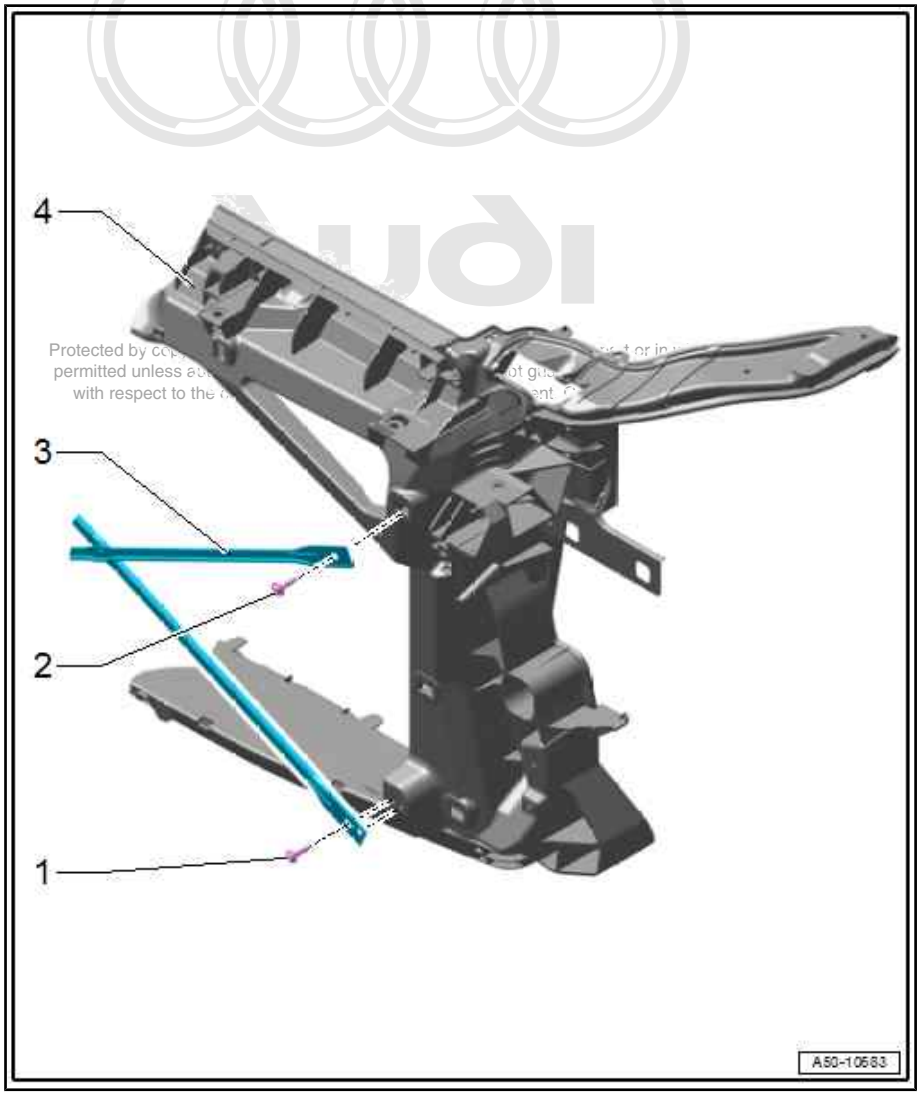
2 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

3 - Struts

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 13

4 - Lock carrier

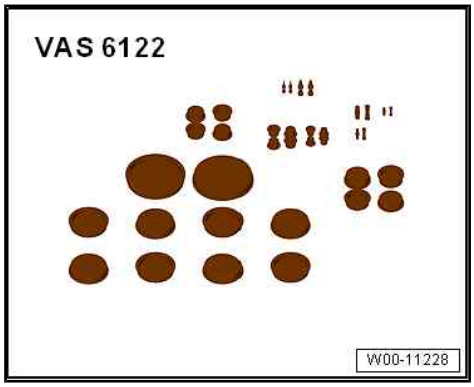


1.2 Removing and installing lock carrier

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 13).

Special tools and workshop equipment required

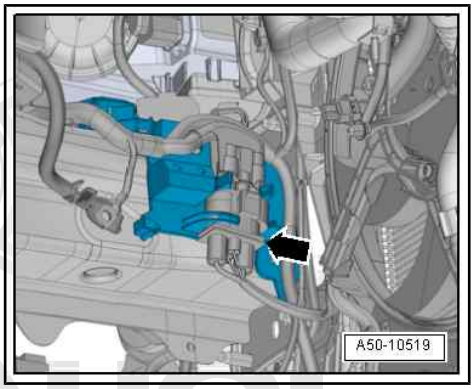
♦ Engine bung set - VAS 6122-



Removing

– Discharge refrigerant circuit ⇒ Air conditioner with refrigerant R134a .

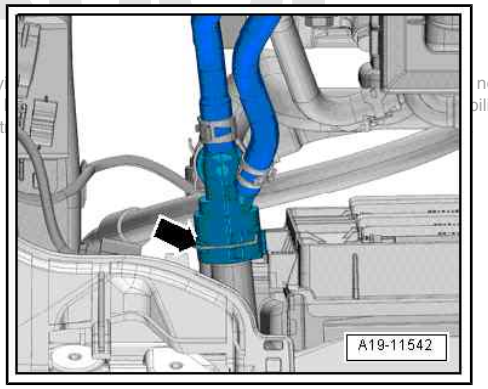
– Detach refrigerant lines from condenser ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Refrigerant circuit; Detaching and attaching refrigerant lines at condenser .
– Drain coolant ⇒ Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Draining and filling cooling system .
– Remove headlight ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Headlights; Removing and installing headlights .
– Unplug electrical connector -arrow-.



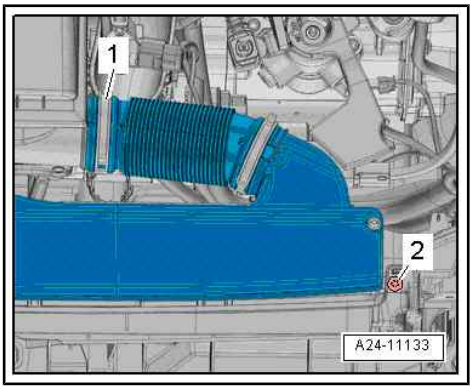
Vehicles with 1.4 ltr. TFSI engine:

– Lift retaining clip -arrow- and disconnect coolant hose (top right) from water radiator for charge air cooling circuit.

Protected by copyright. Copy not permitted unless authorised with respect to the correct bility

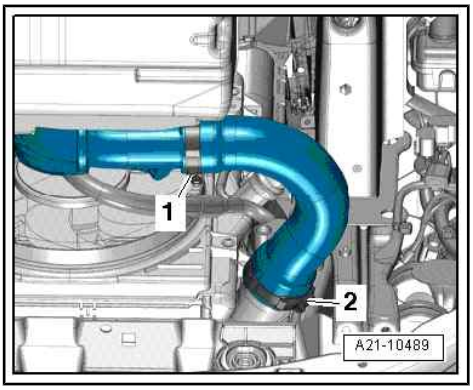


– Unfasten hose clip -1- and detach air hose.
– Unscrew bolt -2- (left and right).
– Unclip cowl at lock carrier and detach.

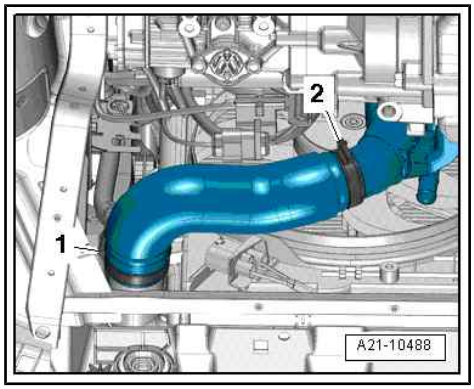


Vehicles with 1.8 ltr./2.0 ltr. TFSI engine:

– Unfasten hose clip -2- and detach air hose (left-side) from charge air cooler.
– Seal open lines and connections with clean plugs from engine bung set - VAS 6122- .

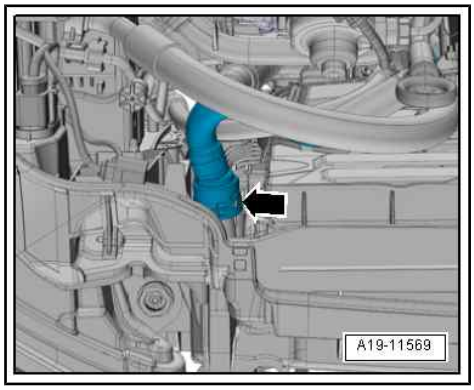


– Unfasten hose clip -1- and detach air hose (right-side) from charge air cooler.
– Seal open lines and connections with clean plugs from engine bung set - VAS 6122- .

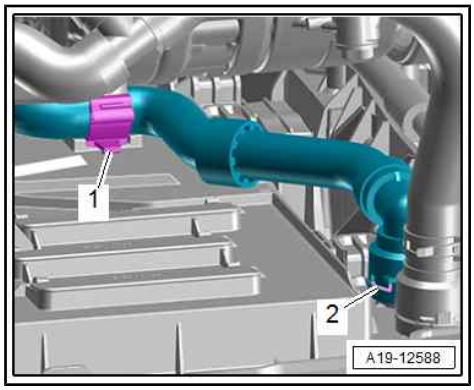


Vehicles with 1.6 ltr./2.0 ltr. TDI engine:

– Version 1: Lift retaining clip -arrow- and disconnect coolant hose (top right) from water radiator for charge air cooling circuit.

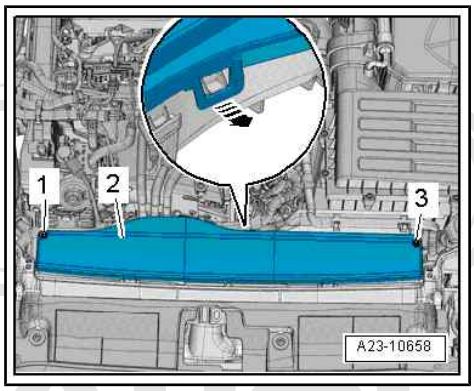


– Version 2: Lift retaining clip -2- and disconnect coolant hose (bottom right) from water radiator for charge air cooling circuit.
– Move coolant hose -1- clear at retainer.



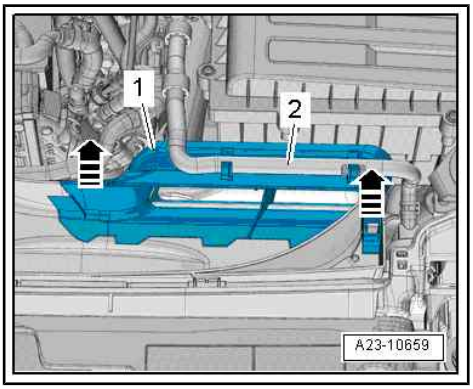
Vehicles with 1.8 ltr./2.0 ltr. TFSI engine and vehicles with 1.6 ltr./ 2.0 ltr. TDI engine:

– Remove bolts -1 and 3-.
– Release catches -arrow- and detach cover -2-.

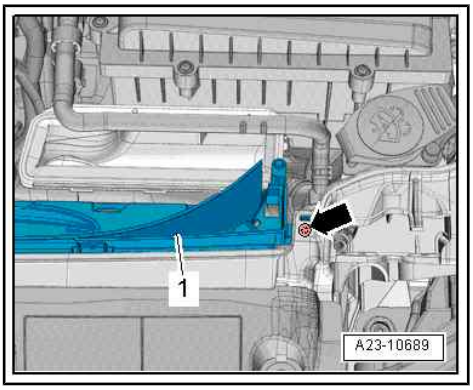


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Move coolant hose -2- clear.
– Release catches -arrows- and detach cowl (top section) -1-.

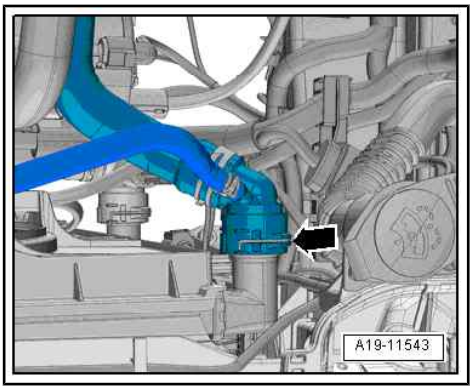


– Unscrew bolt -arrow- (left and right).
– Unclip and detach cowl (bottom section) -1-.



All vehicles (continued):

– Lift retaining clip -arrow- and disconnect coolant hose (top left) from radiator.



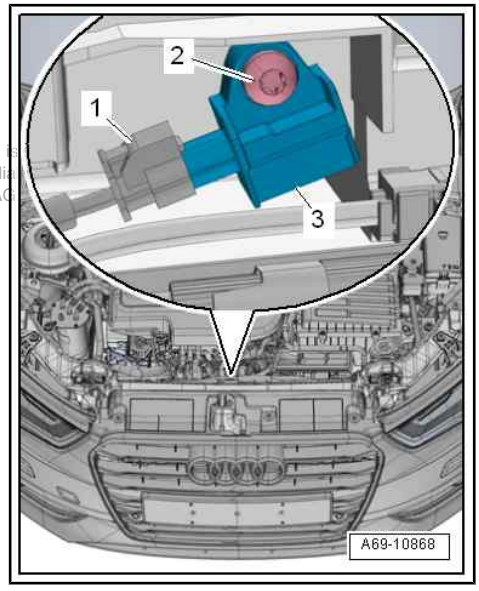
WARNING

Pyrotechnic components may be triggered inadvertently.

Risk of injury.

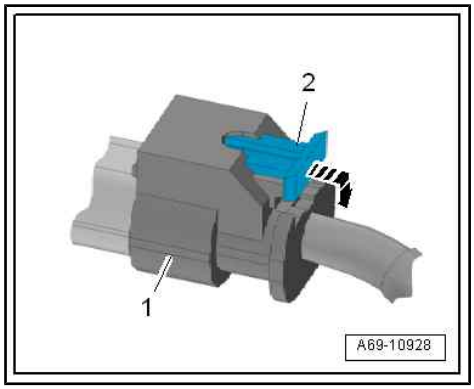
- ***Discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate.***

– Unplug electrical connectors at bonnet locks (left and right) and move clear.
– Detach bonnet lock cable at coupling unit and move clear at lock carrier ⇒ page 28 .
– Unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor -3-.

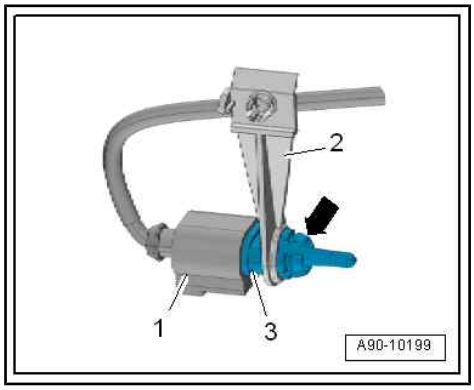


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

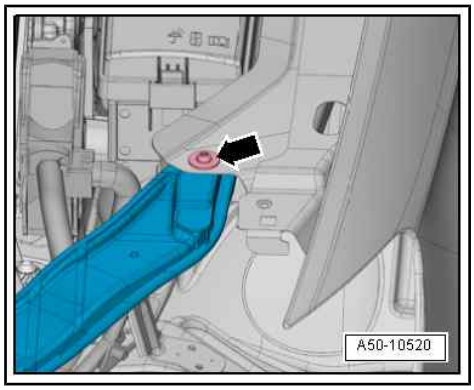
– To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.



– Unplug electrical connector -1- at ambient temperature sensor - G17- -item 3-.
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector for adaptive cruise control unit.
– Move electrical wiring harness clear.

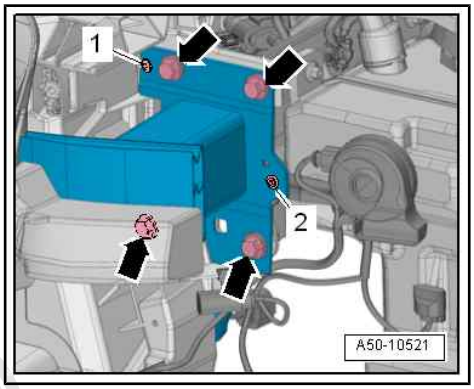


– Unscrew bolt -arrow- (left and right).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew bolt -2- and detach horn with bracket.
– Have a second mechanic hold lock carrier in position and unscrew bolts -arrows-.
– Detach lock carrier with the help of a second mechanic.
– If lock carrier is to be renewed, also remove the following components:



♦ Condenser ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Refrigerant circuit; Removing and installing condenser
♦ Impact bar ⇒ page 207
♦ Bonnet lock ⇒ page 42

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Fill with coolant ⇒ Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Draining and filling cooling system .

Tightening torques

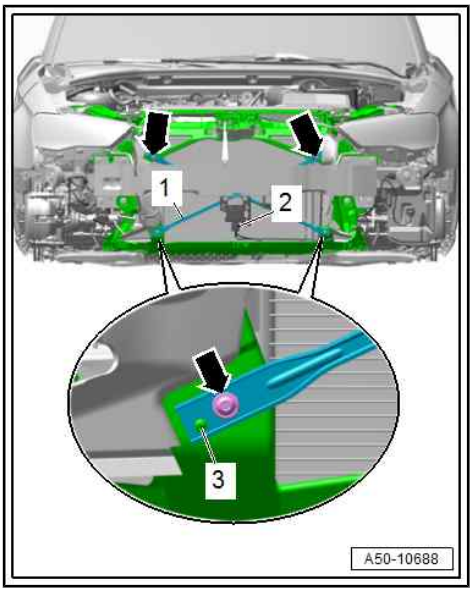
♦ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - lock carrier”, page 6
♦ ⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - impact bar”, page 201
♦ Horn; Exploded view - horn ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Horn; Exploded view - horn
♦ ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Refrigerant circuit

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Removing and installing struts

Removing

– Remove bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 202 .
– Vehicles from model year 2017 onwards: Remove air duct (left-side) for radiator ⇒ page 14 .
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Unfasten struts -1- from mountings -3- and remove downwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - lock carrier”, page 6 .

1.4 Removing and installing cover for arrester

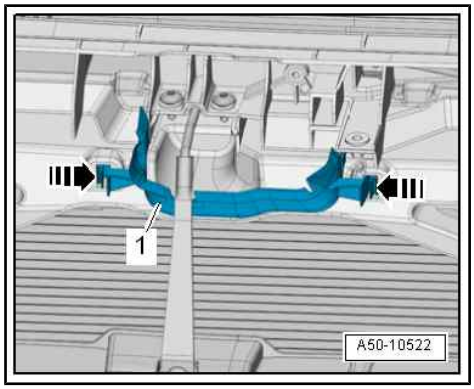
Removing

– Remove bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 202 .

– Release retaining tabs -arrows-.
– Remove cover -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



1.5 Removing and installing air duct for radiator

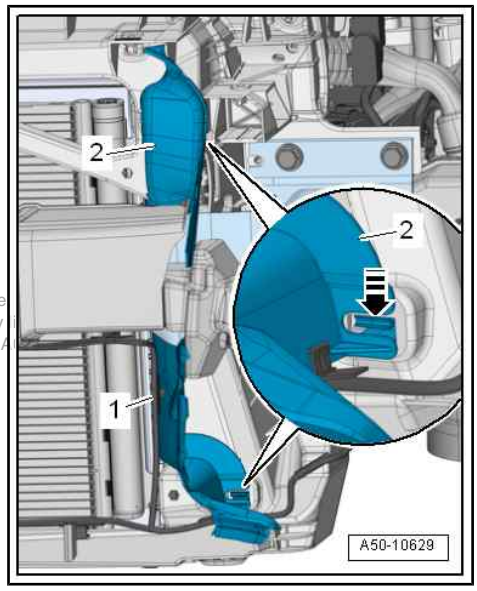
Removing

– Remove bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 202 .
– Move electrical wiring harness -1- clear.
– Release retaining tabs -arrow-.
– Swivel cowl -2- towards centre of vehicle and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI A

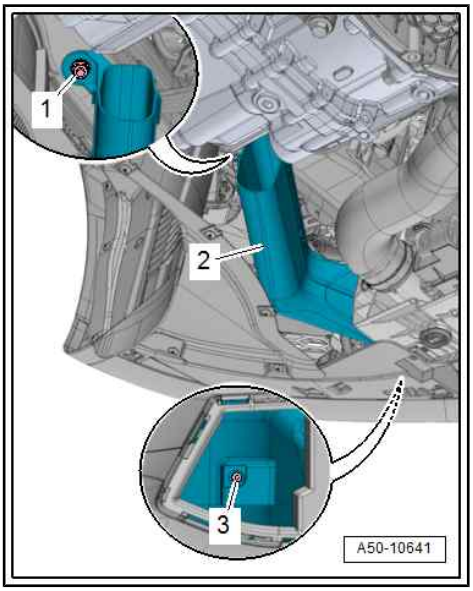


1.6 Removing and installing air duct - vehicles with manual gearbox

Removing

– Remove air intake grille ⇒ page 210 .

– Remove bolt -3-.
– Remove noise insulation ⇒ page 291 .
– Unscrew nut -1-.
– Take out air duct -2- towards rear.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - lock carrier”, page 6 .

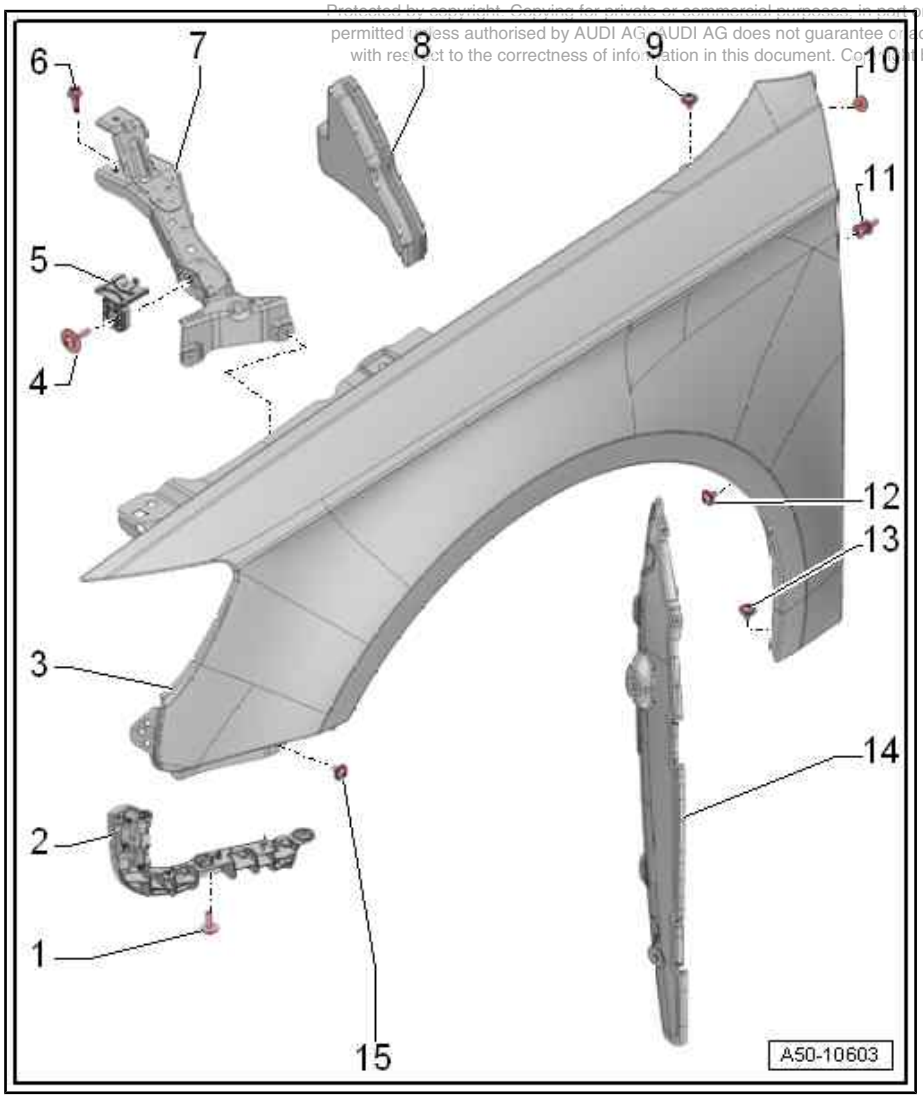
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Wing

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - wing”, page 16
⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - repair set for wing”, page 17
⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing wing”, page 17
⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing wing panel brace”, page 20
⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing closure plate”, page 21

2.1 Exploded view - wing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

2 - Mounting
- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ For securing headlight
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 207

3 - Wing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 17
- ❑ Repair set ⇒ page 17

4 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Headlights

5 - Mounting
- ❑ For headlight

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

7 - Bracket (bottom)
- ❑ For wing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 20

8 - Sealing piece
- ❑ Self-adhesive; on inside of wing

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 8 Nm

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm

11 - Spreader rivet
- ❑ 2x

12 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

13 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

14 - Closure plate

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 21

15 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

2.2 Exploded view - repair set for wing

1 - Bracket (front)

- ❑ Preparing for installation ⇒ page 19

2 - Pop rivet

- ❑ 4x

3 - Wing

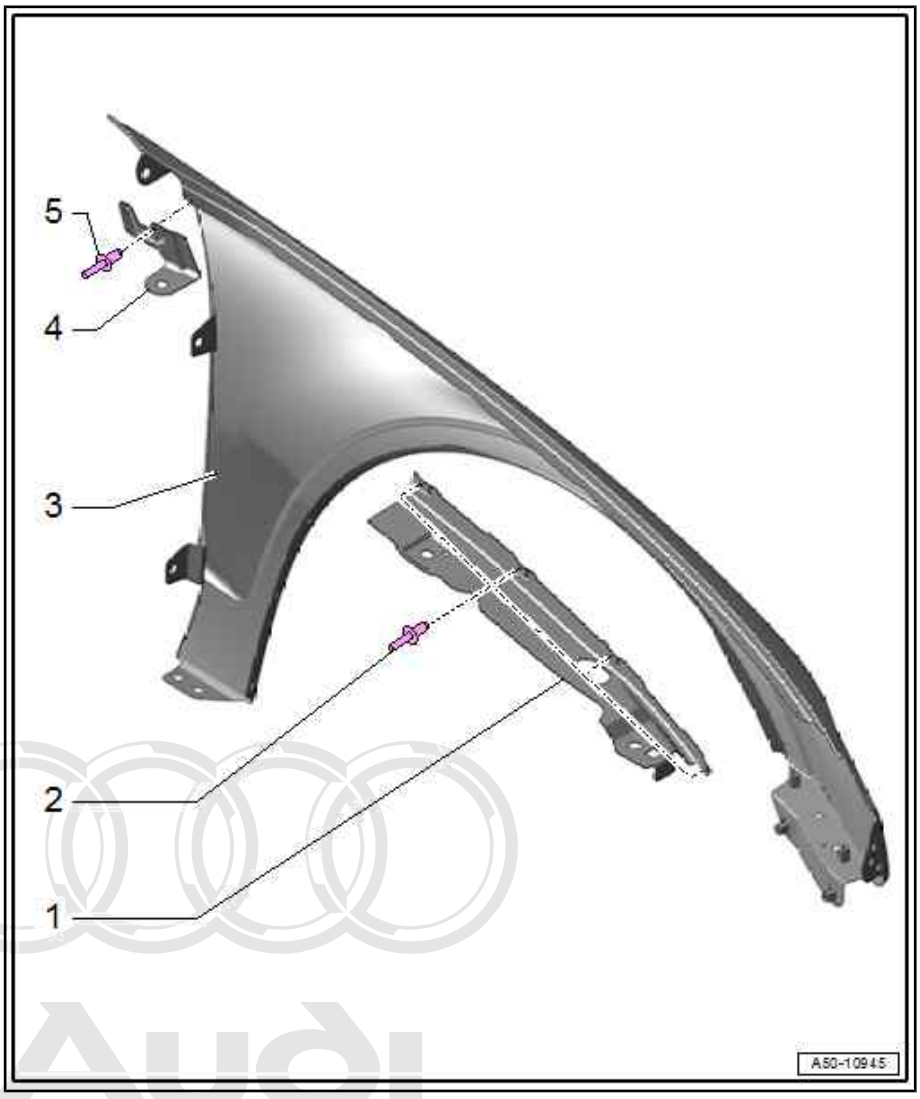
- ❑ Preparing for installation ⇒ page 19

4 - Bracket (rear)

- ❑ Preparing for installation ⇒ page 19

5 - Pop rivet

- ❑ 2x

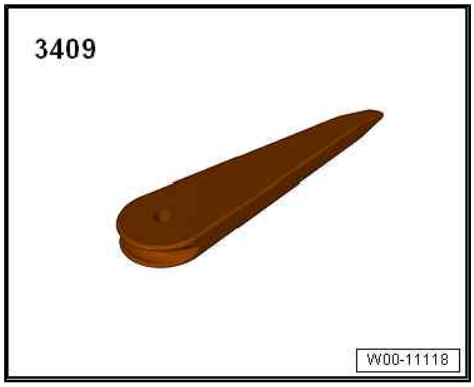


2.3 Removing and installing wing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

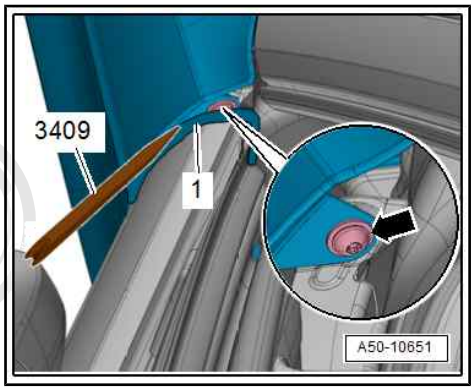
– Open front door.

– Press top section of closure plate -1- to side using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Remove bolt -arrow-.

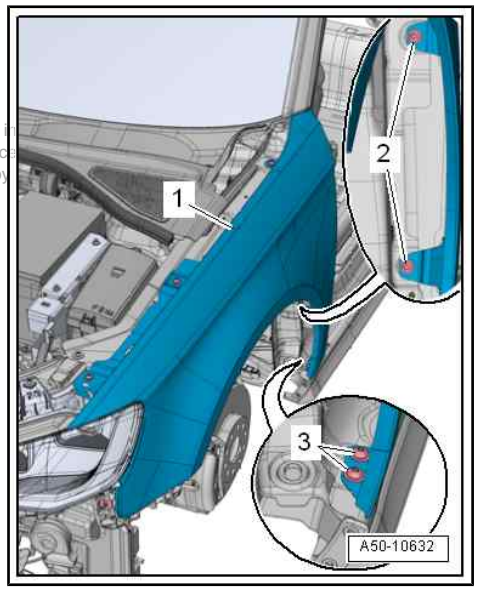
– Remove bumper cover mounting ⇒ page 207 .

– If fitted, remove insulation for wing.



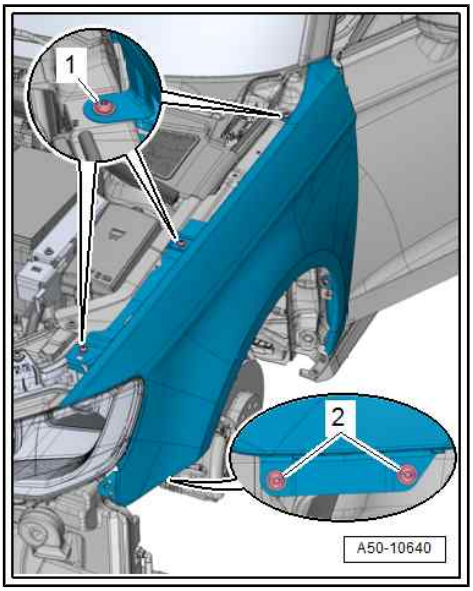
– Remove bolts -2 and 3-.

– Remove sealing element ⇒ page 25 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or i
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acc
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

– Remove bolts -1 and 2-.
– Detach wing panel.



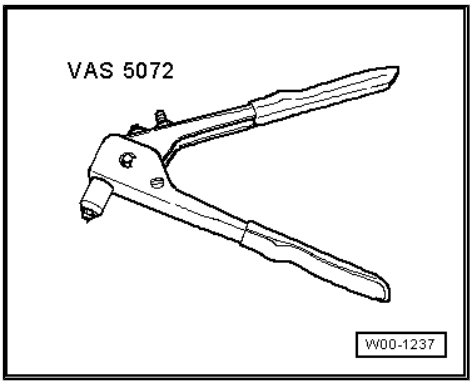
Preparing wing for installation

Note

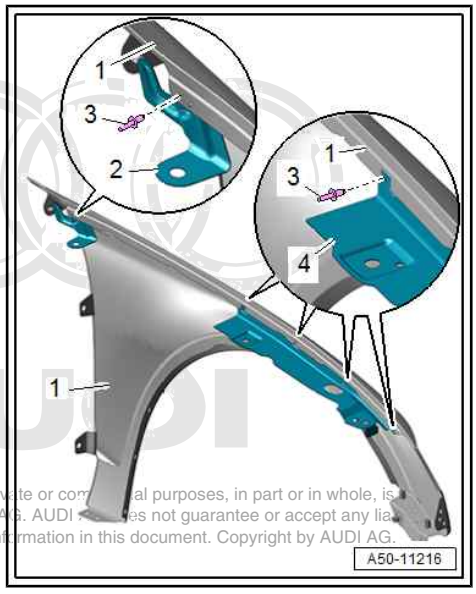
The wing panel can only be ordered in individual parts and must be prepared for installation as follows.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072-



♦ Drill
♦ Pop rivets ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
– Rivet brackets -2 and 4- onto wing panel -1- with pop rivets -3-.
• The brackets must be positioned behind the edge of the wing.



Installing

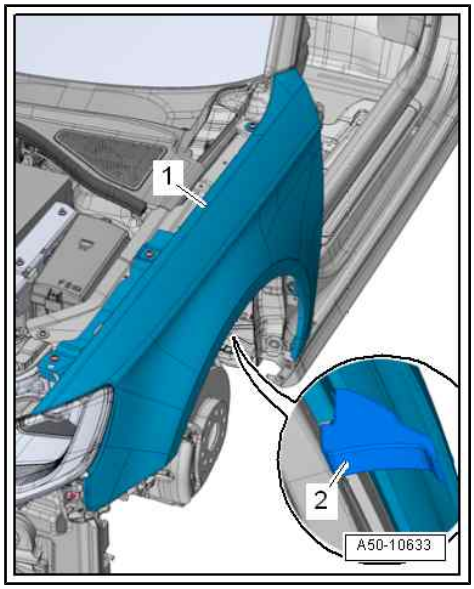
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Fit sealing piece -2- in wing panel -1- close to centre securing bolt.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - wing”, page 16



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4 Removing and installing wing panel brace

Removing

– Remove wheel housing liner (front) ⇒ page 303 .

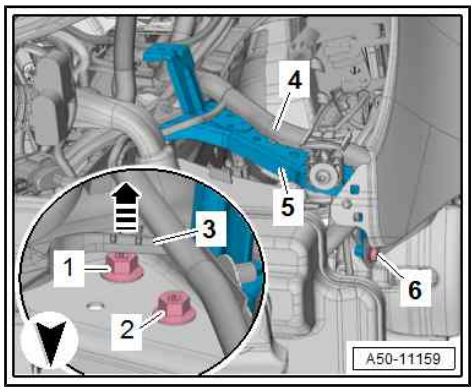
– Remove headlight ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Headlights; Removing and installing headlights .

– On vehicles with TDI engine, unfasten fuel filter and place to one side ⇒ Fuel supply system, diesel engines; Rep. gr. 20 ; Fuel filter; Removing and installing fuel filter .

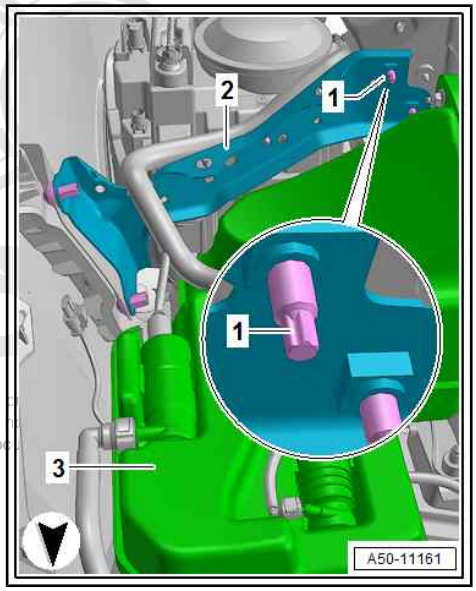
– Move electrical wiring harness -4- clear at wing panel brace -5-.

– Lift duct -3- slightly -arrow- and loosen bolt -1-.

– Remove bolts -2 and 6-.



– Working from underneath, unscrew bolt -1- in clockwise direction using Torx spanner E5.
– Remove wing panel brace -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Working from underneath, tighten bolts ⇒ Item 6 (page 16) in anti-clockwise direction to specified torque.

Tightening torques

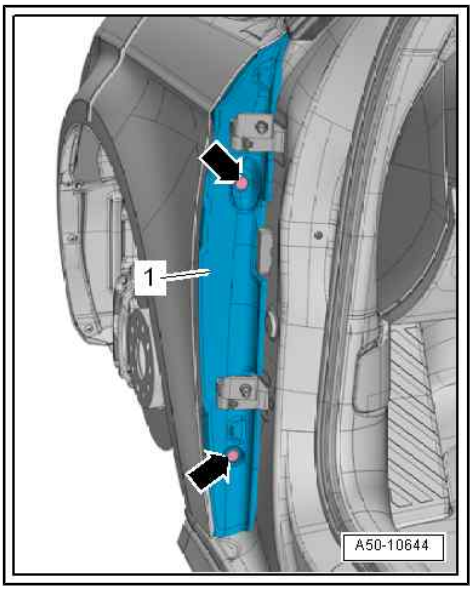
◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - wing”, page 16

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this do

2.5 Removing and installing closure plate

Removing

– Remove front door ⇒ page 80 .
– Remove spreader rivets -arrows-.
– Take out closure plate -1- towards rear.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

3 Bulkhead

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - plenum chamber partition panel”, page 22

⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - plenum chamber cover”, page 23

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing plenum chamber cover”, page 23

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing plenum chamber partition panel”, page 24

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing sealing element”, page 25

This document is protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1 Exploded view - plenum chamber partition panel

1 - Plenum chamber partition panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 24

2 - Nut

- ❑ 2 Nm

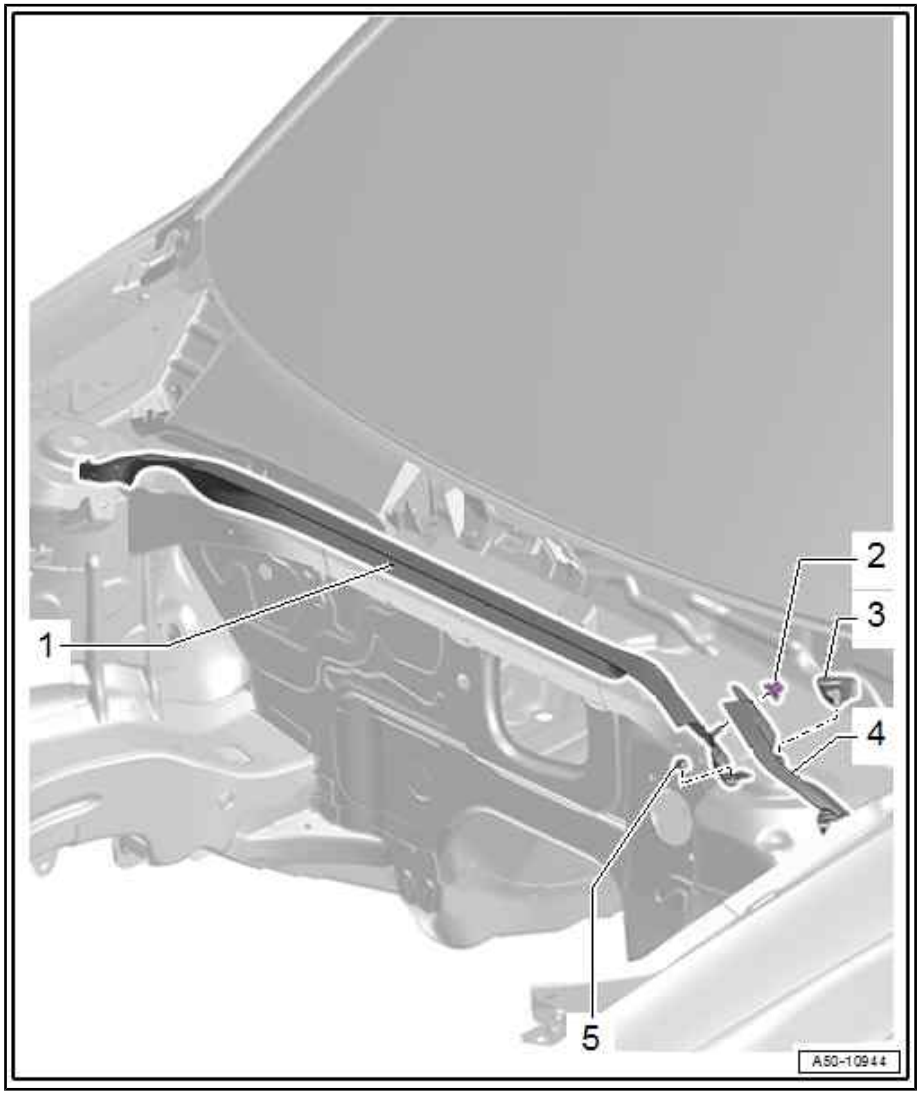
3 - Sealing element

4 - Cover

- ❑ For plenum chamber partition panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 24

5 - Nut

- ❑ 8 Nm



3.2 Exploded view - plenum chamber cover

1 - Plenum chamber partition panel

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 22

2 - Seal

- ❑ Renew if damaged

3 - Plenum chamber cover

- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 23

4 - Sealing element

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 25

5 - Nut

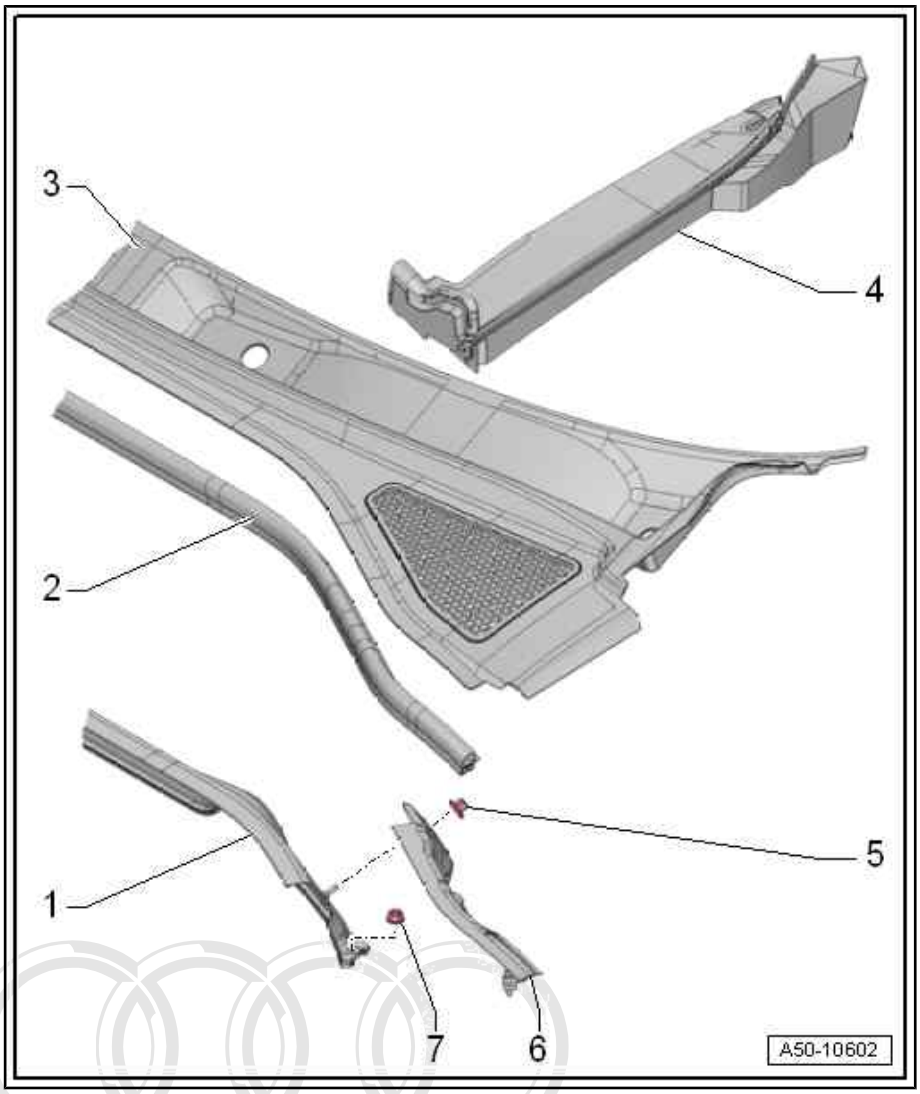
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 22

6 - Cover

- ❑ For plenum chamber partition panel
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 22

7 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 22



3.3 Removing and installing plenum chamber cover

Removing

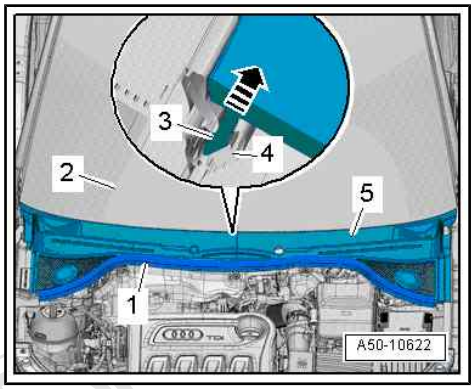
– Remove wiper arms ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen wiper system; Removing and installing wiper arms .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Detach seal -1-.

– Coat transition between windscreen -2- and plenum chamber cover -5- with a small amount of soap solution and, starting at edge of windscreen, carefully pull plenum chamber cover vertically upwards out of retainer at windscreen.

– Detach plenum chamber cover -5-; to do so, carefully pull retaining catch -3- for plenum chamber cover out of windscreen mounting -4- in direction of -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

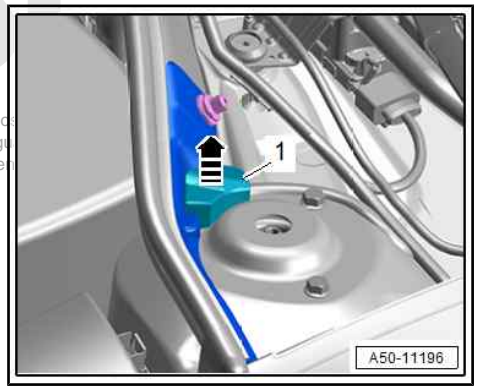
- The cowl panel trim at the plenum chamber cover must be engaged completely in the windscreen frame.

3.4 Removing and installing plenum chamber partition panel

Removing

– Remove plenum chamber cover ⇒ page 23 .

– Lever off sealing element -1- -arrow-.

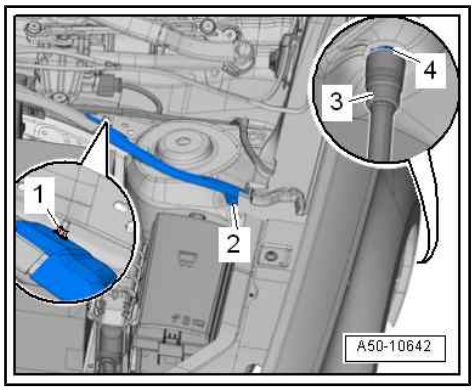


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
with respect to the correctness of information in this docume

– Unscrew nut -1-.

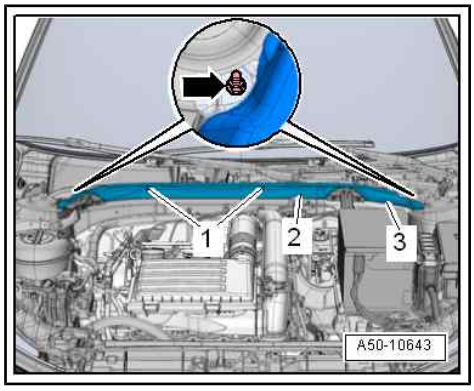
– Release fastener -4- from wheel housing side using 6 mm socket -item 3-.

– Lift off cover -2-.



– Unscrew speed nuts -1- and move heat shield -2- clear.

– Unscrew nuts -arrow- and lift off plenum chamber partition panel -3-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

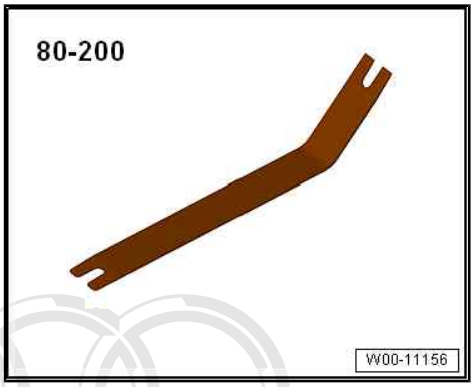
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - plenum chamber partition panel”, page 22

3.5 Removing and installing sealing element

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80 - 200-



- Protective gloves

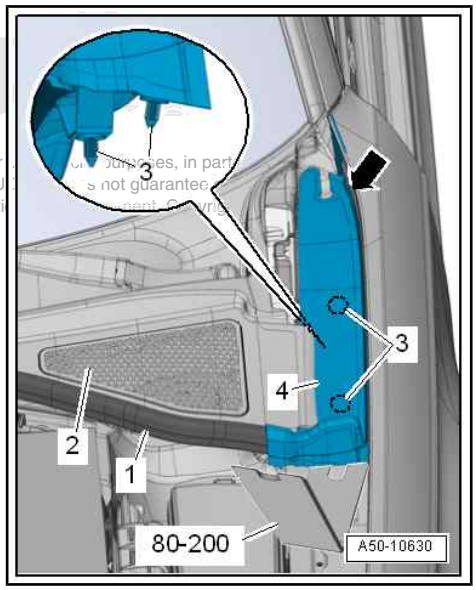
Removing

– Remove wheel housing liner (front) ⇒ page 303 .

– Pull off seal -1- and lift plenum chamber cover -2- in vicinity of sealing element.

– Using removal lever - 80 - 200- , carefully press fasteners -3- off body.

– Detach sealing element -4- towards front; sealing element must be guided out of recess in wing -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Sealing element must be renewed if fastener is damaged.

Copyright by AUDI AG. ... for private or ... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AU... ... with respect to the correctness of informati... ... not guarantee ...

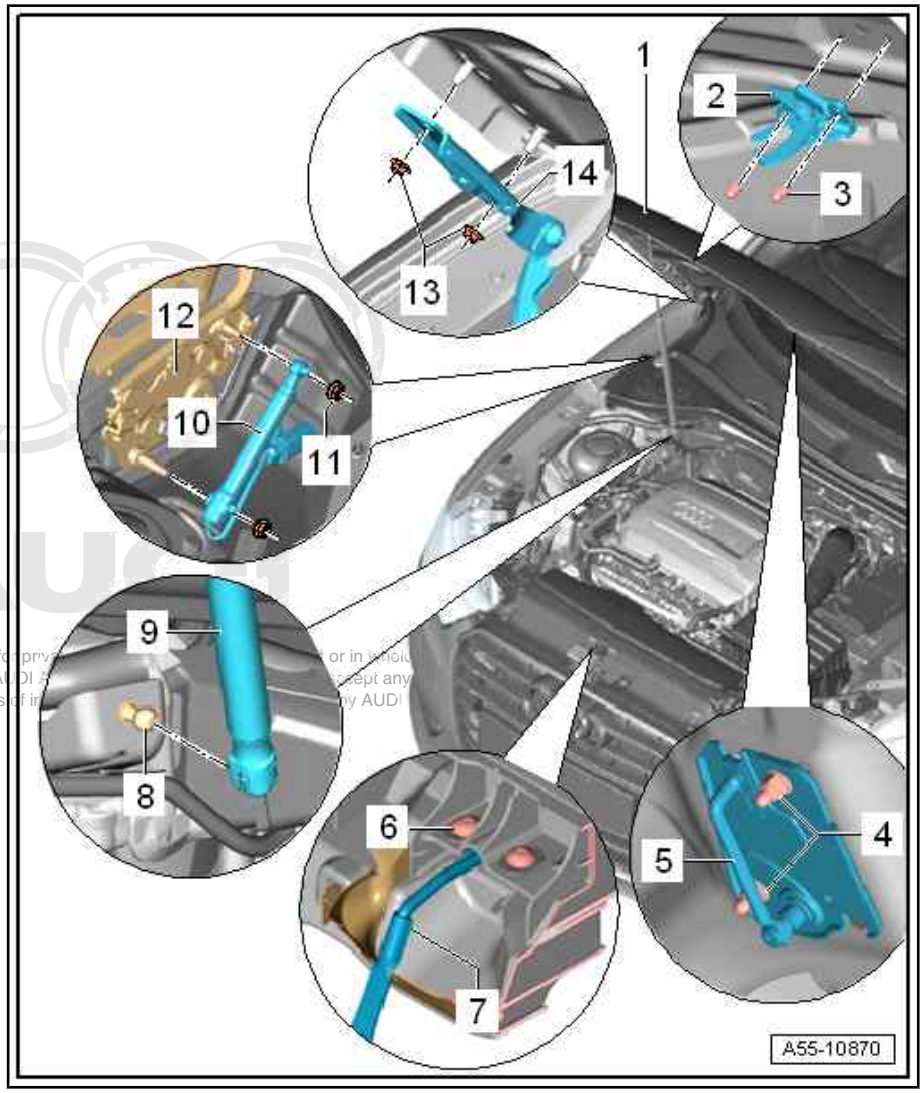
55 – Bonnet, rear lid

1 Bonnet

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bonnet”, page 26
⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - Bowden cable”, page 28
⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing bonnet”, page 28
⇒ “1.4 Adjusting bonnet”, page 29
⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing hinges”, page 32
⇒ “1.6 Resetting hinge”, page 34
⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing striker”, page 35
⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing gas strut”, page 36
⇒ “1.9 Releasing gas from gas strut”, page 37
⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing insulation”, page 37
⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing impact guard”, page 39
⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing Bowden cable”, page 40
⇒ “1.13 Removing and installing arrester”, page 42
⇒ “1.14 Removing and installing bonnet lock”, page 42
⇒ “1.15 Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet lock”, page 44

1.1 Exploded view - bonnet

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Bonnet

- ❑ Resetting hinge after pedestrian protection system has been triggered ⇒ page 34
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 28

2 - Arrester

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42

3 - Cap nut

- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Cap nut

- ❑ 8 Nm

5 - Striker

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 35

6 - Bolts

- ❑ 11 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for priv... or in ...oid... permitted unless authorised by AUDI ... ...cept any... with respect to the correctness of in... ...y AUDI

7 - Retainer for arrester

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42

8 - Ball stud

9 - Gas strut

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 36
- ❑ Cylinder end of gas strut is installed on body side

10 - Trigger 1 for pedestrian protection - G598-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 32

11 - Nut

- ❑ 8 Nm

12 - Hinge (active)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 32

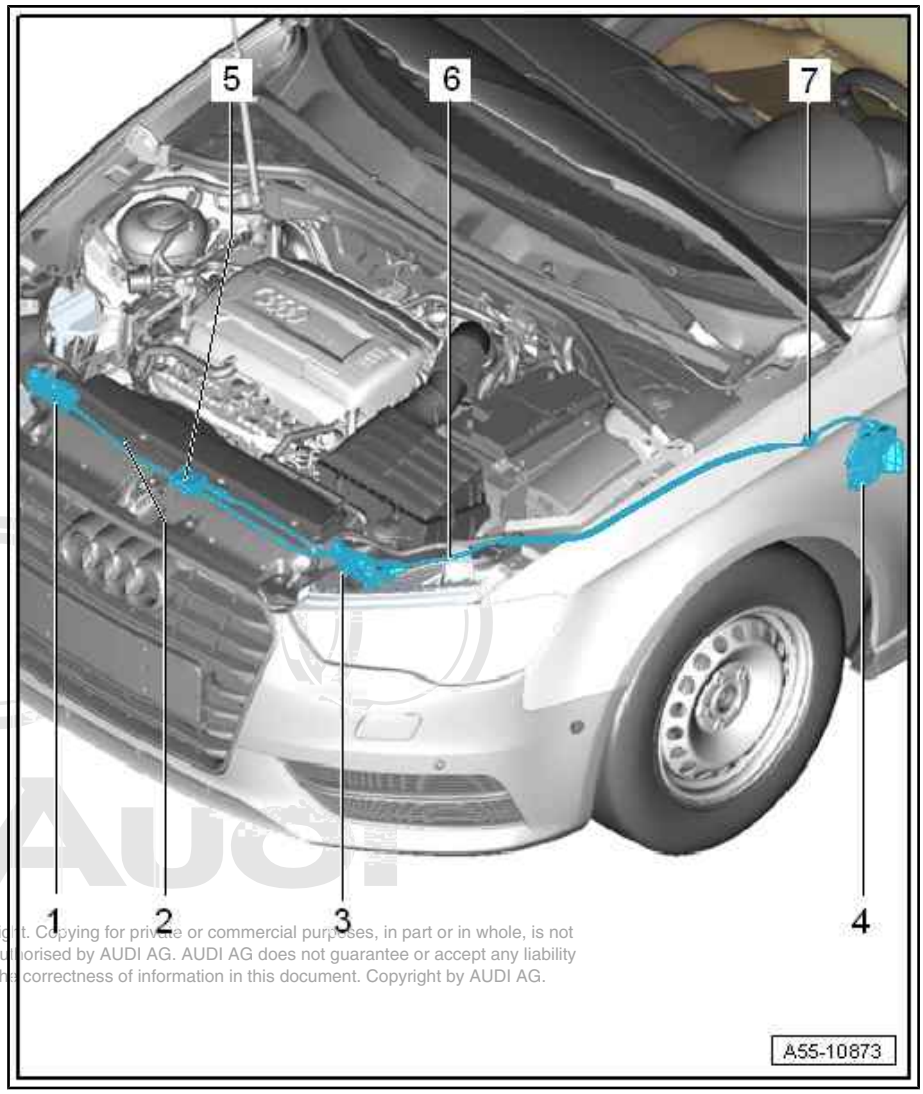
13 - Nut

- ❑ 25 Nm

14 - Hinge (passive)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 32

1.2 Exploded view - Bowden cable



1 - Bonnet lock (right-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42

2 - Bowden cable for bonnet lock

- ❑ Removing:
  - – Disconnect Bowden cable from coupling unit ⇒ page 41 .
  - – Disengage Bowden cable from operating lever.
  - – Pull Bowden cable towards engine compartment.
- ❑ Installing: in reverse order of removal
- ❑ Adjusting trigger point for bonnet locks ⇒ page 41

3 - Bonnet lock (left-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42

4 - Operating lever

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 44

5 - Coupling unit for Bowden cable

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 41
  - – Disengage Bowden cable to vehicle interior at this point before removing lock carrier and when removing operating lever.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 - Bowden cable for operating lever

- ❑ Routing to vehicle interior ⇒ page 40

7 - Grommet

- ❑ When installing, make sure it is seated correctly

1.3 Removing and installing bonnet

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 29).

Caution

The bonnet can be damaged if it is opened while the pedestrian protection system is triggered.

- ***If the pedestrian protection system has been triggered, reset it before opening the bonnet.***

- Hinge reset (if pedestrian protection system has been triggered) ⇒ page 34

– Remove washer jet and move clear washer fluid line and, if fitted, wiring harness ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen washer system; Removing and installing washer jets .

– Detach gas strut from bonnet ⇒ page 36 .

– Remove nuts at hinge.

– Detach bonnet.

Installing: in reverse order of removal

Adjusting:

- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 29

– Align bonnet between wings.

– Adjust height of bonnet via bonnet lock.

– Adjust position of bonnet to wings via adjusting buffers ⇒ page 30 .

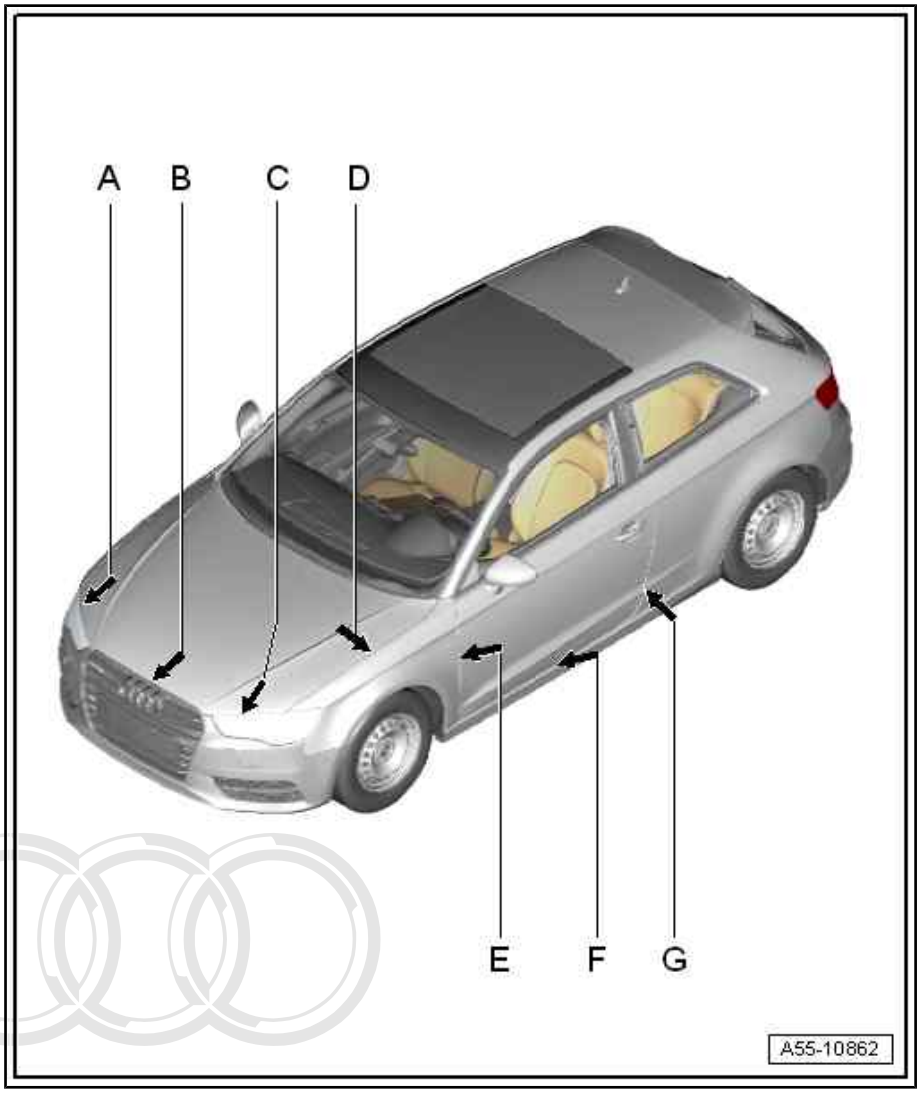
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4 Adjusting bonnet

⇒ “1.4.1 Adjustment dimensions”, page 29

⇒ “1.4.2 Height adjustment using adjusting buffer”, page 30

1.4.1 Adjustment dimensions



1.4.2 Height adjustment using adjusting buffer

- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 29

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



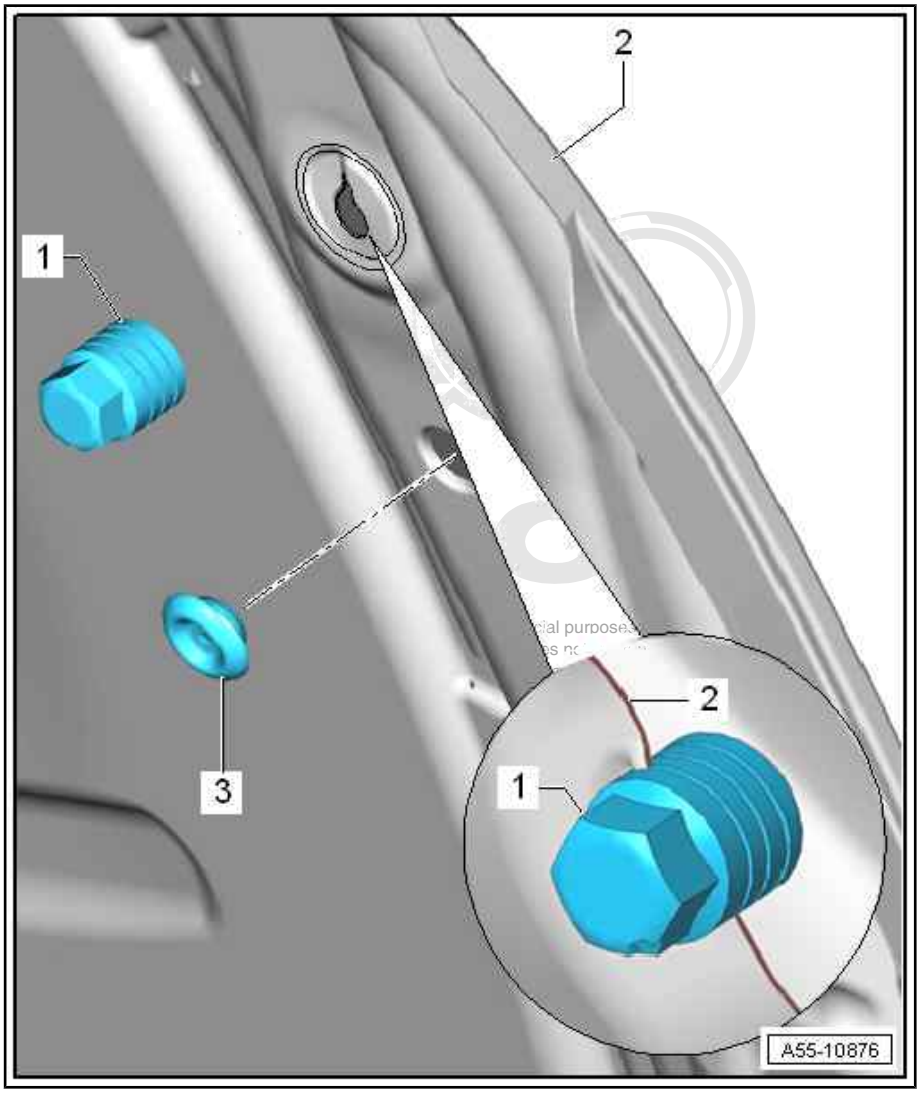
1 - Adjusting buffer

- ❑ Screw into inner section of bonnet
- – Adjust position of bonnet via adjusting buffers according to wing panels and body contour.
- – When bonnet is closed, adjusting buffer must rest on lock carrier.

2 - Bonnet

3 - Cap

- – Clip into bonnet



1.5 Removing and installing hinges

⇒ “1.5.1 Removing and installing hinges - vehicles without pedestrian protection”, page 32

⇒ “1.5.2 Removing and installing hinges - vehicles with pedestrian protection”, page 32

1.5.1 Removing and installing hinges - vehicles without pedestrian protection

1 - Bonnet hinge

- ❑ Remove plenum chamber cover ⇒ page 23 .
- – Before removing, mark position of hinge on bonnet and on body.
- – Before removing hinge, support bonnet or secure it in position.
- – Remove nuts on bonnet and bolts on body and lift out hinge.
- ❑ Installing: in reverse order of removal
- – Insert hinge according to marks and secure.

2 - Nut

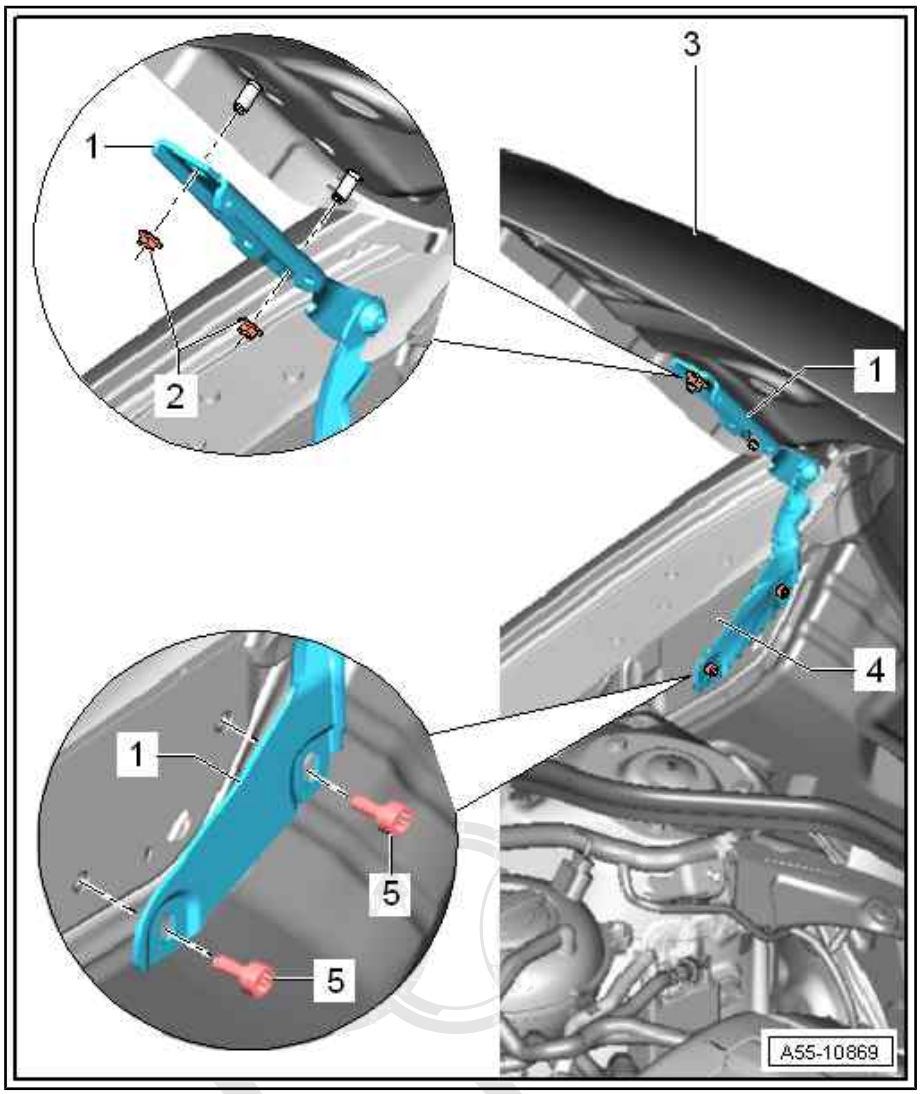
- ❑ 21 Nm

3 - Bonnet

4 - Wing mounting flange

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 21 Nm



1.5.2 Removing and installing hinges - vehicles with pedestrian protection

- Observe safety precautions ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 00 ; Safety precautions; Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Hinge

❑ Removal procedure is the same as on vehicles without pedestrian protection ⇒ page 32 .

2 - Trigger 1 for pedestrian protection - G598-

❑ Removing

– Switch on ignition.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Pyrotechnic components may be triggered inadvertently.

Risk of injury.

Discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate.

– Unplug electrical connector and unclip connector from side of hinge.

– Remove nuts -3- and detach trigger 1 for pedestrian protection - G598- from mounting pins.

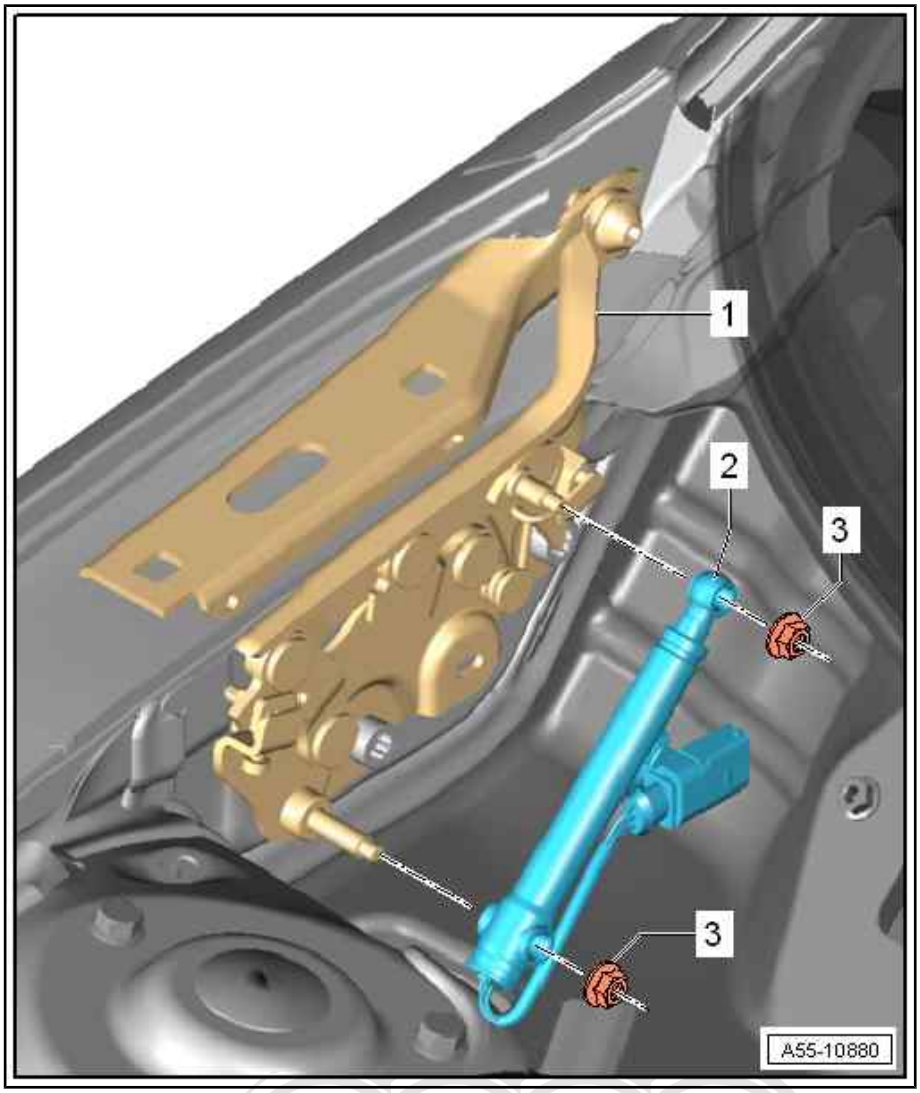
❑ Installing

WARNING

Pyrotechnic components may be triggered inadvertently.

Risk of injury.

Discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– When installing, first slide trigger 1 for pedestrian protection - G598- onto mounting pin on hinge and then fit nut without tightening.

– Tighten nut to specified torque.

WARNING

Pyrotechnic components may be triggered inadvertently.

Risk of injury.

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.

There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory (Vehicle diagnostic tester).

3 - Nut

❑ 8 Nm

1.6 Resetting hinge

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step.

Caution

The bonnet can be damaged if it is opened while the pedestrian protection system is triggered.

♦ *If the pedestrian protection system has been triggered, reset it before opening the bonnet.*

– Protect edges at bonnet and wing from damage with adhesive tape at transition areas.

– With the help of a second mechanic, press bonnet hinges ⇒ Item 12 (page 27) back into initial position simultaneously on both sides until they lock.

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7 Removing and installing striker

1 - Cap nut

❑ Tightening torque
⇒ Item 4 (page 27)

2 - Striker

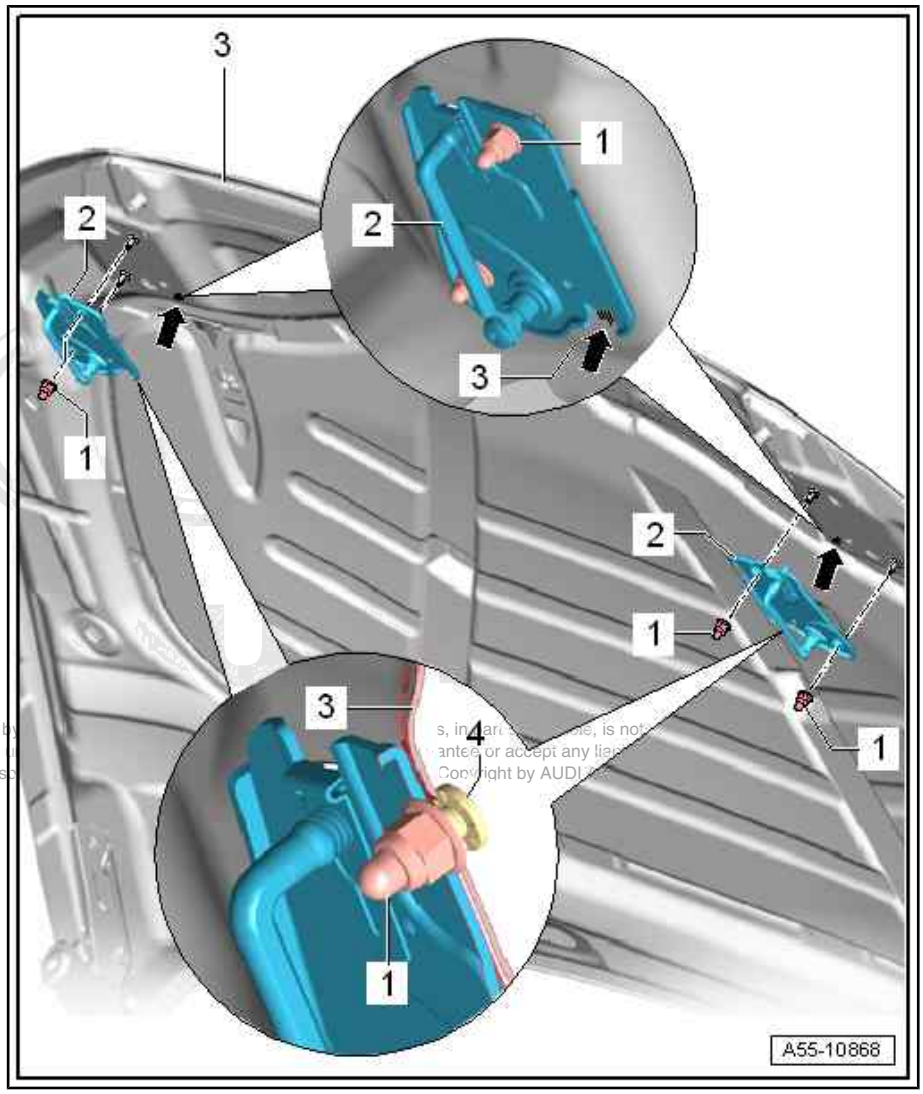
– Before removing, mark position of strikers on bonnet.

– Unscrew cap nuts and pull striker off studs.

– When installing, align at sides according to marks -arrow-

3 - Bonnet

4 - Stud



Protected by
permitted
with res
s, in
ante
Copyright by AUDI

1.8 Removing and installing gas strut

1 - Bonnet

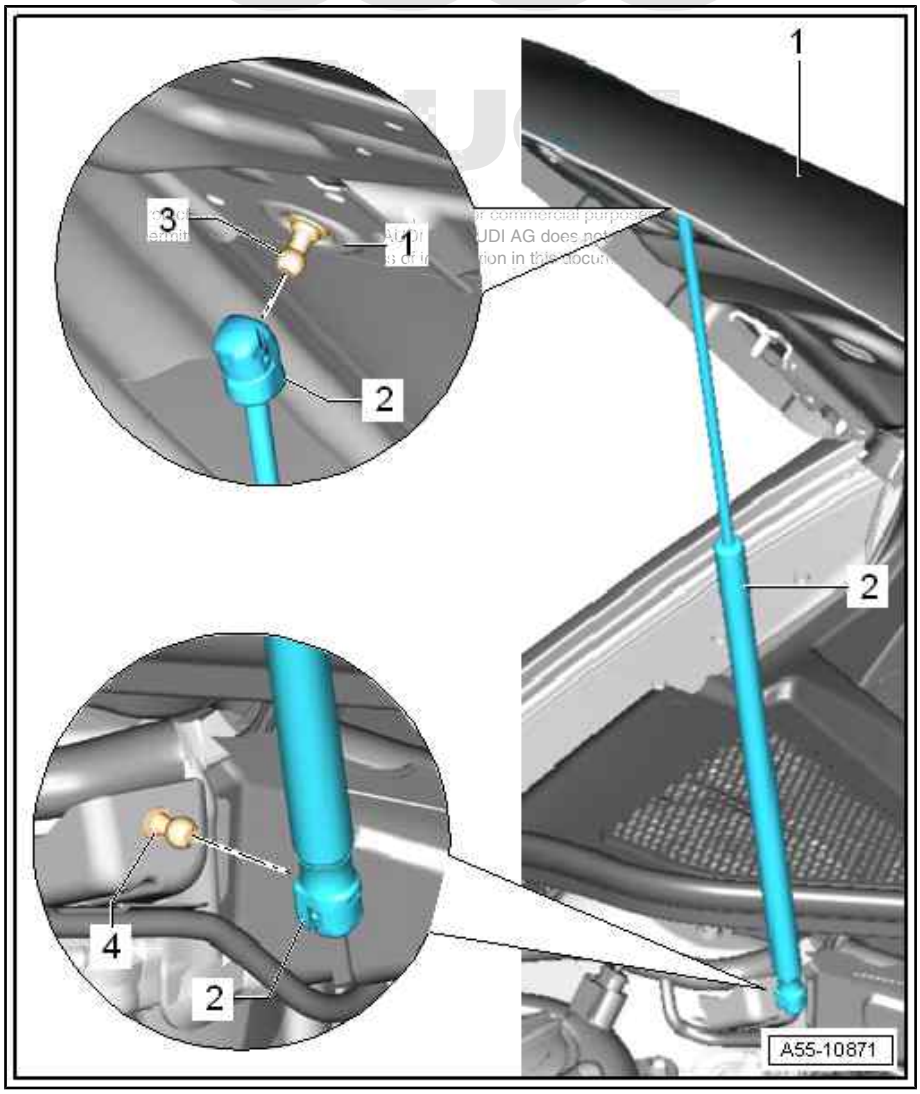
2 - Gas strut

- ❑ To remove, lift retaining clip slightly and detach gas strut from ball stud.

- Note correct position when installing: cylinder end of gas strut must be engaged on body end.

3 - Ball stud

4 - Ball stud



Removing

– Support bonnet or secure it in position.

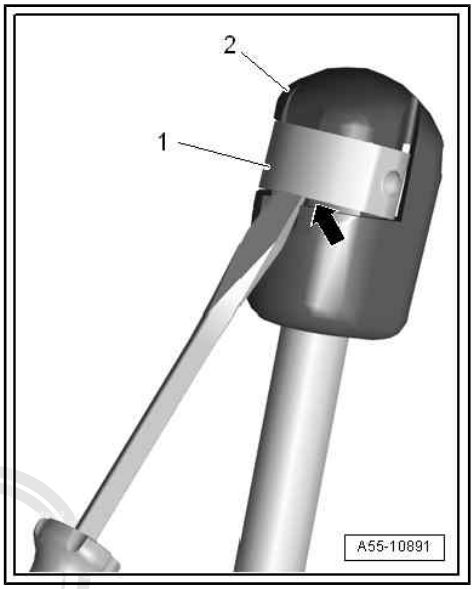
– Lift retaining clip -1- slightly using a small screwdriver, and pull gas strut -2- off ball stud (top).

– Repeat procedure at lower ball stud.

Installing

- If gas strut has been completely removed make sure it is re-installed in the correct position. The cylinder end of the gas strut must be engaged on the body side.

– Press gas strut onto ball stud and engage.



1.9 Releasing gas from gas strut

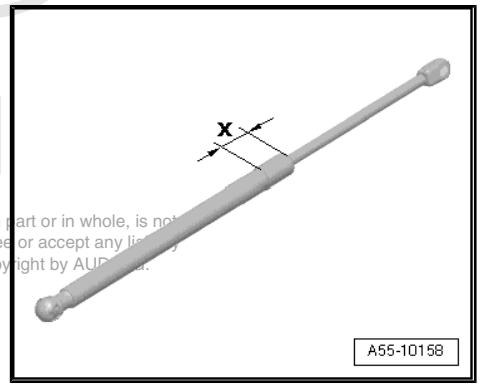
– Clamp section -x = 50 mm- of gas strut in a vice.

WARNING

Risk of eye injuries due to metal swarf.

Eye irritation and injury possible.

- ***Wear safety goggles.***



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Cover area around saw cut with a cloth to catch any fluid which may escape.

– Saw open first third of cylinder part of gas strut (measured from piston rod end of cylinder).

1.10 Removing and installing insulation

1 - Clip

2 - Lining for bonnet

❑ Installing

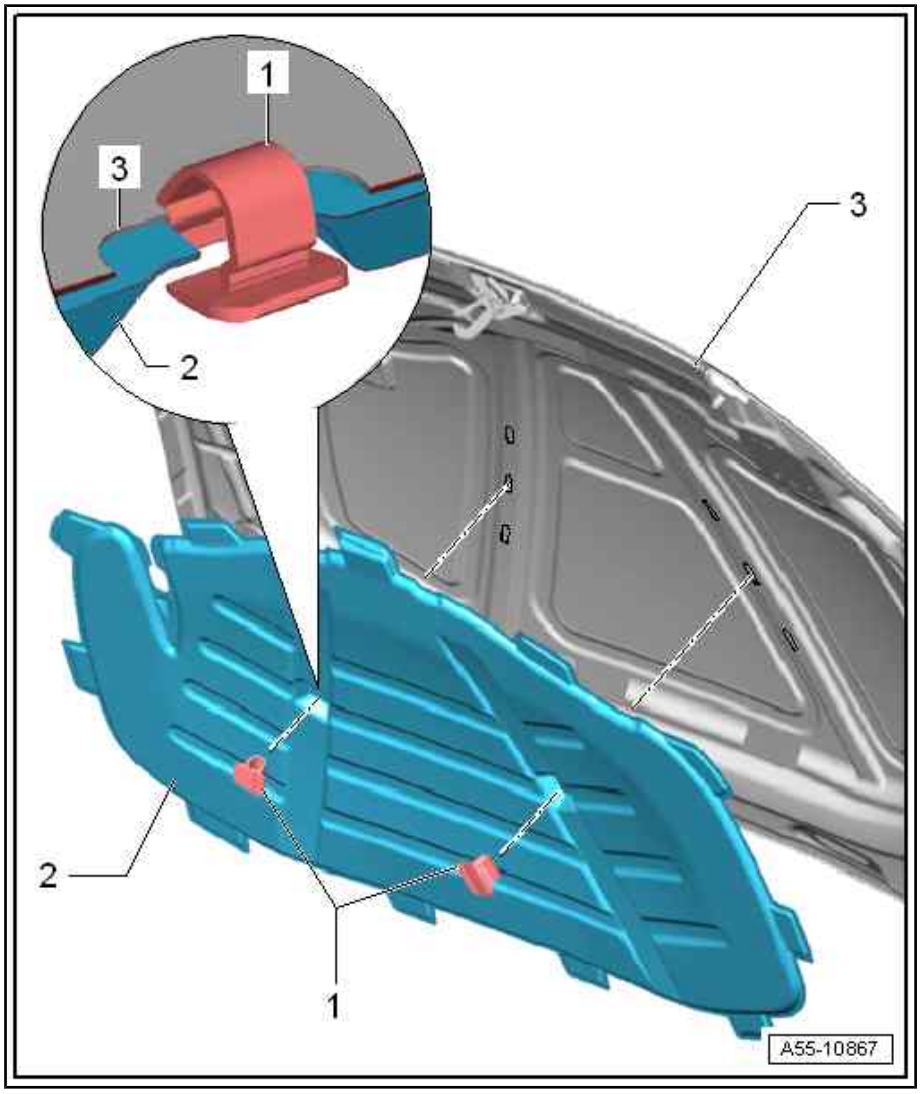
– First push lugs on rear edge of lining into holes provided on inner panel.

– Push in lugs on front edge and side.

– Retaining clips must engage audibly when pressing in.

– Press in clip.

3 - Bonnet



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

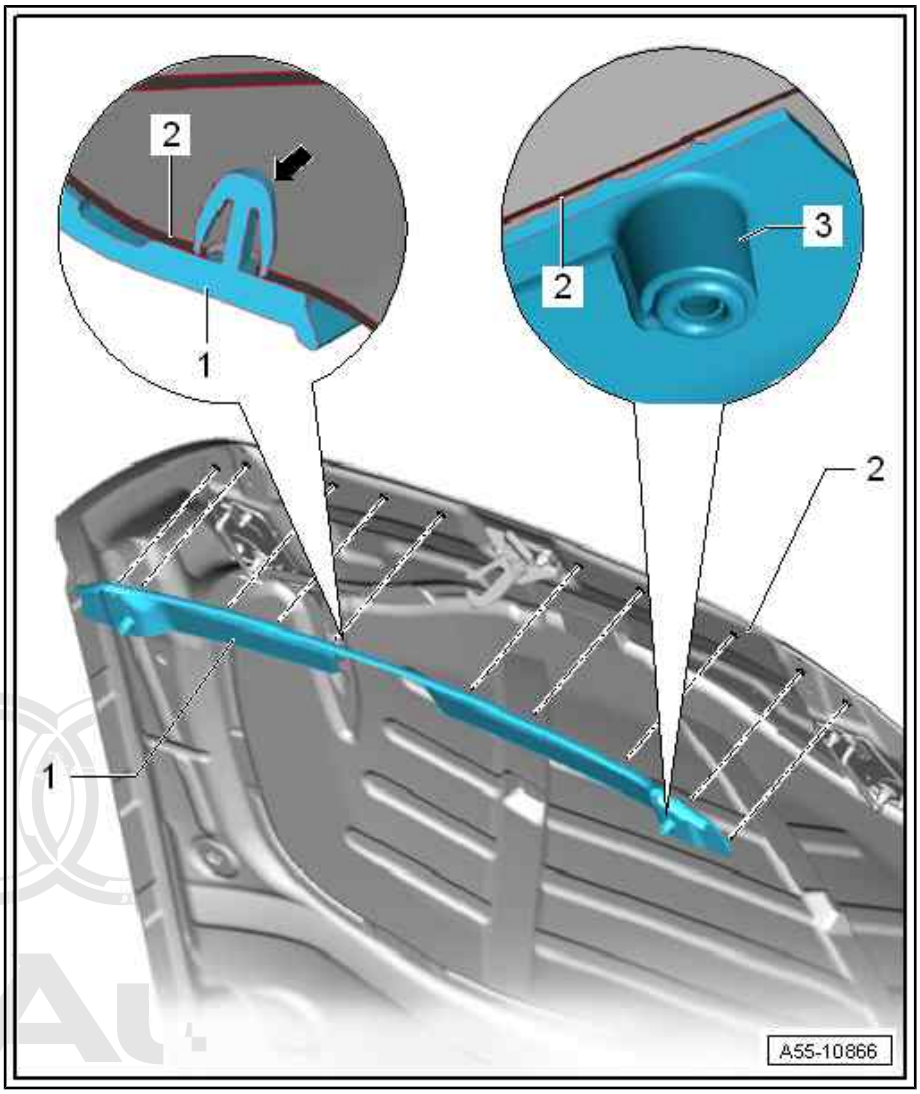
1.11 Removing and installing impact guard

1 - Impact guard

- ❑ To remove, unclip step by step and pull off impact guard.

2 - Bonnet

3 - Buffer



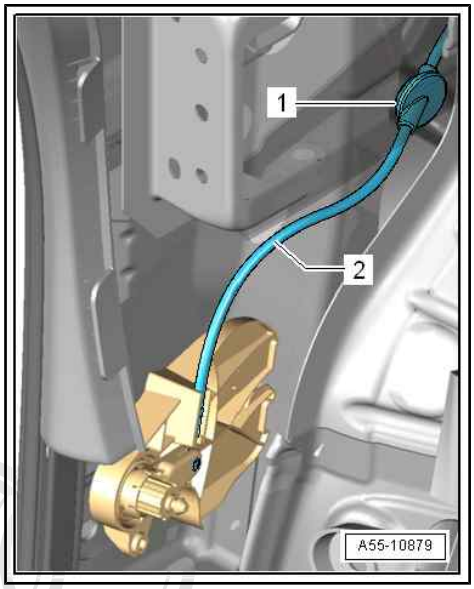
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.12 Removing and installing Bowden cable

Routing of Bowden cable in vehicle interior

– Route Bowden cable -2- at A-pillar as shown.

– Grommet -1- must be pressed into side of A-pillar from interior.



Routing of Bowden cable in engine compartment

1 - Grommet

2 - Wing mounting flange

3 - Bowden cable

– Starting from interior, route Bowden cable -3- in engine compartment along inside of wing mounting flange towards front (as shown).

– Press Bowden cables completely into clips.

– Push coupling unit into lock carrier ⇒ page 41 .

4 - Bonnet lock

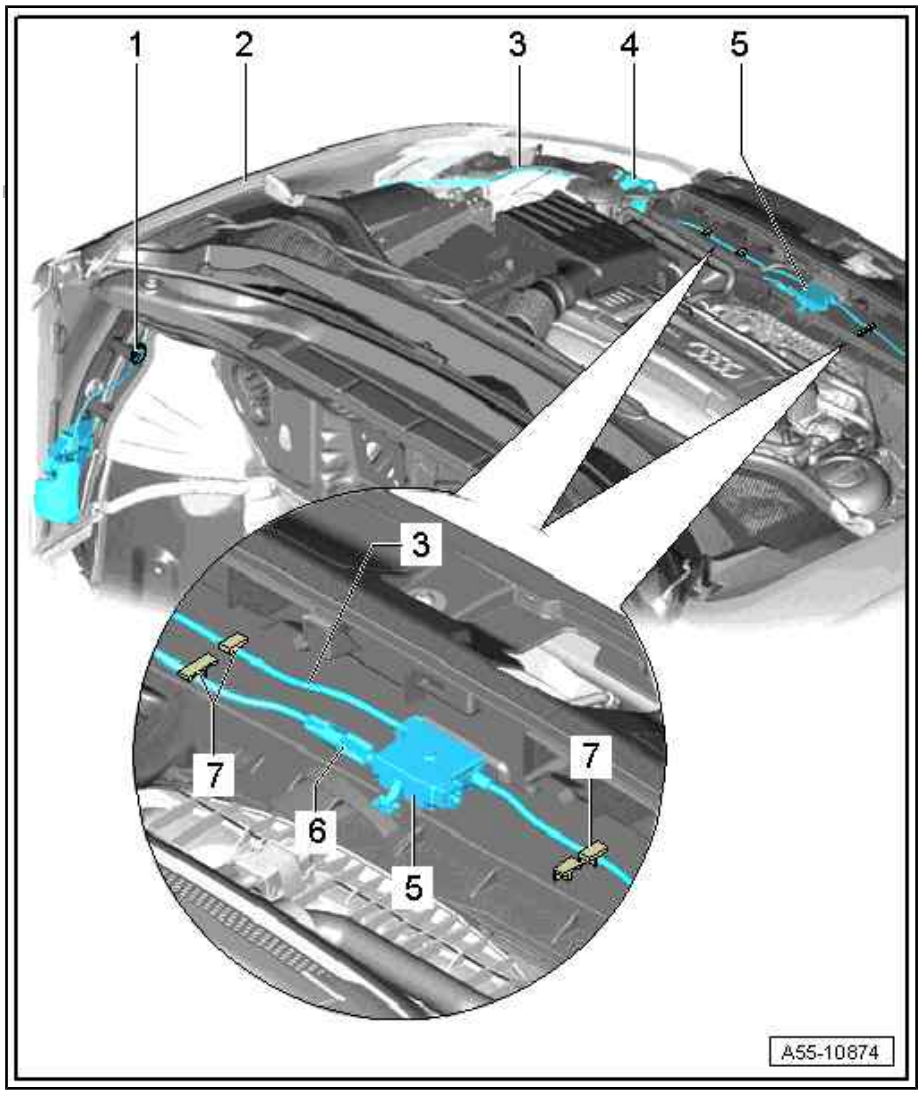
❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42

5 - Coupling unit for Bowden cable

6 - Collar

❑ For setting bonnet locks so they are released simultaneously

7 - Clip

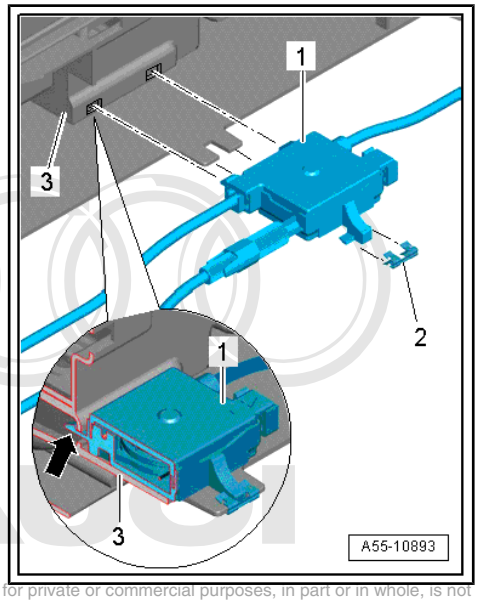


Removing and installing coupling unit for Bowden cable

– Detach retaining clip -2-.

– Release catches -arrow- at front of lock carrier -3- and pull coupling unit -1- off towards rear.

– When installing, catches must engage audibly in lock carrier.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

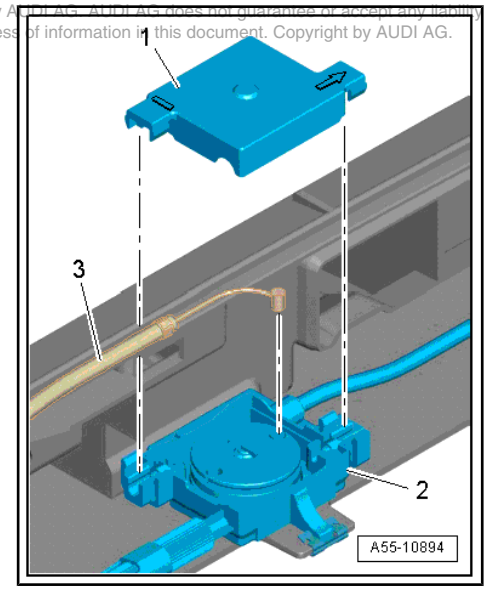
Engaging Bowden cable in coupling unit

– Engage Bowden cable -3- to vehicle interior in roller -2- of coupling unit, as shown.

– Press Bowden cable into mounting on housing.

– Press housing cover -1- on so that arrow points in direction of free connection -1- on coupling unit.

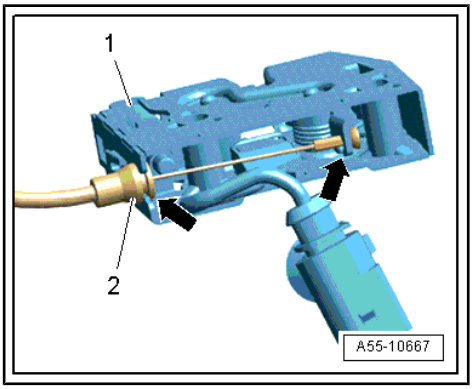
– Adjust Bowden cable via collar so that bonnet locks are released simultaneously.



Engaging Bowden cable in bonnet lock

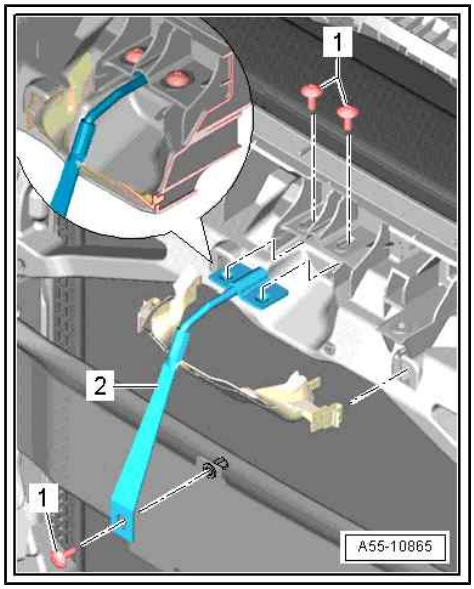
– Insert nipple of Bowden cable -2- into operating lever -right arrow- of bonnet lock -1-.

– Slide Bowden cable with guide into bonnet lock from below; catch -left arrow- should engage.



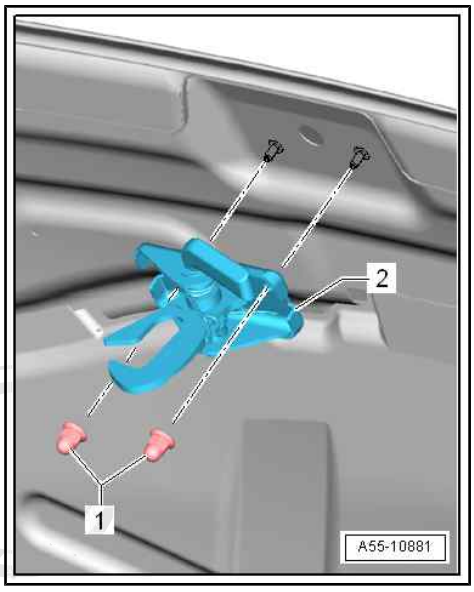
Removing and installing retainer for arrester

– Bumper cover (front) removed ⇒ page 202
– Remove bolts -1- and detach retainer -2- towards front.
– Tightening torque ⇒ Item 6 (page 27)



1.13 Removing and installing arrester

– Unscrew nuts -1- and detach arrester -2-.
– Tightening torque ⇒ Item 3 (page 27)



1.14 Removing and installing bonnet lock

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Bonnet lock

– Left-side: Remove filler neck for washer fluid reservoir ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen washer system; Removing and installing washer fluid reservoir .

– Unscrew bolts and pull bonnet lock upwards out of lock carrier.

❑ Engaging Bowden cable ⇒ page 41

Note

Adjust the height of the moving the bonnet lock

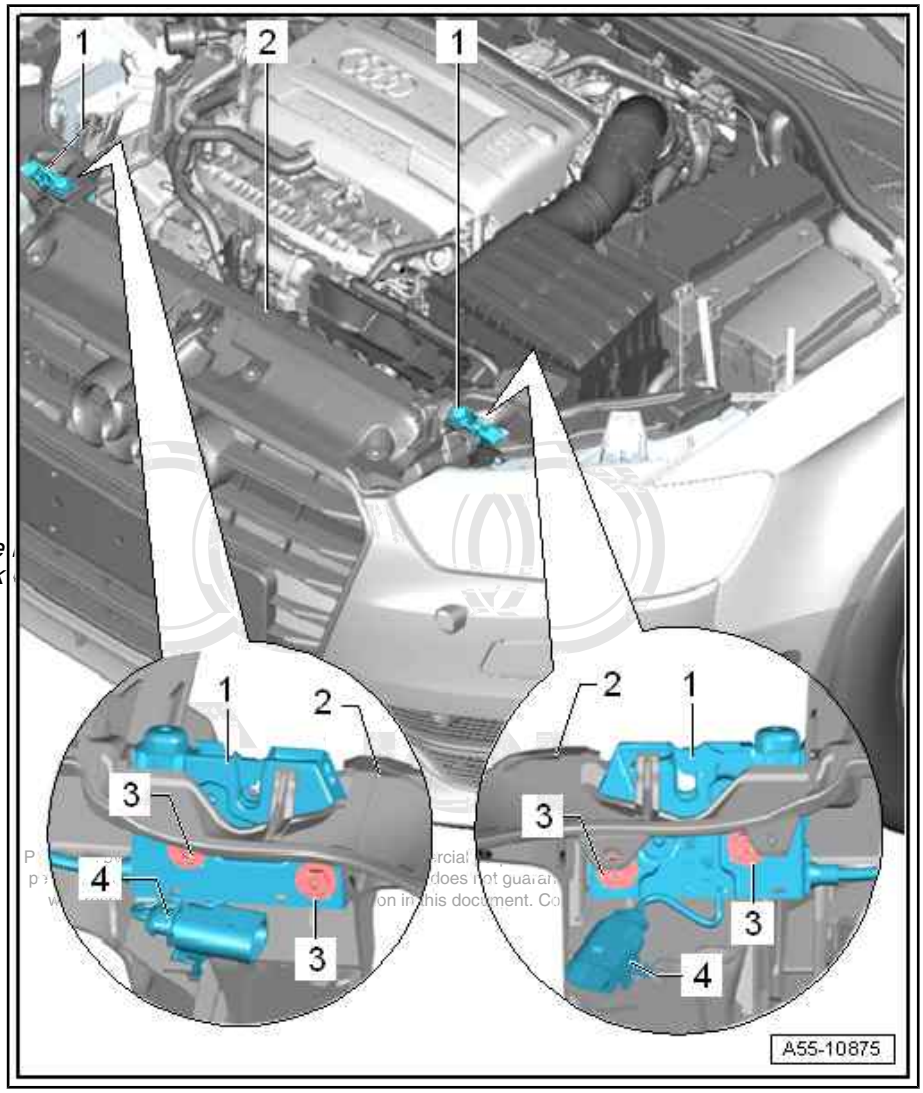
2 - Lock carrier

3 - Bolt

❑ 11 Nm

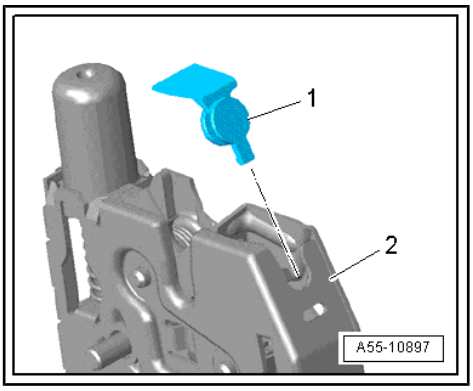
4 - Electrical connector

❑ When installing bonnet lock, slide connector into lock carrier and engage.



Cover for bonnet lock

- On a new bonnet lock, cover -1- must be inserted and engaged.



1.15 Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet lock

Removing handle for operating lever

1 - Operating lever

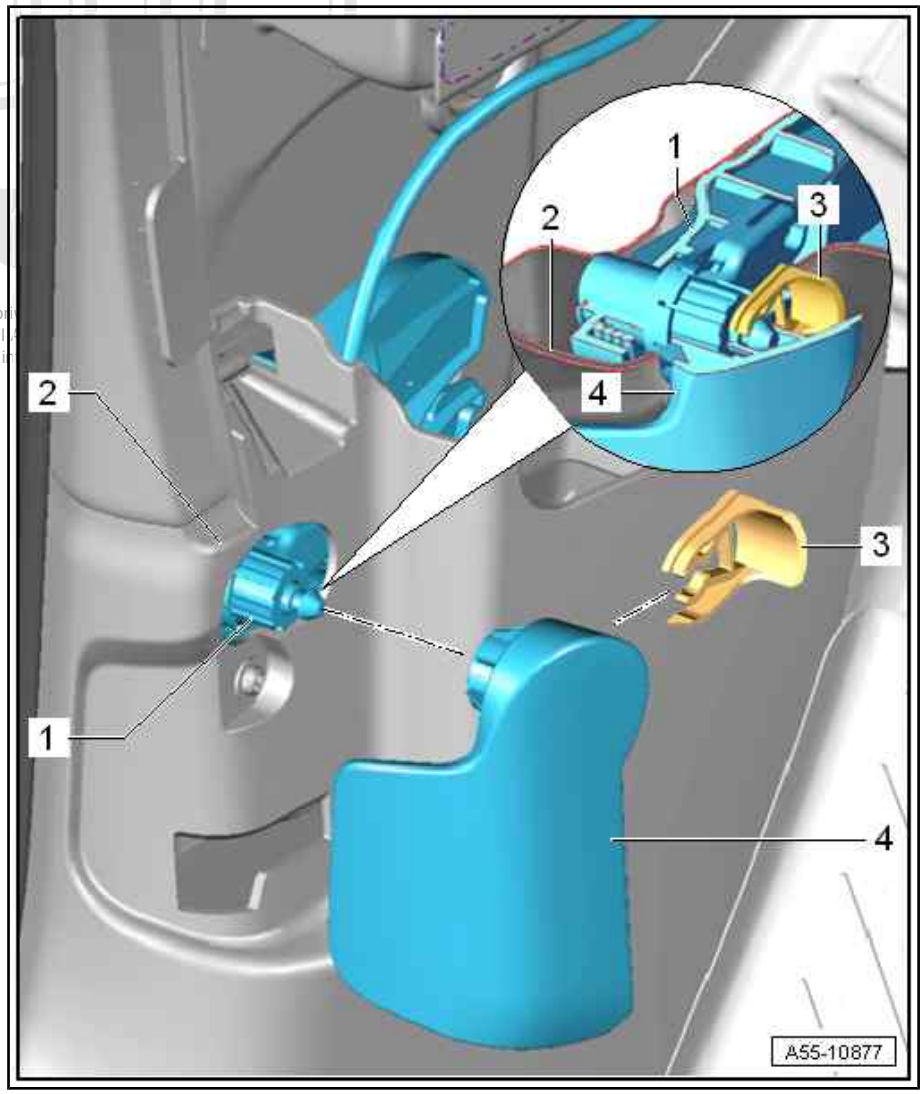
2 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

3 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Press in fully; make sure that it engages

4 - Handle for operating lever

- ❑ Before removing, disengage cable in coupling unit in engine compartment ⇒ page 41.
- ❑ Lever retaining clip out of operating lever.
- ❑ Pull handle sideways off operating lever.



Removing operating lever

1 - Operating lever

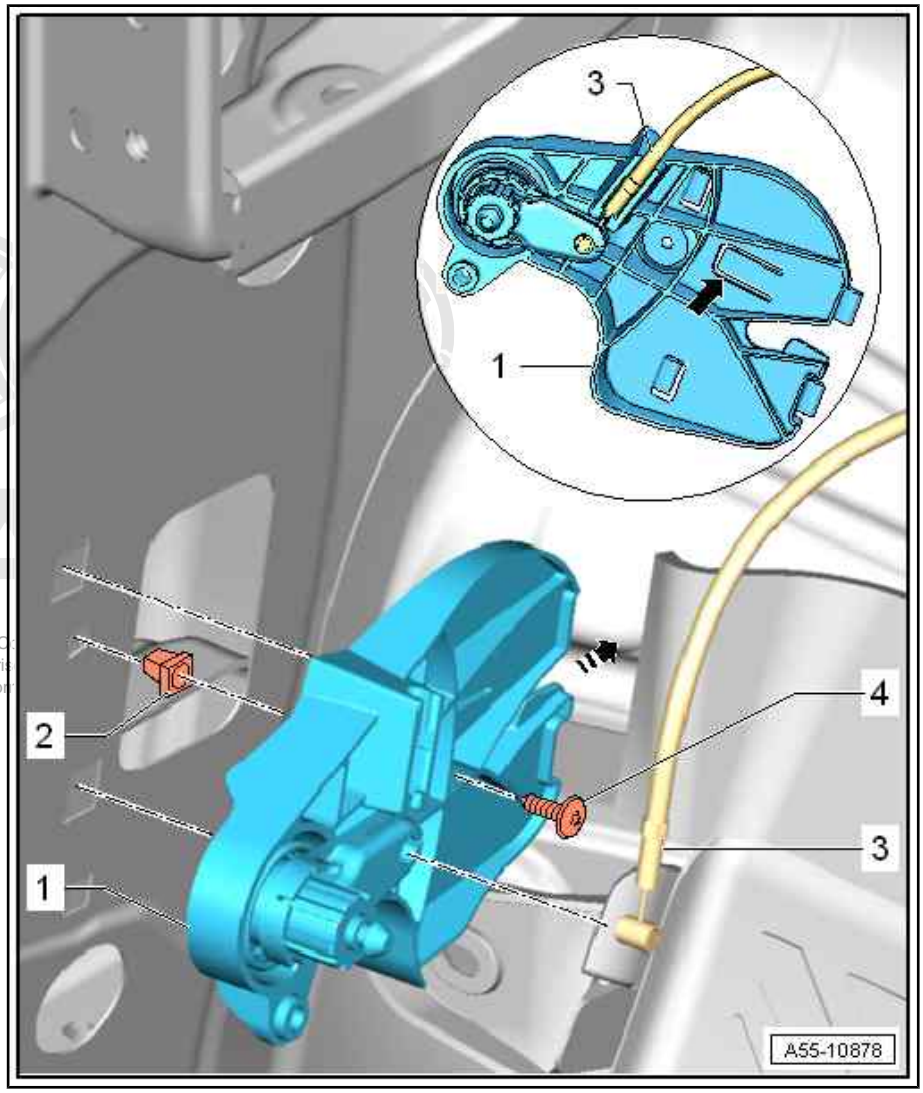
Removing

- Handle for operating lever removed ⇒ page 44 .
- A-pillar trim (bottom) removed ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing A-pillar trim .
- Disengage cable -3-.
- Unscrew bolts -4-, release mounting bracket -arrow- and pull it towards rear out of A-pillar.

❑ Installing

- When installing, slide mounting bracket in at A-pillar until catch -arrow- engages.
- Tighten bolts to specified torque, engage cable and clip it in at cable support bracket.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



2 - Clip

3 - Bowden cable

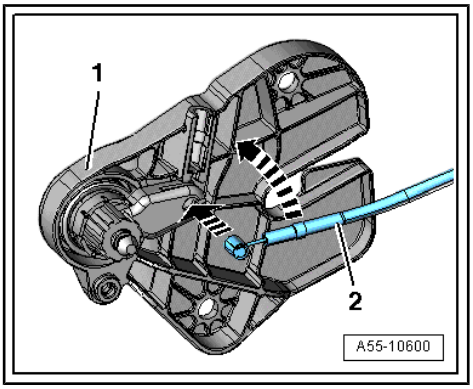
❑ Clip support bracket for Bowden cable into mounting bracket, as shown in detail view.

4 - Bolt

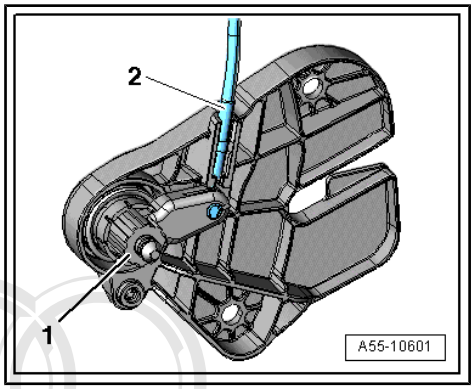
❑ 2 Nm

Engaging Bowden cable in operating lever

- Insert Bowden cable -2- in operating lever -1- from side in direction of -arrow-.



– Swivel Bowden cable -2- upwards as shown and clip it into support bracket of operating lever -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Rear lid

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - rear lid”, page 47
⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing rear lid”, page 50
⇒ “2.3 Adjusting rear lid”, page 51
⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing hinges”, page 54
⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing rear lid seal”, page 54
⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing adjusting buffer”, page 55
⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing gas strut”, page 55
⇒ “2.8 Releasing gas from gas strut”, page 56
⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing rear lid lock”, page 56
⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing cable for rear lid lock”, page 56
⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing lock cylinder”, page 57
⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing striker”, page 58
⇒ “2.13 Removing and installing actuator”, page 58

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1 Exploded view - rear lid

Exploded view - rear lid ⇒ page 47

Exploded view - rear lid locking mechanism ⇒ page 48

Exploded view - rear lid

1 - Hinge
- ❑ For rear lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 54

2 - Stop

3 - Stop
- ❑ For stop (body)

4 - Rear lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 50
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 51

5 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

6 - Adjusting buffer
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 55
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 51

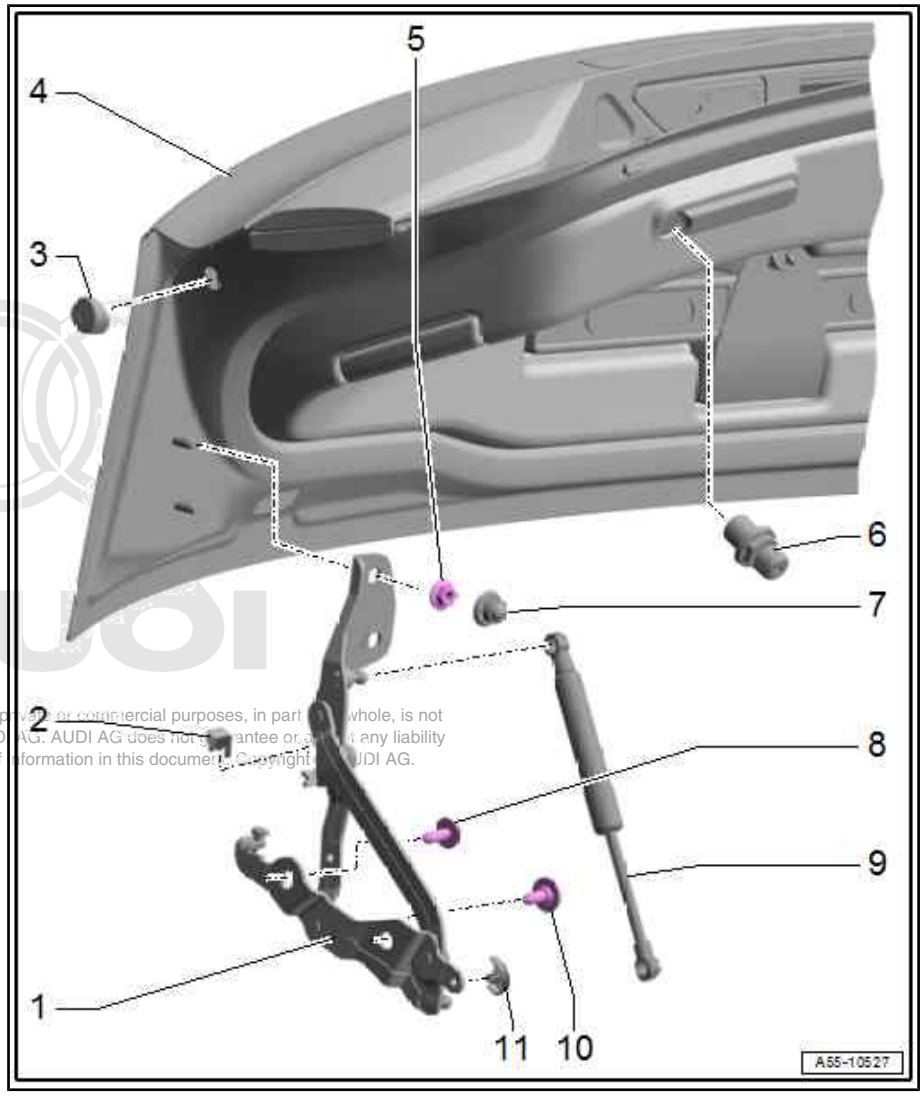
7 - Cover
- ❑ For nut

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 21 Nm

9 - Gas strut
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 55
- ❑ Releasing gas ⇒ page 56

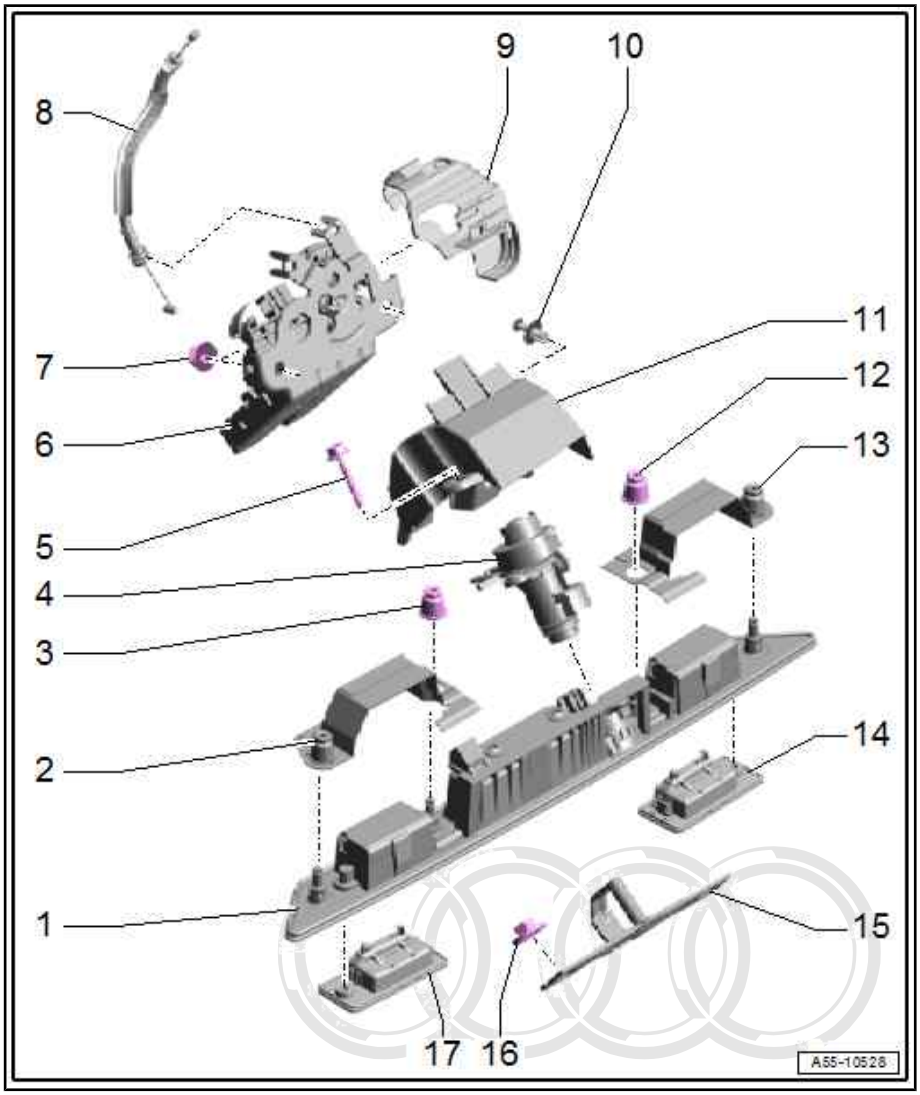
10 - Fitted bolt
- ❑ 21 Nm

11 - Cap



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Exploded view - rear lid locking mechanism



1 - Handle trim

- ❑ With rear lid handle release button - E234- , cannot be renewed separately
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 58

2 - Anti-theft bracket (left-side) with nut

- ❑ 4 Nm
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 58

3 - Cap nut

- ❑ 4 Nm

4 - Lock cylinder

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 57

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 5 Nm

6 - Rear lid lock

- ❑ With rear lid contact switch for anti-theft alarm - F123-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 56

7 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

8 - Cable

- ❑ For rear lid lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 56

9 - Anti-theft bracket

- ❑ For cable
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 56

10 - Fastener with bolt

11 - Anti-theft bracket

- ❑ For lock cylinder
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 57

12 - Cap nut

- ❑ 4 Nm

13 - Anti-theft bracket (right-side) with nut

- ❑ 4 Nm
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 58

14 - Number plate light (right-side)

15 - Striker

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 58
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 51

16 - Nut

- ❑ 2x

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

❑ 21 Nm

17 - Number plate light (left-side)

2.2 Removing and installing rear lid

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 50).
- Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary ⇒ page 50 .

Removing

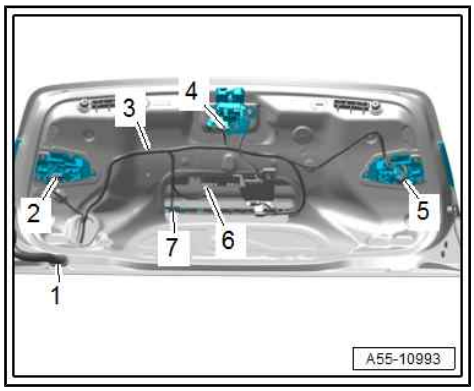
– Remove rear lid trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) .

– Unplug electrical connectors -2, 4, 5, 6, 7-.

– Move electrical wiring harness -3- clear at rear lid.

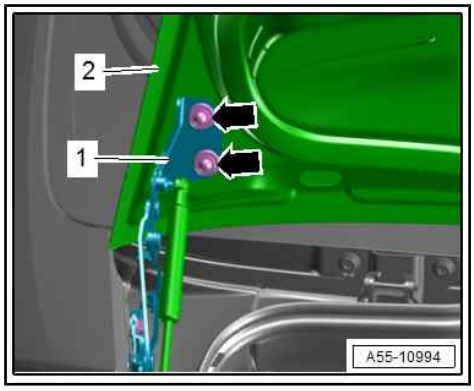
– Pull grommet -1- out of opening in rear lid and guide out electrical wiring harness.

– Prise off covers.



– Unscrew nuts -arrows-.

– With the assistance of a second mechanic, detach rear lid -2- from hinge -1- and set it down on a soft surface.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– When inserting grommet in rear lid, make sure it is seated correctly.

– Adjust rear lid ⇒ page 51 .

Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary:

– Calibrate reversing camera - R189- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Reversing camera system .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - rear lid”, page 47

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Adjusting rear lid

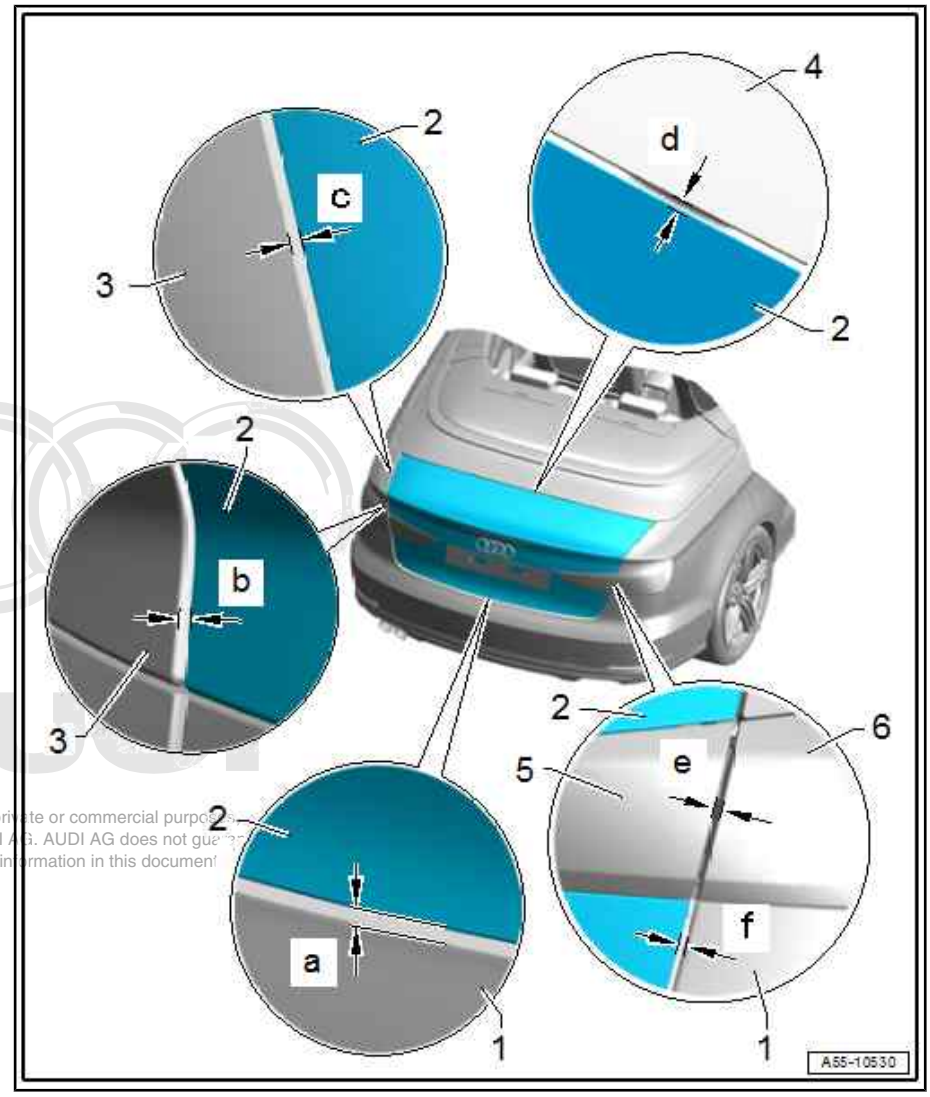
⇒ “2.3.1 Adjustment dimensions”, page 51

⇒ “2.3.2 Lateral, longitudinal and height adjustment at hinge”, page 52

⇒ “2.3.3 Height adjustment at striker”, page 53

⇒ “2.3.4 Height adjustment using adjusting buffer”, page 53

2.3.1 Adjustment dimensions



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document

Rear lid to bumper cover

-1- Bumper cover

-2- Rear lid

Adjusting ⇒ page 51

Rear lid to side panel (rear)

-2- Rear lid

-3- Side panel (rear)

Adjusting ⇒ page 51

Rear lid to side panel (rear)

-2- Rear lid

-3- Side panel (rear)

Adjusting ⇒ page 51

Rear lid to convertible roof compartment

-2- Rear lid

-4- Convertible roof compartment lid

Adjusting ⇒ page 51

Rear lid to bumper cover and tail light

-1- Bumper cover

-2- Rear lid

-5- Inner tail light

-6- Outer tail light

Adjusting ⇒ page 51

2.3.2 Lateral, longitudinal and height adjustment at hinge

Lateral and longitudinal adjustment at hinge ⇒ page 52

Height adjustment at hinge ⇒ page 53

- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 51

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



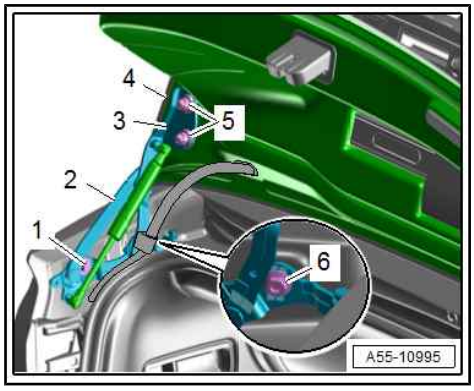
Protected by copyright. in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised ntee or accept any liability with respect to the correct ent. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Lateral and longitudinal adjustment at hinge:

– Loosen nuts -5- (left and right) at hinge -3-.

– Adjust rear lid -4- (lateral and longitudinal adjustment).

– Tighten nuts to specified torque.

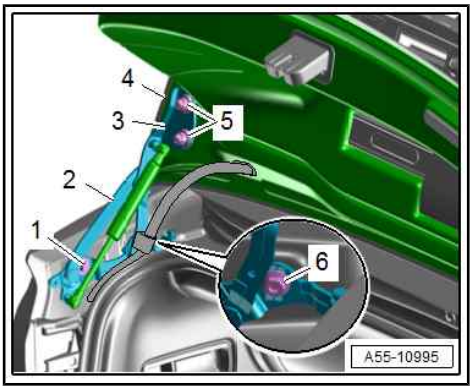


Height adjustment at hinge:

– Loosen bolts -1 and 6- (left and right) for hinge -2-.

– Adjust height of rear lid -4-.

– Tighten bolts to specified torque.



2.3.3 Height adjustment at striker

• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 51

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



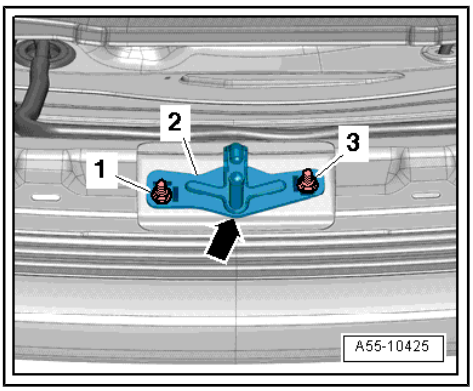
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing lock carrier trim .

– Loosen nuts -1- and -3- until striker -2- can be moved.

• Closing check for rear lid: Rear lid must fall into rear lid lock from neutral position and engage fully.

– Tighten nuts -1- and -3- to specified torque.



2.3.4 Height adjustment using adjusting buffer

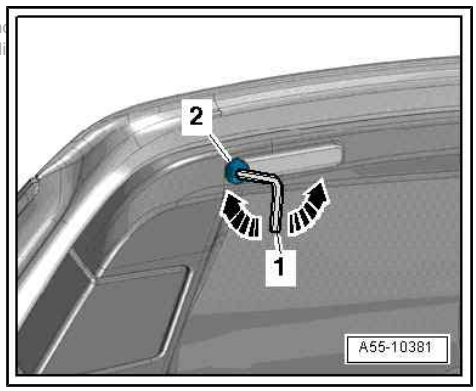
• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 51

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



– Turn adjusting buffer -2- with hexagon key -1- -arrows- until rear lid makes contact when closed.



- The rear lid must rest lightly on the rear lid stop.
- Check that rear lid makes full contact and closes completely by pressing or pulling side edges of rear lid.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copyright applies to this document in its entirety and in all parts. Any commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4 Removing and installing hinges

Removing

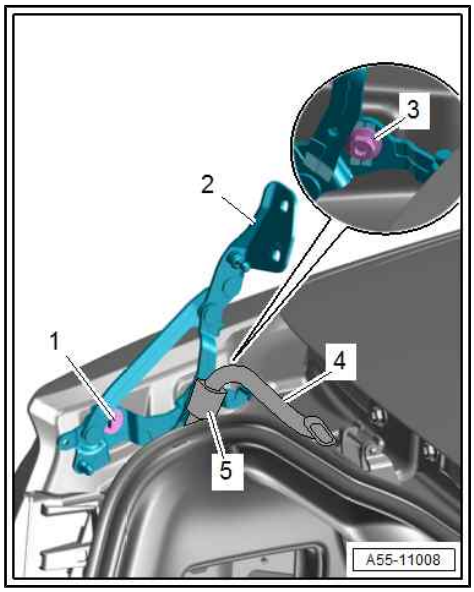
– Remove rear lid ⇒ page 50 .

– Remove gas strut ⇒ page 55 .

– Left side: Release catch, open flap -5- and move wiring harness -4- clear.

– Remove bolts -1 and 3-.

– Detach rear lid hinge -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Bolt -1- is a fitted bolt and can only be inserted in rearmost hole in hinge -2-.

Tightening torques

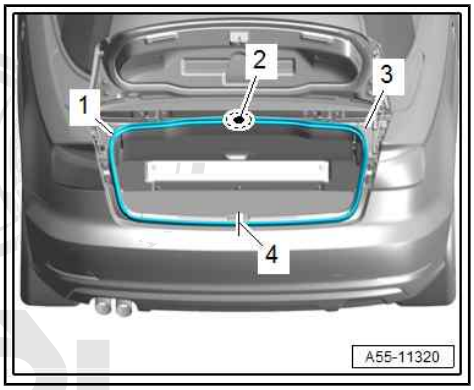
♦ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - rear lid”, page 47

2.5 Removing and installing rear lid seal

Removing

– Open rear lid.

– Pull seal -1- off body flange and remove.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Clean body flange with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .

– Position seal -1- so that butt joint -4- is aligned with striker and marking (top) -2- is aligned with water drain channel on cross member -3-.

– Press seal on all around body flange by hand.

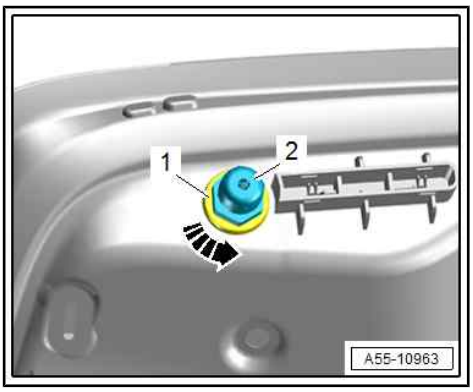
2.6 Removing and installing adjusting buffer

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove rear lid trim (bottom) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) .

– Turn adjusting buffer -2- anti-clockwise -arrow- and remove from body opening.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Check seal -1- between adjusting buffer and body for damage.

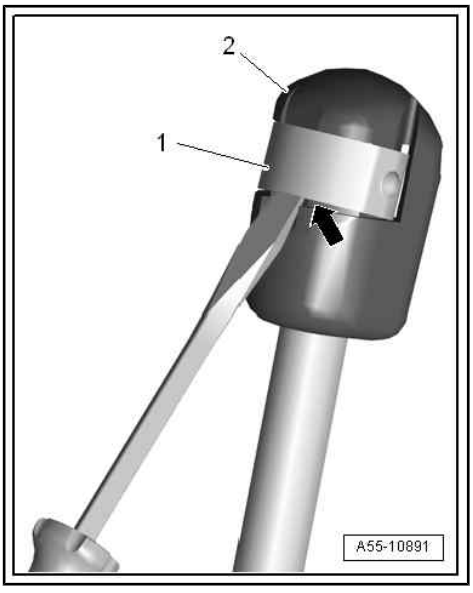
– Set adjusting buffer ⇒ page 53 .

2.7 Removing and installing gas strut

Removing

– Support rear lid or secure it in position.

– Lift retaining clip -1- slightly using a small screwdriver, and pull gas strut -2- off ball stud (top).



Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

• The cylinder end of the gas strut is installed on the body side.

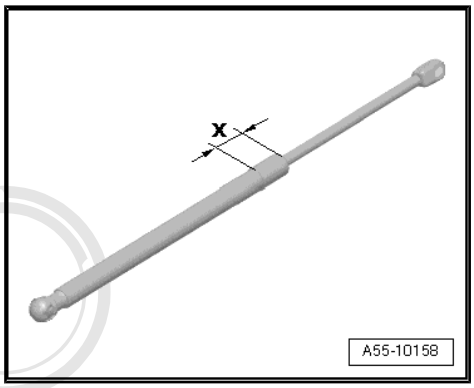
– Press gas strut onto ball-head pin until it engages audibly.

2.8 Releasing gas from gas strut

Procedure

Gas must be released from the gas strut completely before the gas strut is disposed of.

– Clamp section -x = 50 mm- of gas strut in a vice.



WARNING

Risk of eye injuries due to metal swarf.

Eye irritation and injury possible.

- ***Wear safety goggles.***

– Cover area around saw notch with a cloth to catch any escaping fluid.

– Saw open first third of cylinder part of gas strut (measured from piston rod end of cylinder).

2.9 Removing and installing rear lid lock

Removing

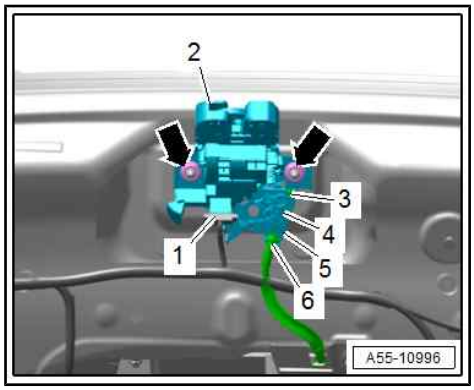
– Remove rear lid trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector -1-, unscrew nuts -arrows- and detach rear lid lock.

– Pull support bracket -6- for cable off mounting -5- for rear lid lock.

– Disengage cable -3- at operating lever -4-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

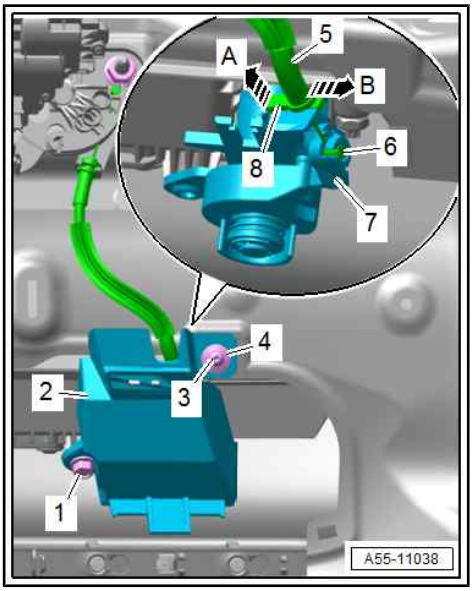
♦ Exploded view - rear lid locking mechanism ⇒ page 48

2.10 Removing and installing cable for rear lid lock

Removing

– Remove rear lid trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) .

– Unscrew bolts -1 and 3- and detach fastener -4-.
– Detach anti-theft protection -2- for lock cylinder.
– Release locking lever -8- -arrow A- and pull support bracket -5- for cable off mounting bracket -arrow B-.
– Disengage cable -6- at operating lever -7-.



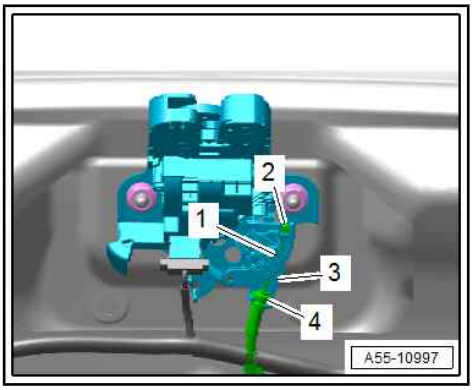
– Pull support bracket -4- for cable off mounting -3- for rear lid lock.
– Disengage cable -2- at operating lever -1- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

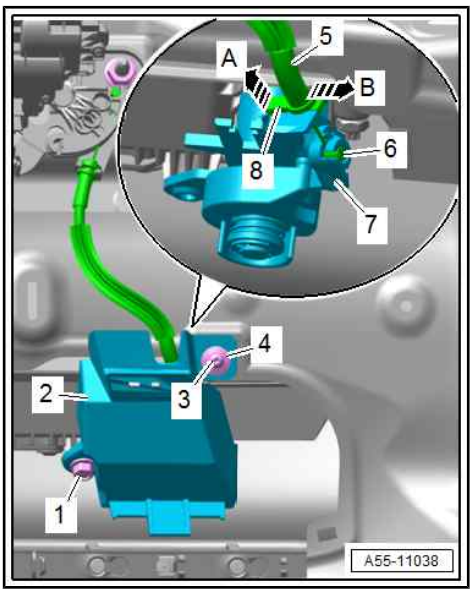
♦ Exploded view - rear lid locking mechanism ⇒ page 48



2.11 Removing and installing lock cylinder

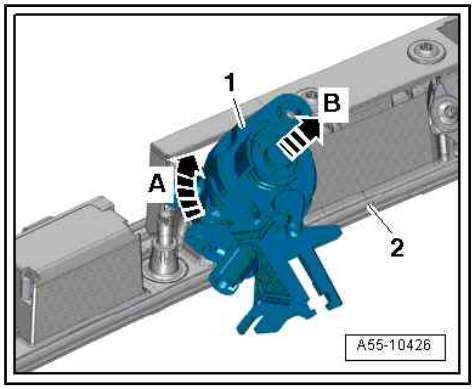
Removing

– Remove rear lid trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) .
– Unscrew bolts -1 and 3- and detach fastener -4-.
– Detach anti-theft protection -2- for lock cylinder.
– Release locking lever -8- -arrow A- and pull support bracket -5- for cable off mounting bracket -arrow B-.
– Disengage cable -6- at operating lever -7-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Turn lock cylinder -1- in clockwise direction -arrow A- and pull it out of handle trim -2- -arrow B-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

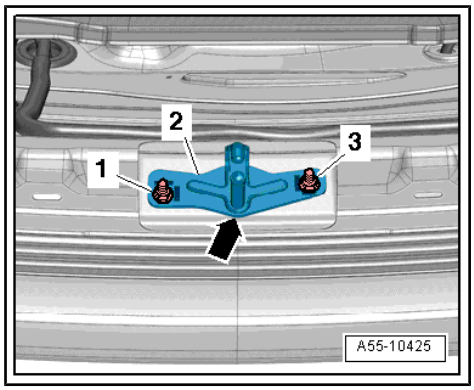
2.12 Removing and installing striker

Removing

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing lock carrier trim .

– Unscrew nuts -1 and 3- and detach striker -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert striker, making sure it is positioned correctly.

• The round side -arrow- of the striker must face upwards.

– Adjust striker ⇒ page 51 .

Tightening torques

♦ Exploded view - rear lid locking mechanism ⇒ page 48

2.13 Removing and installing actuator

Removing

– Remove lock cylinder ⇒ page 57 .

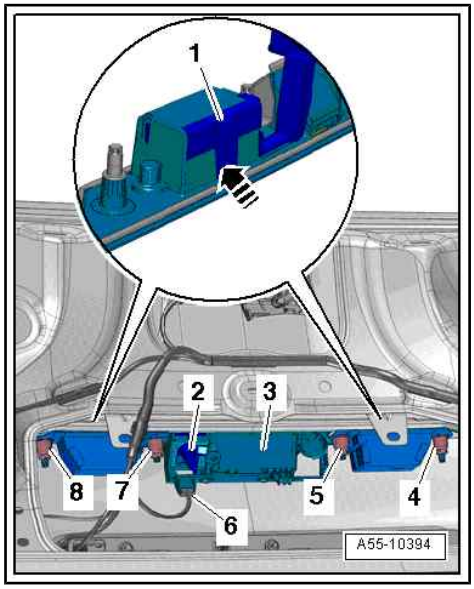
– If installed, remove reversing camera -2- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Reversing camera system; Removing and installing reversing camera - R189- .

– Unscrew cap nuts -5- and -7-.

– Unscrew cap nuts -8- and -4- and detach together with anti-theft bracket.

– Unplug electrical connector -6- at rear lid handle release button - E234- -item 3-.

– Press together locking springs -1- at housing for number plate light -arrow- and take handle trim downwards out of opening in body.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– On vehicles with reversing camera, reversing camera - R189- must be re-calibrated ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Reversing camera system; Calibrating reversing camera system .

Tightening torques

♦ Exploded view - rear lid locking mechanism ⇒ page 48

3 Convertible roof compartment lid

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid”, page 59

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment lid”, page 62

⇒ “3.3 Adjusting convertible roof compartment lid”, page 63

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment seal”, page 67

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing mounting for outer convertible roof compartment seal”, page 68

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing hinge for convertible roof compartment lid”, page 68

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing adjusting buffer”, page 69

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing manual release cable”, page 69

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing striker ”, page 70

⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing convertible roof box lid lock motor V222 ”, page 70

⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing crash hook for convertible roof compartment lid”, page 71

⇒ “3.12 Removing and installing trim for convertible roof compartment lid”, page 72

3.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid

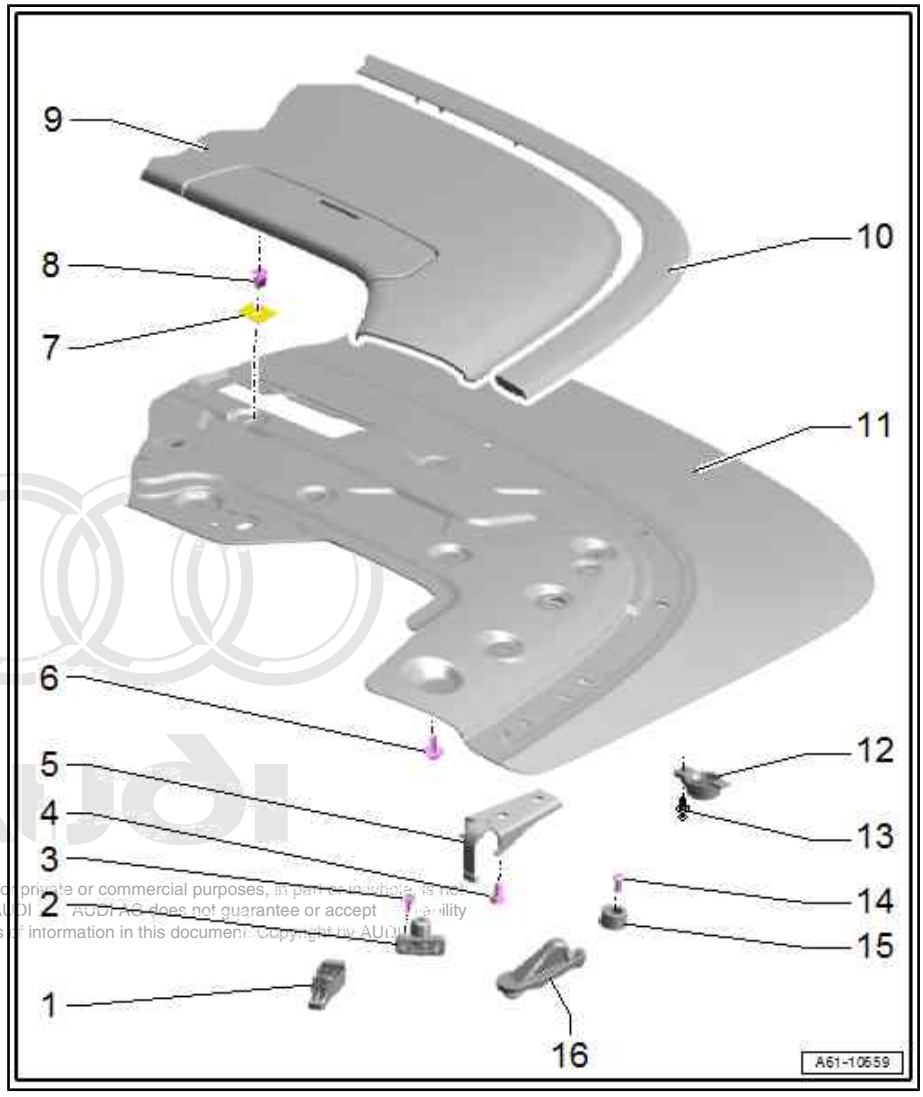
⇒ “3.1.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid, adjusting buffers, trim for convertible roof compartment lid, trim strip”, page 59

⇒ “3.1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid, convertible roof box lid lock motor, striker plate, hinge”, page 61

⇒ “3.1.3 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid, convertible roof compartment seals”, page 62

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid, adjusting buffers, trim for convertible roof compartment lid, trim strip



1 - Buffer

2 - Adjusting buffer (side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 69
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 63

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

5 - Crash hook

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 71

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

7 - Sealing piece

- ❑ Must always be seated on clip

8 - Clip

- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

9 - Trim

- ❑ For convertible roof compartment lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 72

10 - Trim strip

- ❑ For convertible roof compartment lid
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 273

11 - Convertible roof compartment lid

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 62

12 - Hold-down device

- ❑ For convertible roof

13 - Fastener

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

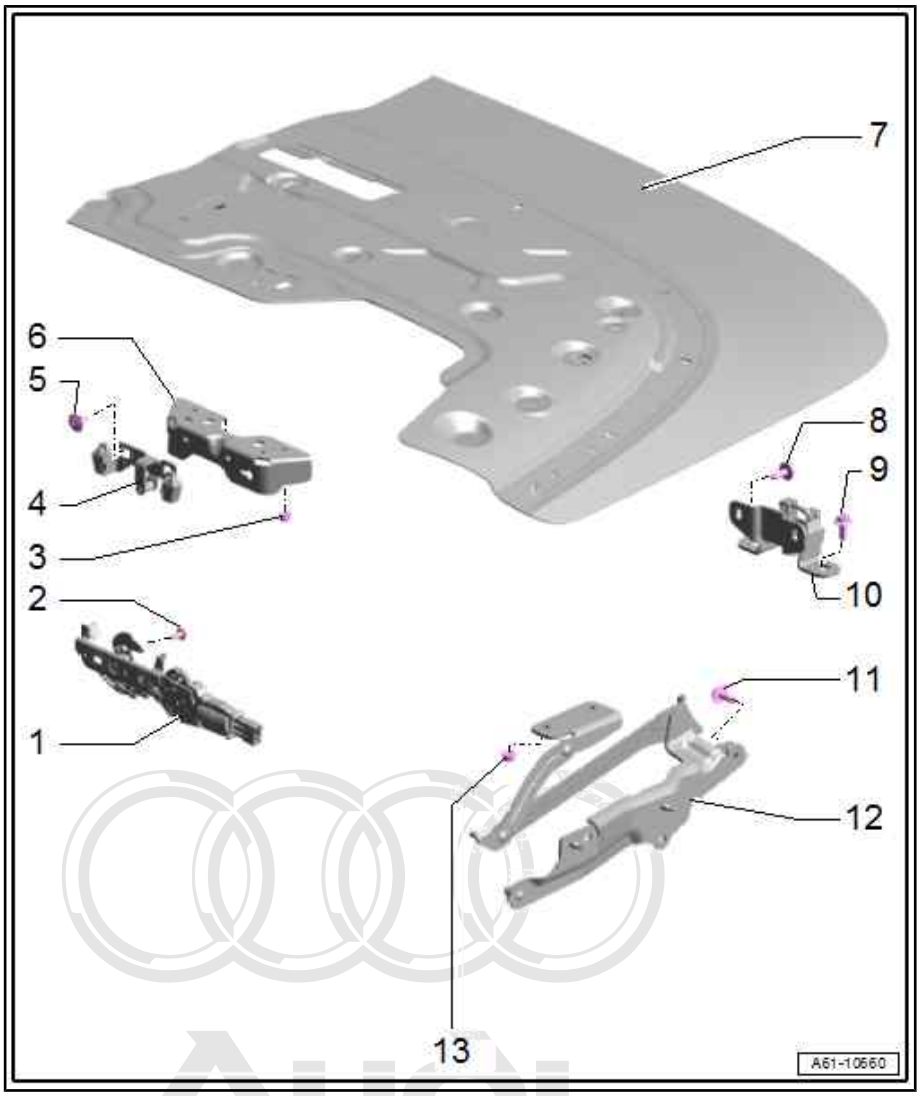
15 - Support

- ❑ For tensioner

16 - Buffer

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid, convertible roof box lid lock motor, striker plate, hinge



1 - Convertible roof box lid lock motor - V222-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

3 - Nut
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Striker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

6 - Bracket
- ❑ For striker plate

7 - Convertible roof compartment lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 62

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

10 - Hinge (rear)
- ❑ For convertible roof compartment lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 68

11 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 62

12 - Hinge (side)
- ❑ For convertible roof compartment lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 68

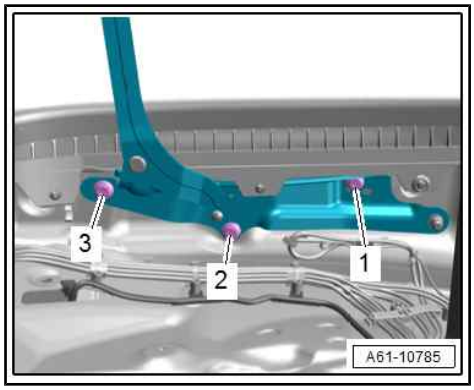
13 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Hinge (side) for convertible roof compartment lid - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolts in stages in sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque
1.	-1-	Screw in by hand as far as stop
2.	-2-	21 Nm
3.	-3-	21 Nm
4.	-1-	21 Nm



3.1.3 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid, convertible roof compartment seals

1 - Mounting

- ❑ For convertible roof compartment seal
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 68

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2 Nm

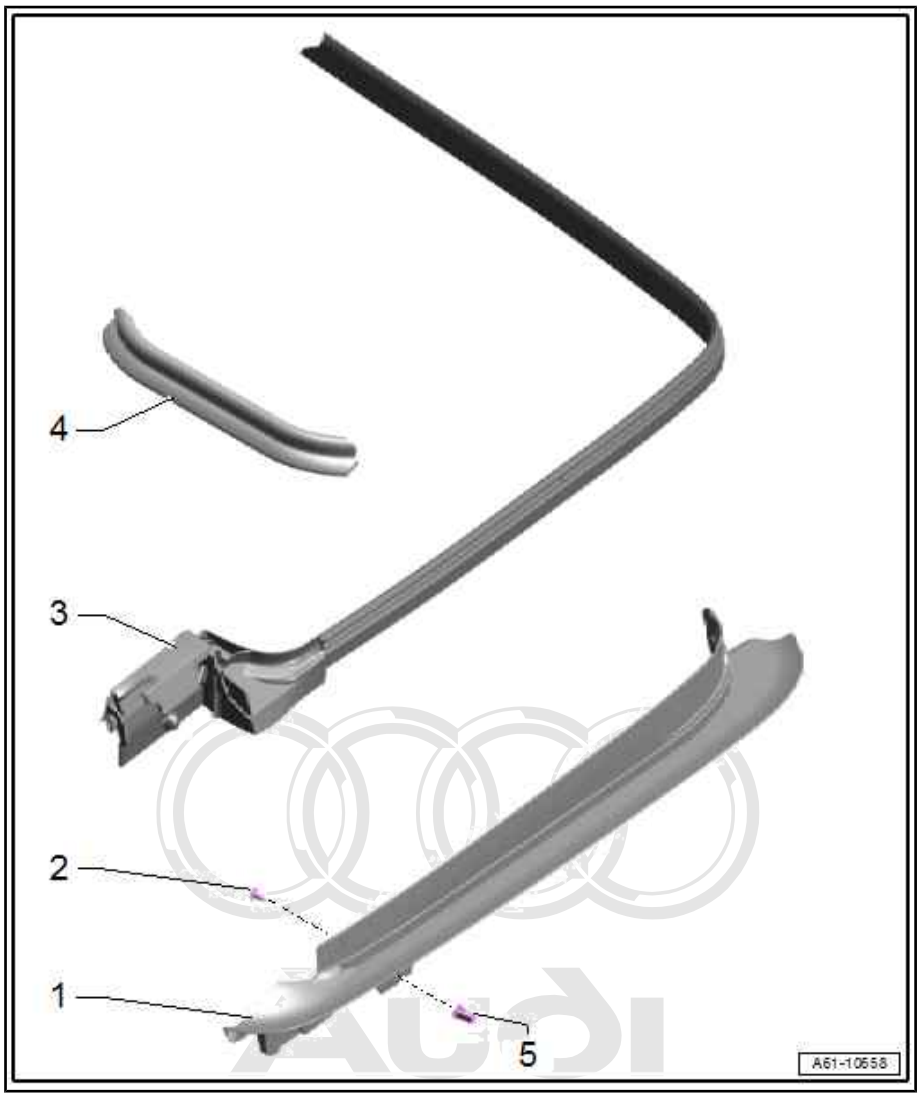
3 - Outer convertible roof compartment seal

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 67

4 - Centre convertible roof compartment seal

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 67

5 - Plastic nut



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment lid

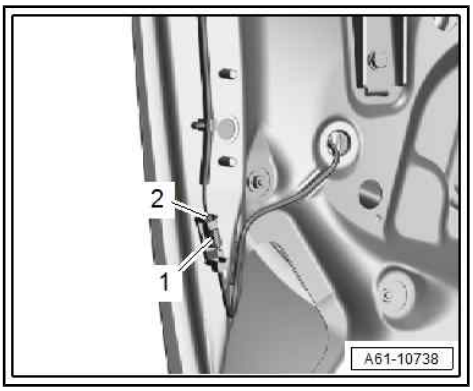
- Two further mechanics are required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 63).

Removing

– Open luggage compartment and mark bolts for re-installation.

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .

– Take aerial wire -1- out of retainer -2- and unplug electrical connector.

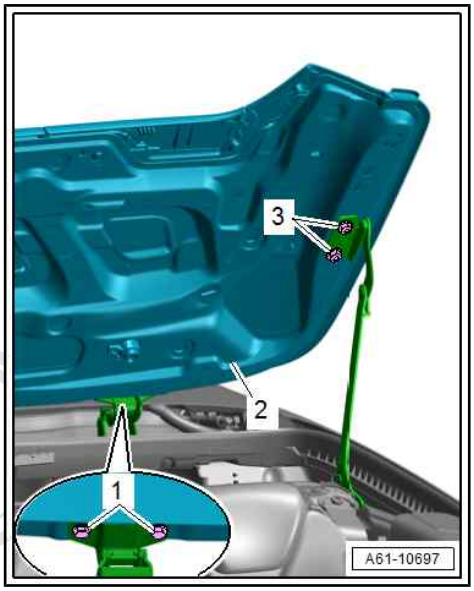


– Mark hinge and nuts -3- for re-installation.

– To avoid damaging the components during removal and installation, mask rear lid with adhesive tape in area of open convertible roof compartment lid.

– Remove bolts -1- and nuts -3-.

– Detach convertible roof compartment lid -2- together with a second mechanic; to do so, fold hinge down towards front.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Adjust convertible roof compartment lid ⇒ page 63 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “3.1.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid, adjusting buffers, trim for convertible roof compartment lid, trim strip”, page 59

3.3 Adjusting convertible roof compartment lid

⇒ “3.3.1 Adjustment dimensions”, page 63

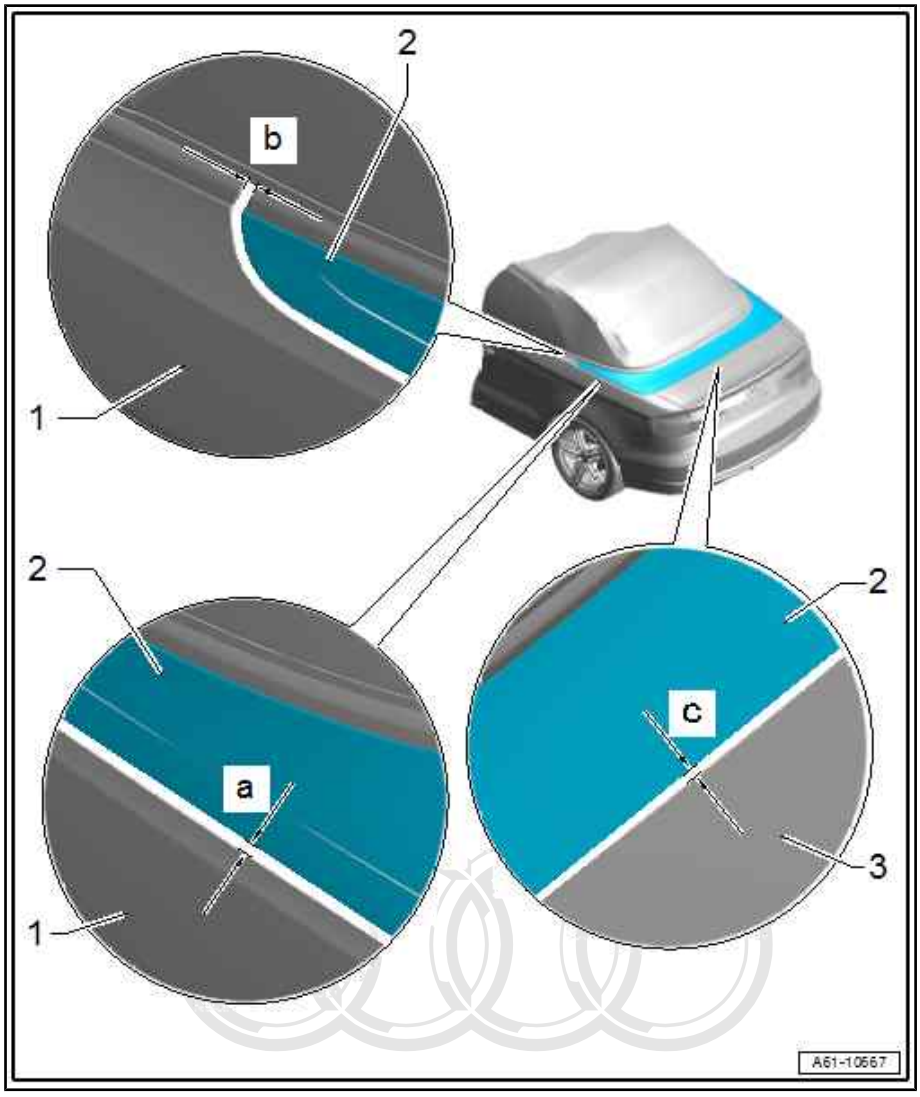
⇒ “3.3.2 Lateral, longitudinal and height adjustment at hinge”, page 65

⇒ “3.3.3 Height adjustment at striker”, page 66

⇒ “3.3.4 Height adjustment using adjusting buffer”, page 66

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.3.1 Adjustment dimensions



Convertible roof compartment lid to side panel

-1- Side panel

-2- Convertible roof compartment lid

Adjusting ⇒ page 63

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Convertible roof compartment lid to side panel

-1- Side panel

-2- Convertible roof compartment lid

Adjusting ⇒ page 63

Convertible roof compartment lid to rear lid

-2- Convertible roof compartment lid

-3- Rear lid

Adjusting ⇒ page 63

3.3.2 Lateral, longitudinal and height adjustment at hinge

Lateral and longitudinal adjustment at hinge ⇒ page 65

Height adjustment at hinge ⇒ page 66

- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 63

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Procedure

Lateral and longitudinal adjustment at hinge:

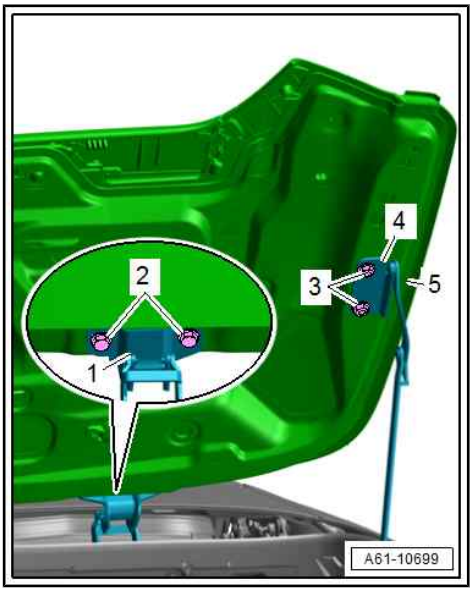
– Loosen bolts -2- and nuts -3- (left and right) at hinge -4-.

– Adjust convertible roof compartment lid -5- (lateral and longitudinal adjustment).

– Tighten bolts.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “3.1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid, convertible roof box lid lock motor, striker plate, hinge”, page 61 .



Height adjustment at hinge:

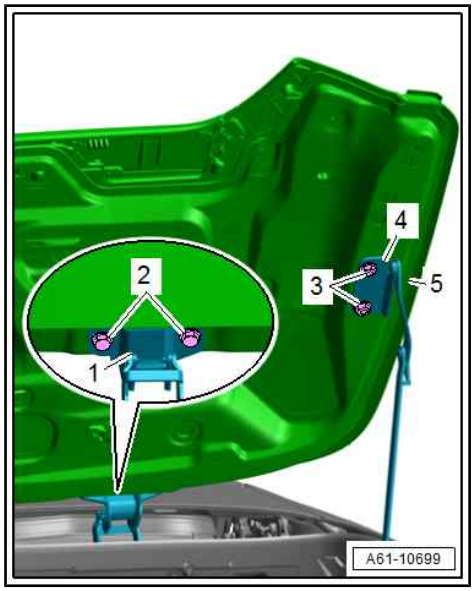
– Unscrew bolts -2- (left and right) for hinge -1-.

– Adjust height of convertible roof compartment lid -5-.

– Tighten bolts.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “3.1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid, convertible roof box lid lock motor, striker plate, hinge”, page 61 .



3.3.3 Height adjustment at striker

• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 63

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



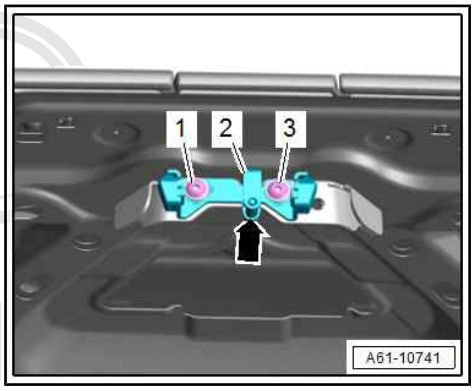
– Loosen bolts -1 and 3- until striker -2- can be moved.

• Closing check for convertible roof compartment lid: Lid must fall into striker from neutral position and engage fully.

– Tighten bolts.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “3.1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid, convertible roof box lid lock motor, striker plate, hinge”, page 61 .



3.3.4 Height adjustment using adjusting buffer

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 63

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-

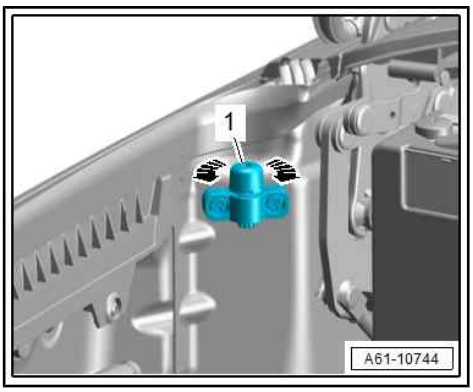


– Turn adjusting buffer -1- -arrows- until convertible roof compartment lid makes contact when closed.

• The convertible roof compartment lid must rest lightly on the rear lid stop.

• Check that convertible roof compartment lid makes full contact and closes completely by pressing or pulling side edges of convertible roof compartment lid.

– Repeat adjustment if necessary.



3.4 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment seal

⇒ “3.4.1 Removing and installing centre convertible roof compartment seal”, page 67

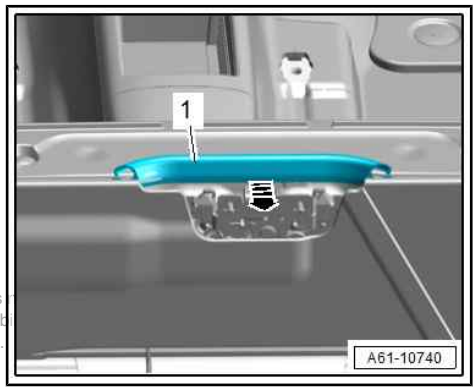
⇒ “3.4.2 Removing and installing outer convertible roof compartment seal”, page 67

3.4.1 Removing and installing centre convertible roof compartment seal

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .

– Pull convertible roof compartment seal -1- off body seam in vicinity of convertible roof box lid lock motor -arrow-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

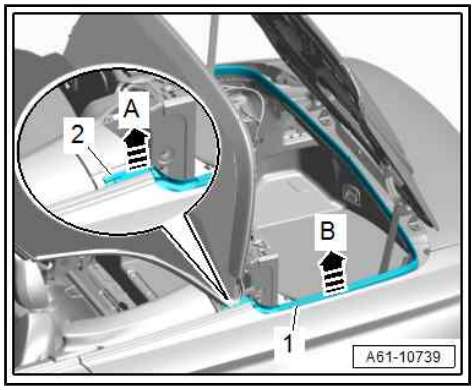
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.4.2 Removing and installing outer convertible roof compartment seal

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .

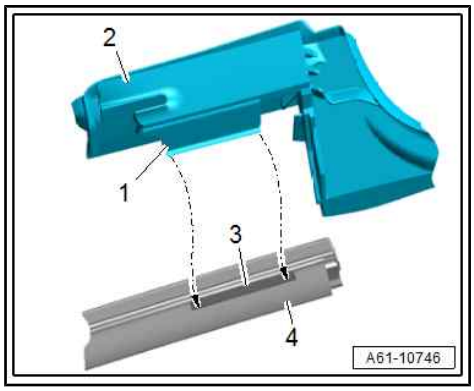
– Pull convertible roof compartment seal -2- off body seam in vicinity of window slot trim strip -arrow A-.
– Pull convertible roof compartment seal -1- off convertible roof compartment -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

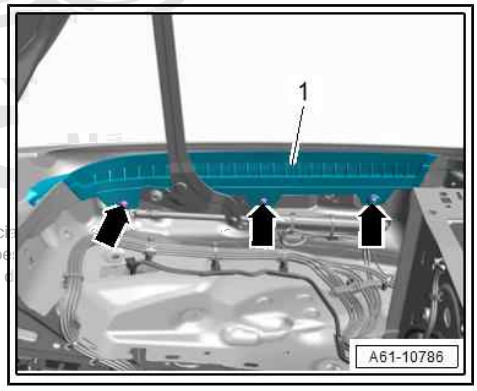
– Position convertible roof compartment seal -2- on body seam and press it on evenly; retaining strip -1- must engage in opening -3- of window slot trim strip -4- when convertible roof compartment lid is closed.
• Convertible roof compartment seal must be flush with inside of window slot trim strip.



3.5 Removing and installing mounting for outer convertible roof compartment seal

Removing

– Remove outer convertible roof compartment seal ⇒ page 67 .
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Pull mounting -1- off upwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Fit mounting on body flange as far as stop.

Tightening torques

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

◆ ⇒ “3.1.3 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid, convertible roof compartment seals”, page 62 .

3.6 Removing and installing hinge for convertible roof compartment lid

Removing

– Remove convertible roof compartment lid ⇒ page 62 .
– Mark bolts on hinge for re-installation.

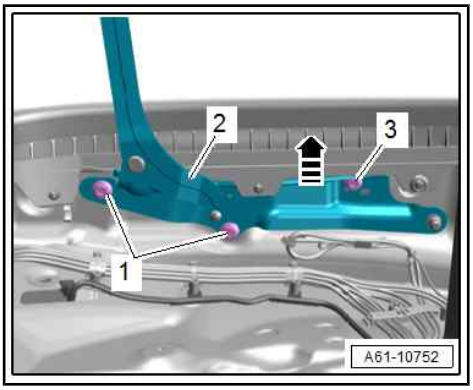
Hinge (side):

– Detach hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid ⇒ page 179 .

– Remove bolts -1 and 3-.

– Slide hinge -2- upwards -arrow- until it can be disengaged from key-hole opening.

– Pull out hinge towards rear and detach.



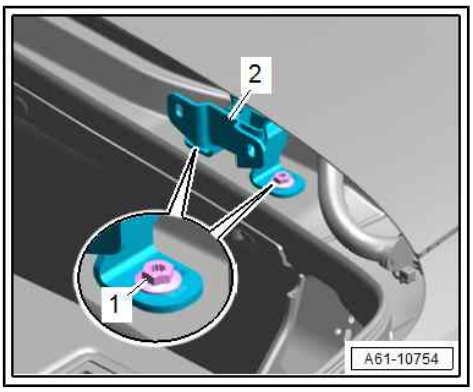
Note

If the hinge cannot be disengaged, the mounting for the outer convertible roof compartment seal must be removed ⇒ page 68 .

Hinge (rear):

– Remove bolts -1-.

– Detach hinge -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Adjust convertible roof compartment lid ⇒ page 63 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ Fig. ""Hinge (side) for convertible roof compartment lid - tightening torque and sequence"" , page 62

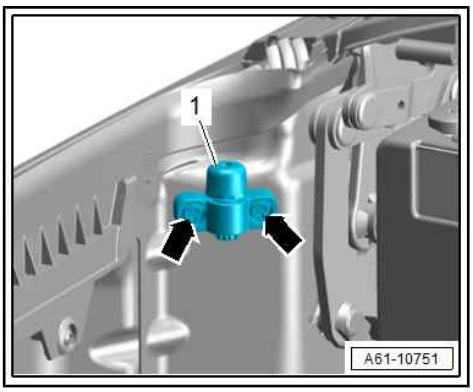
◆ ⇒ "3.1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid, convertible roof box lid lock motor, striker plate, hinge", page 61 .

3.7 Removing and installing adjusting buffer

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach adjusting buffer -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Set adjusting buffer ⇒ page 63 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ "3.1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid, convertible roof box lid lock motor, striker plate, hinge", page 61 .

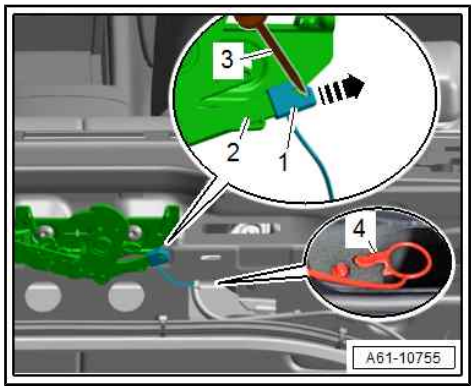
3.8 Removing and installing manual release cable

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .

– Remove back panel trim (top and rear left) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels .

– Release rear seat backrests.
– Move eye -4- clear at body.
– Press release cable -1- off operating lever -2- with a narrow-bladed screwdriver -3- -arrow-.



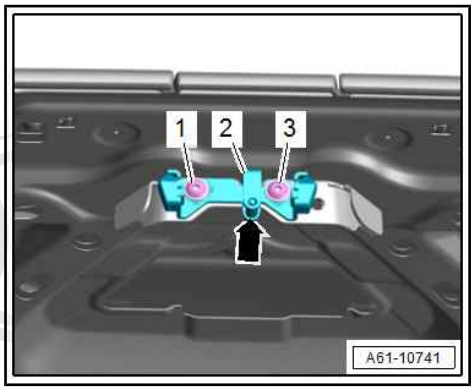
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

3.9 Removing and installing striker

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .
– Unscrew bolts -1 and 3- and detach striker -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert striker, making sure it is positioned correctly.
• The round side -arrow- of the striker must face downwards.
– Adjust striker plate ⇒ page 63 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “3.1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid, convertible roof box lid lock motor, striker plate, hinge”, page 61 .

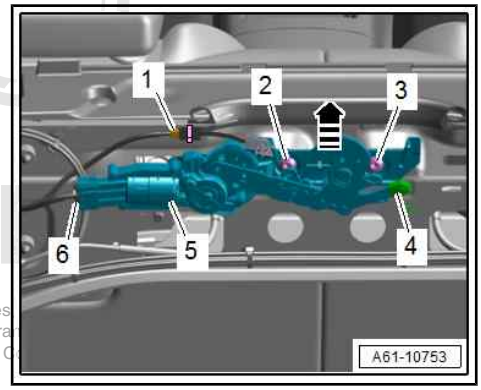
3.10 Removing and installing convertible roof box lid lock motor - V222-

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .
– Remove back panel trim (top and rear left) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels .

– Unplug electrical connector -6-.
– Unplug electrical connector -1- and move it clear.
– Move manual release cable -4- clear.
– Unscrew bolts -2 and 3- and detach convertible roof box lid lock motor -5-; to do so, disengage motor from key-hole opening in direction of -arrow-.
– If convertible roof box lid lock motor is to be renewed, also remove the following components:



♦ Manual release cable ⇒ page 69
♦ Convertible roof box lid released switch ⇒ page 189

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, ... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee ... with respect to the correctness of information in this document. ...

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “3.1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid, convertible roof box lid lock motor, striker plate, hinge”, page 61 .

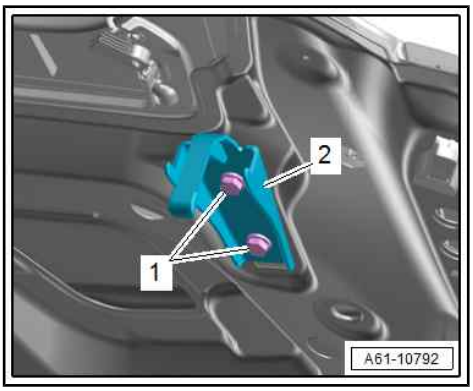
3.11 Removing and installing crash hook for convertible roof compartment lid

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .
– Unscrew bolts -1- and detach crash hook -2-.



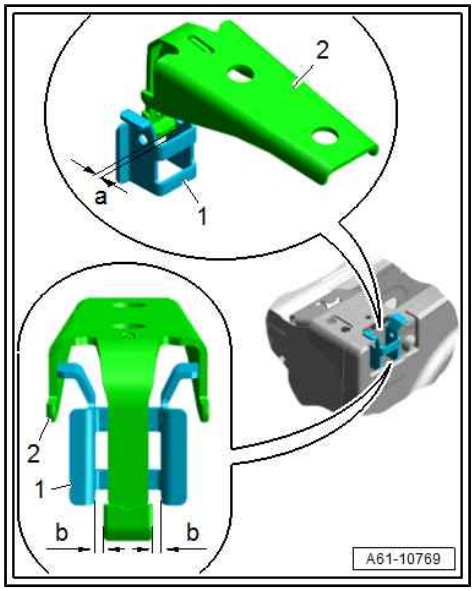
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

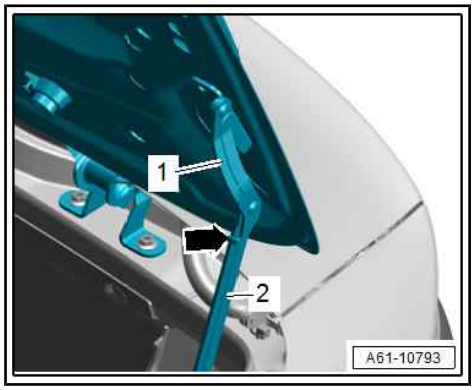
– Fit new crash hook and screw in by hand as far as stop.

– Close convertible roof compartment lid by hand to such an extent that crash hook -2- is inserted in mounting -1-.

- Dimension -a- = 3 mm
- Dimension -b- = 3 mm



– Open convertible roof compartment lid again and secure it in “open” position to make sure it is not closed unintentionally; to do so, press strut -2- to the rear until stop -arrow- of support -1- makes contact with strut.

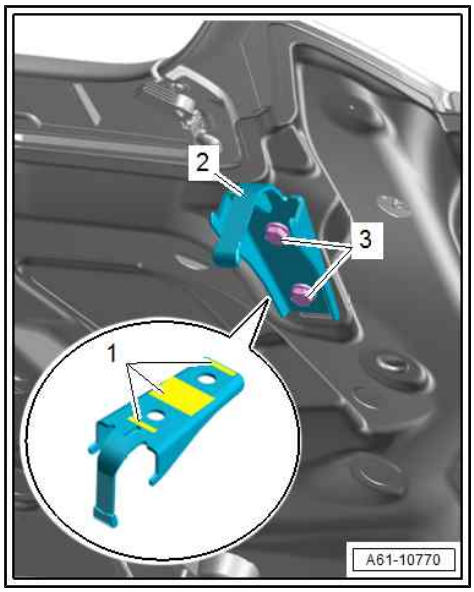


– Mark crash hook -2-, unscrew bolts -3- and detach.

– Clean bonding surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .

– Peel protective film off adhesive strip -1-.

– Fit crash hook according to marks and tighten bolts to specified torque.



Audi
Copyright by AUDI AG. This document is not to be copied or made available to third parties unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques

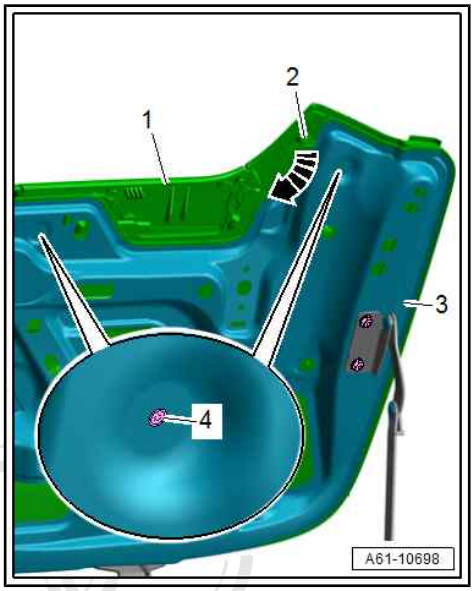
♦ ⇒ “3.1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid, convertible roof box lid lock motor, striker plate, hinge”, page 61 .

3.12 Removing and installing trim for convertible roof compartment lid

Removing

– Remove trim strip ⇒ page 280 .

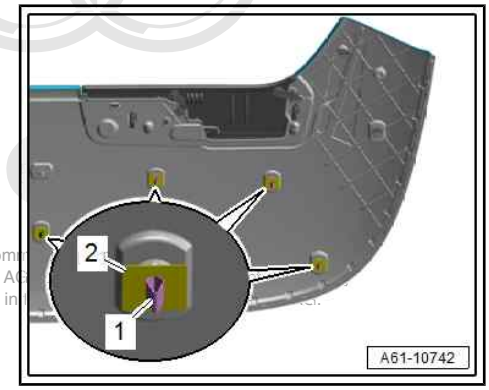
– Remove bolts -4-.
– Release locking lever -2- in clockwise direction -arrow-.
– Lever out trim -1- for convertible roof compartment lid and detach from convertible roof compartment lid -3-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure that there is a sealing piece -2- on each clip -1-.
– Press clips on until they engage audibly.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “3.1.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid, adjusting buffers, trim for convertible roof compartment lid, trim strip”, page 59 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of information in

4 Tank flap unit

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - tank flap unit”, page 74

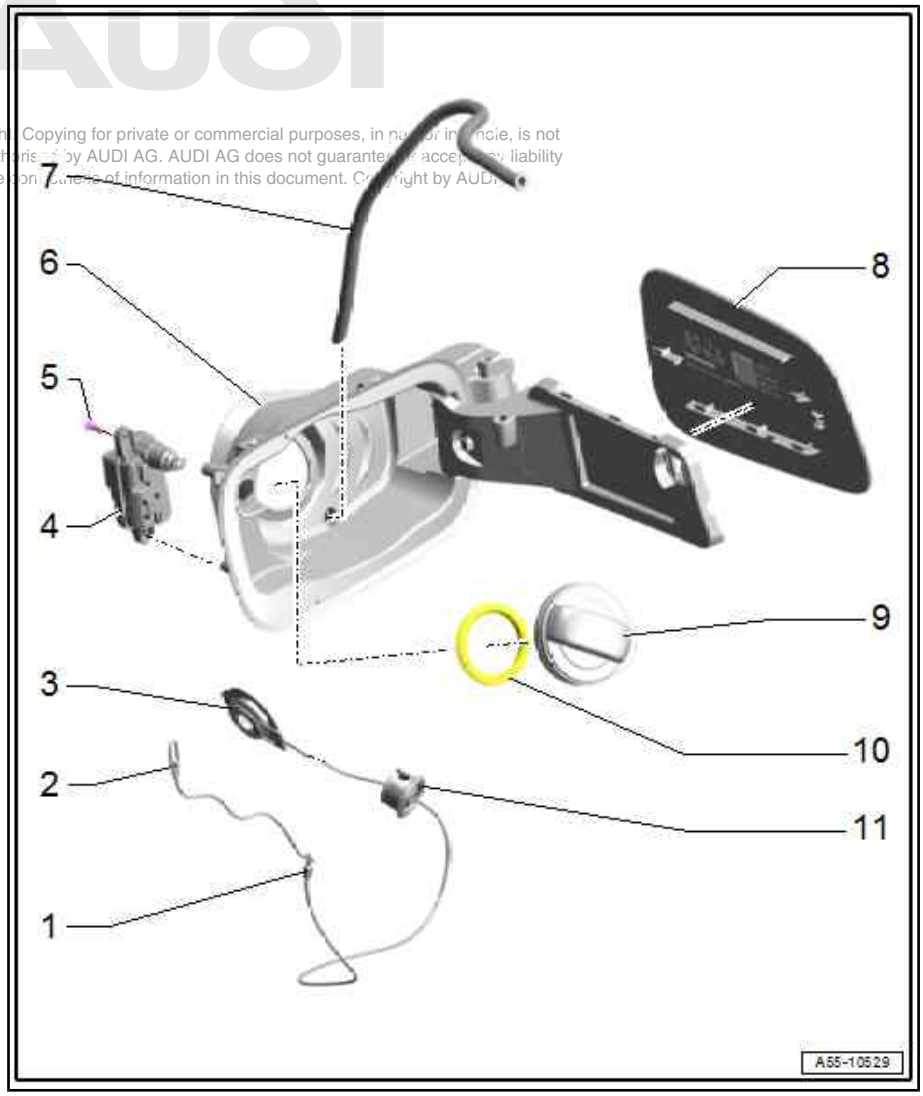
⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing tank flap unit”, page 75

⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing trim panel for tank flap unit”, page 76

⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing drain hose for tank flap unit”, page 77

⇒ “4.5 Removing and installing manual release cable”, page 78

4.1 Exploded view - tank flap unit



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Manual release cable (front)

- ❑ Extension into vehicle interior
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 78

2 - Manual release cable (rear)

- ❑ For opening tank flap
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 78

3 - Cap

- ❑ For manual release cable

4 - Tank filler flap locking motor - V155-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 115

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

6 - Tank flap unit

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 75

7 - Drain hose

- ❑ For tank flap unit
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 77

8 - Trim panel for tank flap unit

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 76

9 - Filler cap

- ❑ With retaining strap

10 - Seal

11 - Grommet

4.2 Removing and installing tank flap unit

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 74 .

Removing

– Unfasten front section of wheel housing liner (right-side) and push to side ⇒ page 304 .

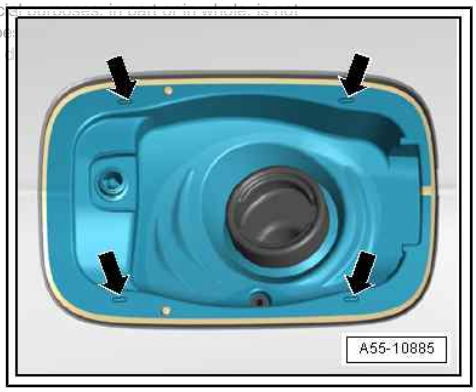
– Move drain hose clear at body.

– Remove trim panel for tank flap unit ⇒ page 76 .

– Remove filler cap for filler neck of fuel tank.

– Release tank flap unit at marked locations -arrows-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



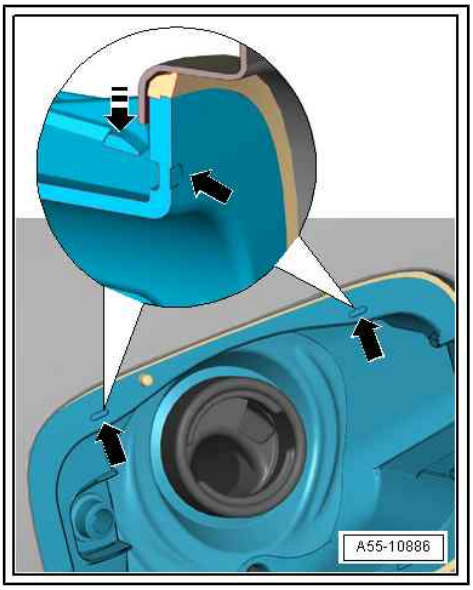
– Push a small screwdriver at top of tank flap unit through marked locations into tank flap from below at an angle and over catches (in direction of -arrows-).

– Pull screwdriver upwards slightly to release catches behind.

– Insert screwdriver on underside of tank flap unit from above at an angle and push it in through marked locations.

– Press screwdriver down slightly to release catches behind.

– Pull tank flap unit with drain hose out of opening (one catch at a time).

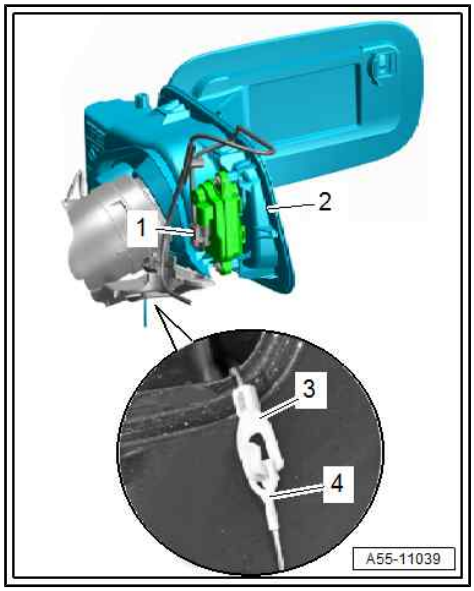


– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Disconnect manual release cable (rear) -4- from manual release cable (front) -3-.
– Detach tank flap unit -2-.
– Screw filler cap back onto fuel filler neck.

Installing

– When installing tank flap unit, insert it in opening for tank flap on hinge side first and then press it in at rear.

• Catches must engage audibly.



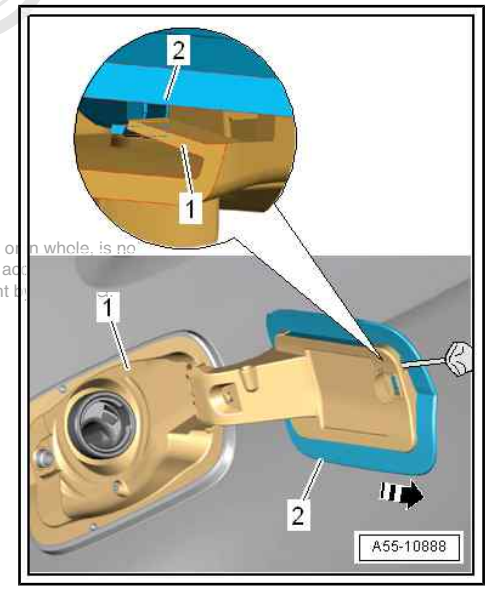
4.3 Removing and installing trim panel for tank flap unit

Removing

– Open tank flap.
– Using a screwdriver, release retaining clip in recess between trim panel -2- and tank flap unit -1-.
– Pull trim panel slightly off tank flap unit towards rear -arrow- and detach.

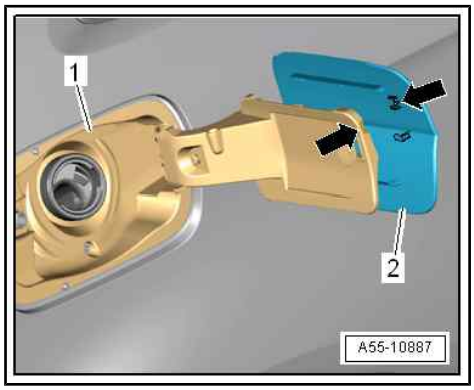
Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– When fitting trim panel onto tank flap unit -1-, guides on trim panel -2- must be applied in front of mounting points -arrows-.
– Slide trim panel forwards until retaining clip engages audibly.



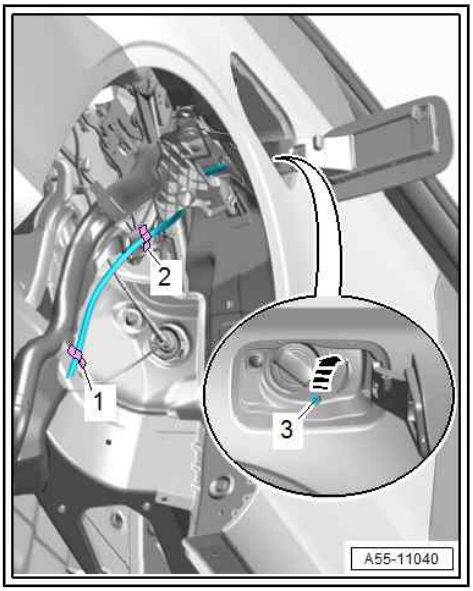
4.4 Removing and installing drain hose for tank flap unit

Removing

– Unfasten front section of wheel housing liner (right-side) and push to side ⇒ page 304 .

– Detach adhesive strips -1- and -2-.

– Pull drain hose -3- upwards out of tank flap unit -arrow-.



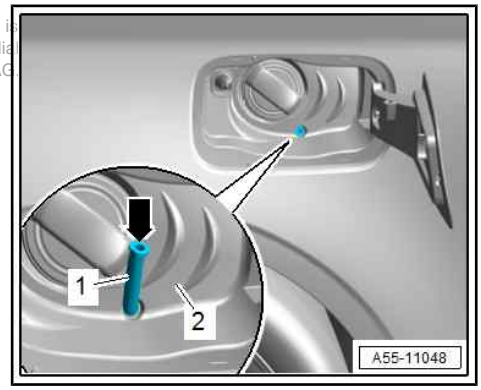
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

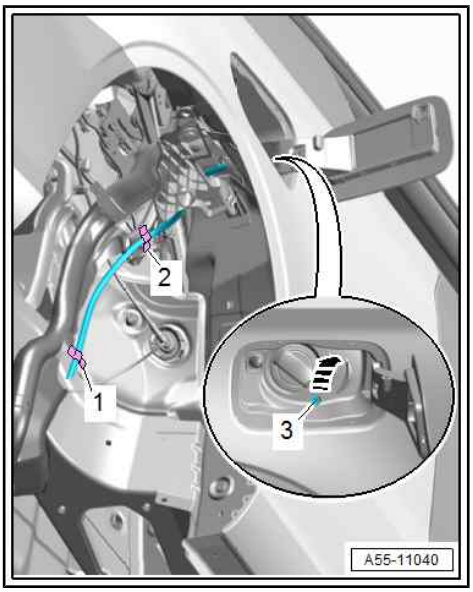
Audi
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Slide drain hose -1- into tank flap cup -2- from above.

• Collar -arrow- of drain hose must be at the top.



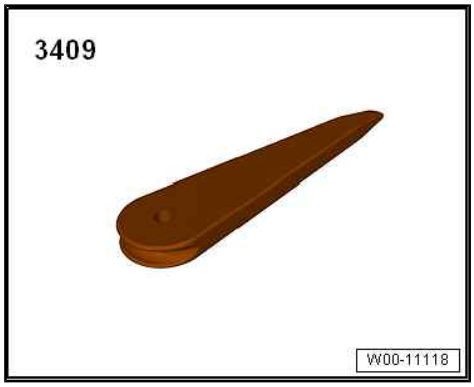
– Secure drain hose -3- to body with adhesive strips -1- and -2-.



4.5 Removing and installing manual release cable

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



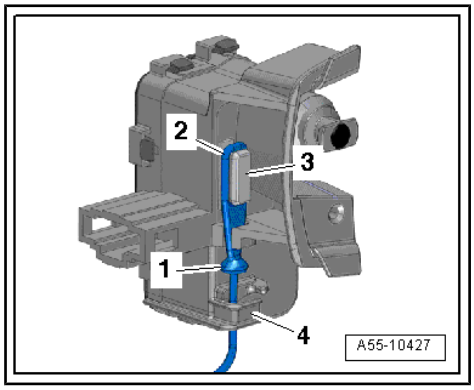
Removing

Manual release cable (rear):

– Remove tank filler flap locking motor ⇒ page 115 .

– Thread manual release cable -1- out of guide -4-.

– Disengage lug -2- at mounting -3- for manual release mechanism and pull it out of cable support bracket.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Manual release cable (front):

– Remove tank flap unit ⇒ page 75 .

– Remove side trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim .

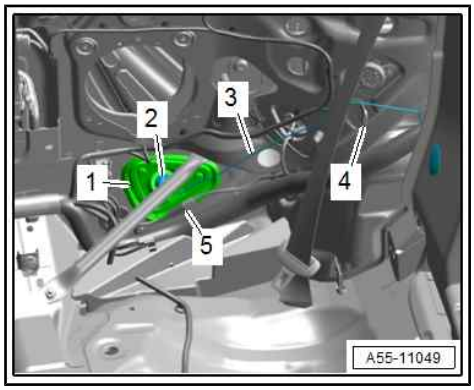
– Remove loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .

– Move manual release cable -3- clear at mounting -4-.

– Move aerial connector -5- clear at inner cover -1-.

– Prise off inner cover using removal wedge - 3409- and move clear grommet -2- with manual release cable.

– Take out manual release cable.



Installing

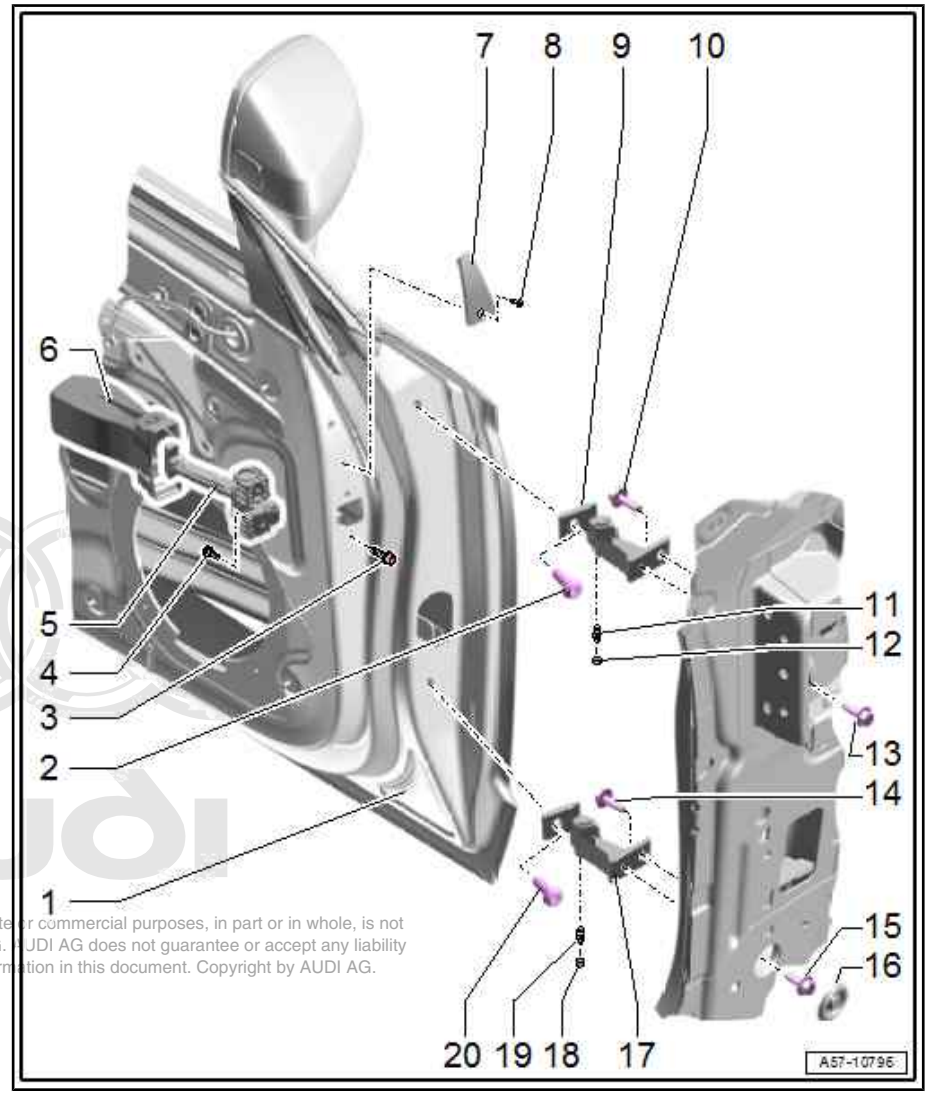
Install in reverse order of removal.

57 – Front doors, door components, central locking

1 Door

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door”, page 79
⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - door seals”, page 80
⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing door”, page 80
⇒ “1.4 Adjusting door”, page 82
⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing door arrester”, page 85
⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing inner door seal”, page 86
⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing outer door seal”, page 88

1.1 Exploded view - door



1 - Door
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 80

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 45 Nm

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 33 Nm

5 - Door arrester
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 85

6 - Cap
- ❑ For door arrester
- ❑ Note direction of installation

7 - Support piece
- ❑ Country-specific version

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 10 Nm

9 - Door hinge (top)

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 32 Nm

11 - Stud
- ❑ 23 Nm

12 - Cap
- ❑ Fit onto stud

13 - Bolt
- ❑ 32 Nm

14 - Bolt
- ❑ 32 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

15 - Bolt
- ❑ 32 Nm

16 - Cover

17 - Door hinge (bottom)

18 - Cap
- ❑ Fit onto stud

19 - Stud
- ❑ 23 Nm

20 - Bolt
- ❑ 45 Nm

1.2 Exploded view - door seals

1 - Outer door seal
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 88

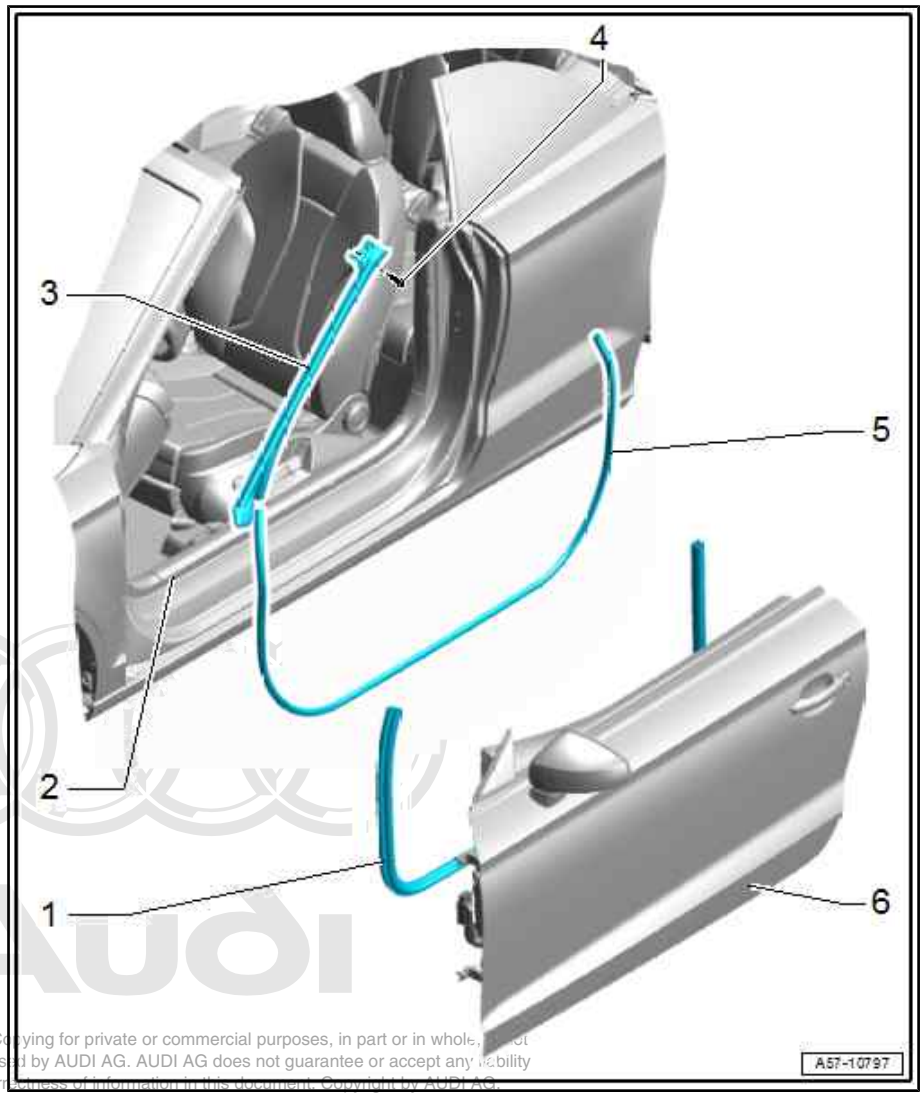
2 - Body

3 - Door seal at A-pillar
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 87

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

5 - Inner door seal
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 86

6 - Door



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Removing and installing door

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 81).

Removing

– Unplug door disconnector at A-pillar ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Connectors; Unplugging door disconnector (left-side) .

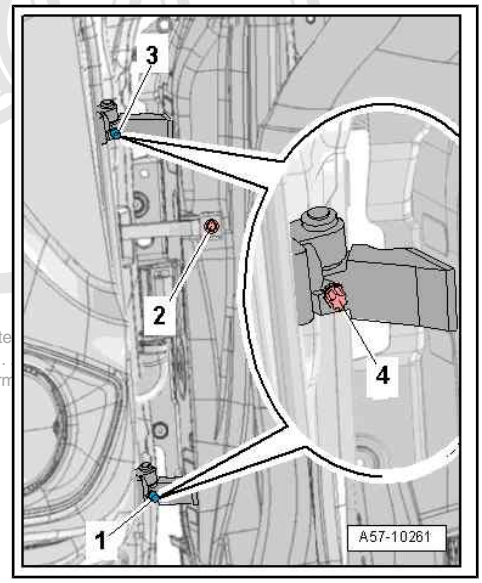
– Mask A-pillar in vicinity of door arrester with adhesive tape to avoid damaging paintwork.

– Unscrew bolt -2- for door arrester.

– Detach caps -1- and -3- from studs.

– Unscrew studs -4- from door hinge (top and bottom).

– Carefully lift door off hinges.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

• No adjustment has to be performed after the front door has been installed.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
with respect to the correctness of inform

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door”, page 79 .

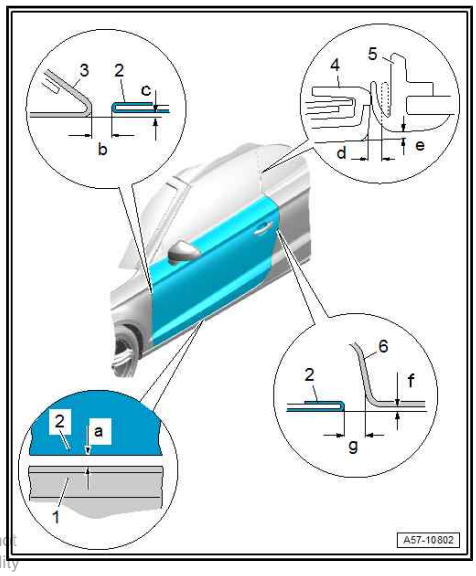
1.4 Adjusting door

⇒ “1.4.1 Adjustment dimensions”, page 82

⇒ “1.4.2 Lateral and longitudinal adjustment at hinge”, page 82

⇒ “1.4.3 Lateral adjustment at striker”, page 84

1.4.1 Adjustment dimensions



Front door to body

- Gap width -a- = 5.0 ± 0.5 mm

-1- Body

-2- Front door

Adjusting ⇒ page 82

Front door to wing

- Gap width -b- = 3.5 ± 0.5 mm
- Flush alignment -c- = 0 – 1.0 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 0.5 mm

-2- Front door

-3- Wing panel

Adjusting ⇒ page 82

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Front door to side window (rear)

- Gap width -d- = 11.6 mm
- Flush alignment -e- = 0 + 1.0 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 1.0 mm

-4- Side window (front)

-5- Side window (rear)

Adjusting ⇒ page 82

Door (front) to side panel

- Gap width -g- = 3.4 ± 0.5 mm
- Flush alignment -f- = 0 ± 0.5 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 0.5 mm

-2- Door

-6- Side panel

Adjusting ⇒ page 82

1.4.2 Lateral and longitudinal adjustment at hinge

Preparatory work for longitudinal and lateral adjustment at hinge ⇒ page 83

Lateral adjustment at hinge ⇒ page 83

Longitudinal adjustment at hinge ⇒ page 83

- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 82

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



♦ Template - T40038 /17-

Preparatory work for longitudinal and lateral adjustment at hinge:

Driver side:

– Remove bracket for onboard supply control unit ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes .

– Remove connector point at A-pillar (left-side) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Connectors; Removing and installing connector point at A-pillar (left-side) .

Passenger side:

– Remove glove box ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Shelves / trim panels; Removing and installing glove box .

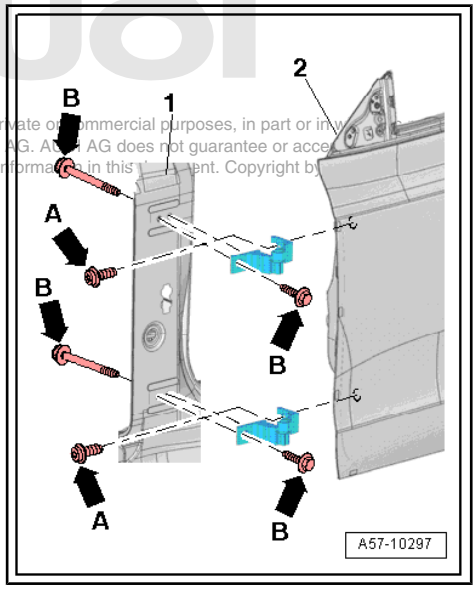
– Remove connector point at A-pillar (right-side) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Connectors; Removing and installing connector point at A-pillar (right-side) .

Lateral adjustment at hinge:

• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 82

– Perform preparatory work for lateral adjustment ⇒ page 83 .

– Loosen bolts (top and bottom) -arrows A- at hinge.



Note

♦ *Bolt -A- is a so-called fitted bolt; therefore it is usually not necessary to adjust the door via this bolt.*

♦ *If it does become necessary to make an adjustment via this bolt, the bolt can be replaced with a bolt of the same length and property class.*

– Adjust door -2- lengthwise.

– Tighten bolts -arrows A-.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door”, page 79 .

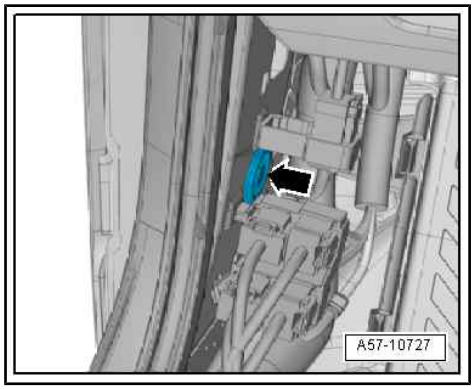
Longitudinal adjustment at hinge:

• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 82

– Perform preparatory work for longitudinal adjustment ⇒ page 83 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

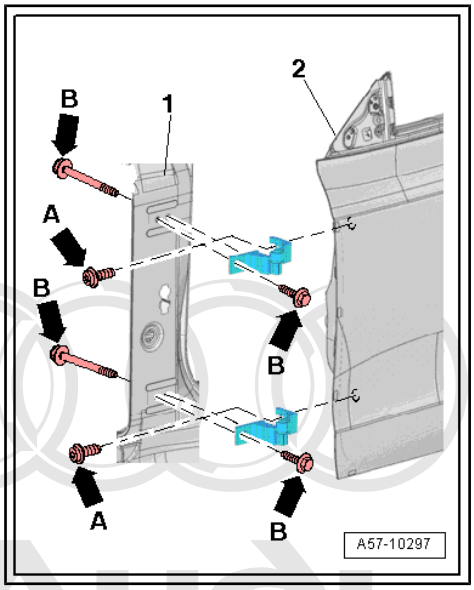
– Pull off cover -arrow-.



– Unscrew bolts -arrows B- at top and bottom of hinge and on A-pillar -item 1-.
– Adjust door -2- lengthwise.
– Tighten bolts -arrows B-.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door”, page 79 .



1.4.3 Lateral adjustment at striker

• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 82

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Setting gauge - 3371-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

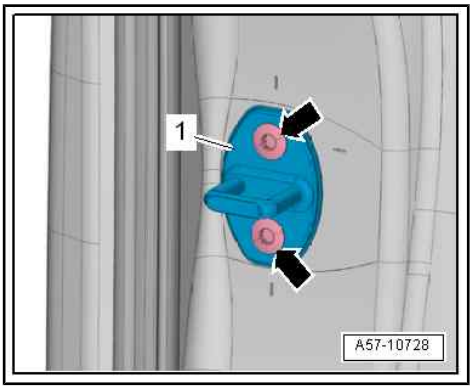


– Loosen bolts -arrows-.

– Move striker -1- until door is flush with body contour.

- The striker is only to be used for adjustment towards the centre of the vehicle.
- Do not adjust the height of the door via the striker; otherwise the door lock will be damaged.
- If adjustment is correct, striker should engage centrally in door lock.

– Tighten bolts -arrows-.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 93

1.5 Removing and installing door arrester

Removing

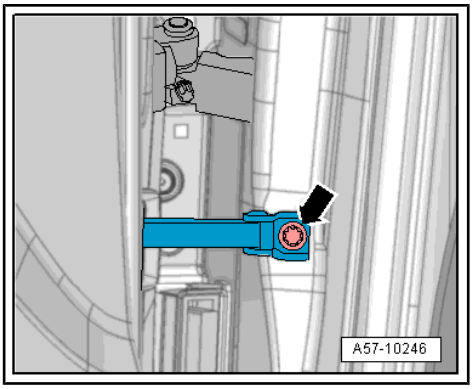
– Move door window to “closed” position.

– Remove door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (front); Removing and installing door trim (front) .

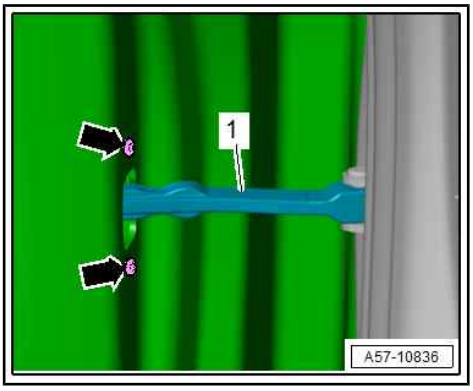
– Remove lower loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .

– Mask A-pillar in vicinity of door arrester with adhesive tape to avoid damaging paintwork.

– Unscrew bolt -arrow- for door arrester.



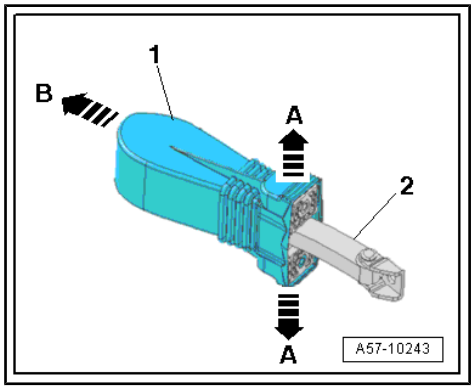
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and take out door arrester -1- inwards.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull rubber sleeve -1- on door arrester to the side slightly -arrows A-.

– Detach rubber sleeve from door arrester -2- -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Slide rubber sleeve onto door arrester (make sure rubber sleeve is fitted on correct side).

• Lettering for left or right side must be legible from top.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door”, page 79 .

1.6 Removing and installing inner door seal

⇒ “1.6.1 Removing and installing inner door seal”, page 86

⇒ “1.6.2 Removing and installing door seal at A-pillar”, page 87

1.6.1 Removing and installing inner door seal

Removing

– Remove side trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim .

– Remove A-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing A-pillar trim .

– Pull inner door seal off body flange.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

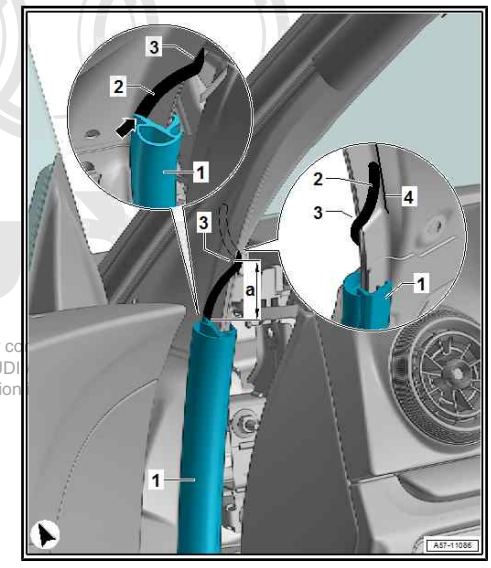
• Butyl adhesive sealing cord - D 450 273 A2- -2- must be bonded onto body between inner door seal -1- and door seal at A-pillar.

– Join two 100 mm butyl adhesive sealing cords longitudinally.

– Mark dimension -a- = 50 mm from inner door seal -1-.

– Route butyl adhesive sealing cord -2- starting at inner edge -arrow- of inner door seal -1- along to mark -3-.

– Bend butyl adhesive sealing cord at mark -3- and route it along to rounded edge -4-.



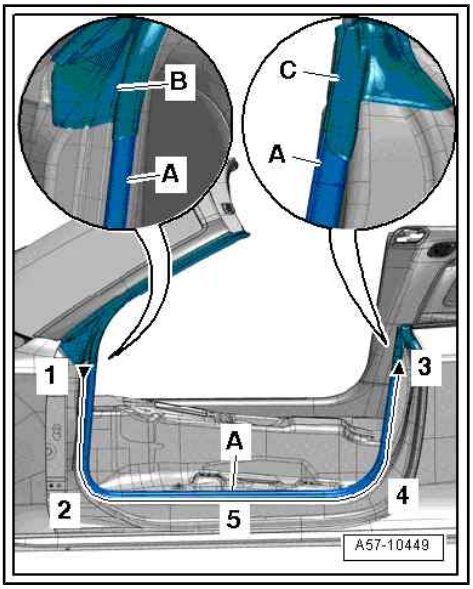
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI
with respect to the correctness of information

– Install inner door seal -A- on body flange in the sequence -1 … 5-.

• Seal at A-pillar and window slot trim strip (rear) must be installed.

Sequence for further installation:

1. Position door seal at A-pillar (top) on joint at seal at A-pillar.
2. Apply door seal on body flange in area of A-pillar and side member.
3. Position door seal at B-pillar (top) flush against inner window slot trim strip -C-.
4. Apply door seal on body flange in area of B-pillar and side member.
5. Position door seal on body flange in area of side member.
6. Press on all sections of door seal.



1.6.2 Removing and installing door seal at A-pillar

Removing

– Remove A-pillar trim (top and bottom) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing A-pillar trim .

– Remove bolt -4-.

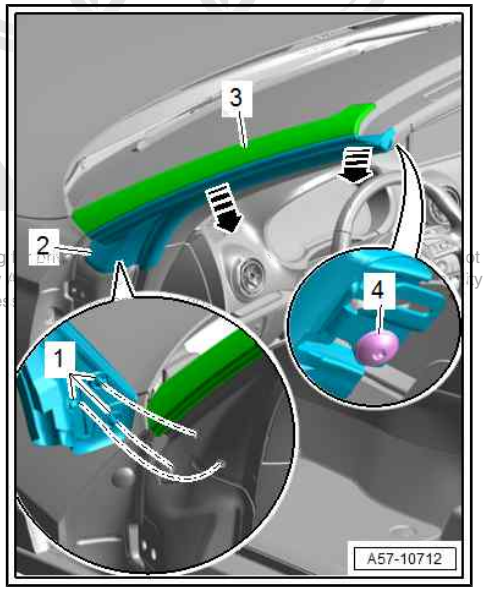
– Pull seal -2- off body flange at A-pillar and out of guide for windscreen trim strip -3- -arrows-.

– Pull off retaining lugs -1- at A-pillar.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying
permitted unless authorised by
with respect to the correctnes



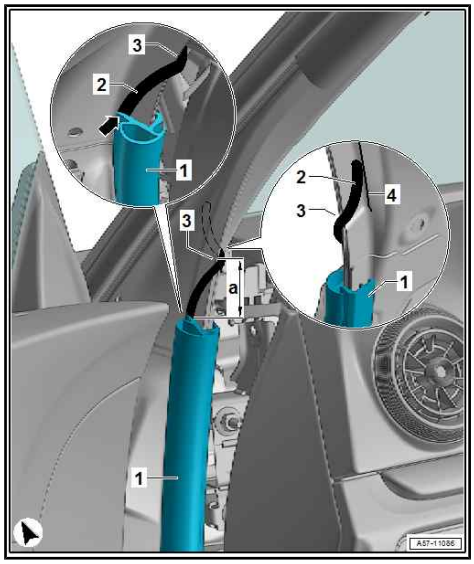
- Butyl adhesive sealing cord - D 450 273 A2- -2- must be bonded onto body between inner door seal -1- and door seal at A-pillar.

– Join two 100 mm butyl adhesive sealing cords longitudinally.

– Mark dimension -a- = 50 mm from inner door seal -1-.

– Route butyl adhesive sealing cord -2- starting at inner edge -arrow- of inner door seal -1- along to mark -3-.

– Bend butyl adhesive sealing cord at mark -3- and route it along to rounded edge -4-.



– Fit sections of seal at A-pillar in the sequence -1 ... 3-.

1. Starting at top, insert seal into guide rail at A-pillar trim strip -B-.

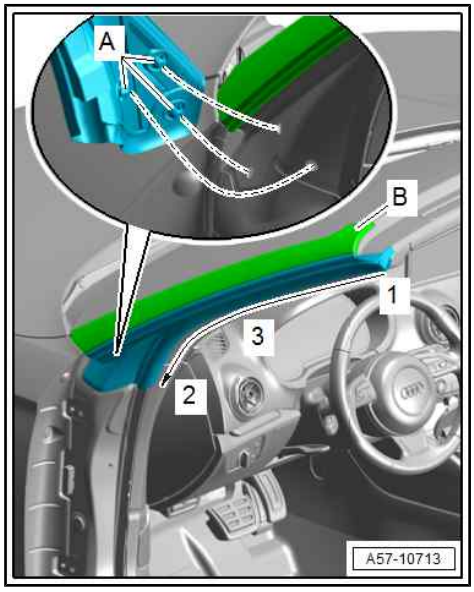
- You should feel the retaining wedges of the seal engage in the guide.

2. Position seal in area of A-pillar.

3. Press retaining lugs -A- fully into place.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - door seals”, page 80 .



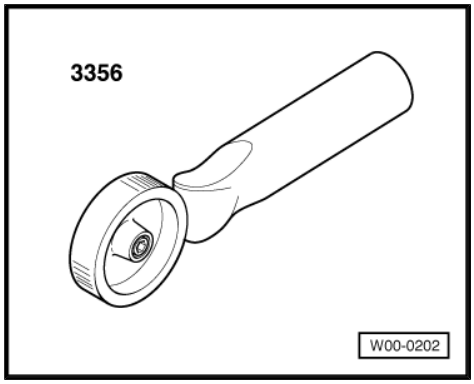
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7 Removing and installing outer door seal

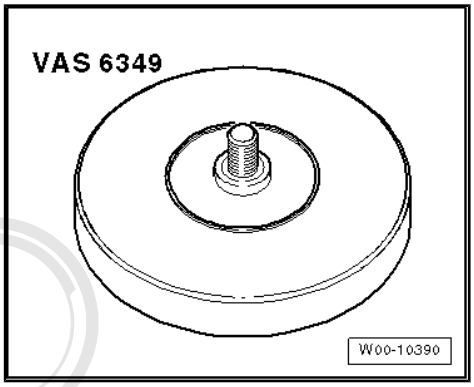
- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 80 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Roller - 3356-



- Adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349-



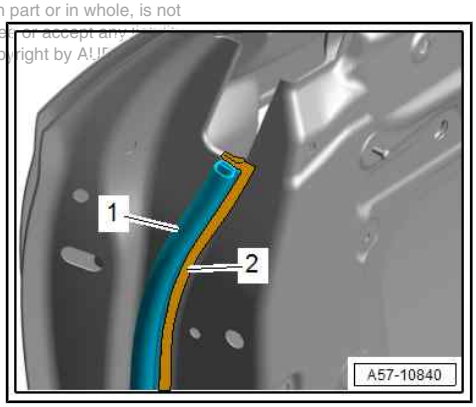
- Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-
- Applicator - D 009 500 25-
- Primer - D 355 205 A2-

Removing

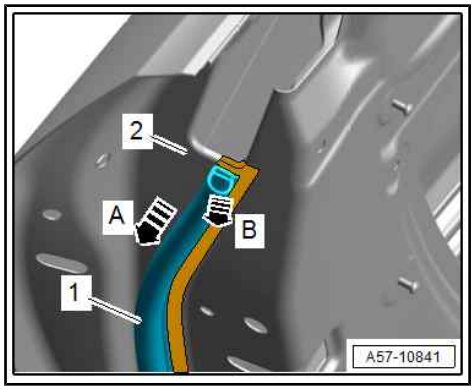
– Remove inner window slot trim strip ⇒ page 108 .

– Mark position of outer door seal -1- with adhesive tape -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI



– Gradually stretch door seal -1- lengthwise -arrow A- and detach from door -2- -arrow B-.



Note

By stretching the door seal lengthwise, the adhesive is separated from the door and the seal can be detached from the door without leaving any adhesive.

– Detach door seal completely.

Installing

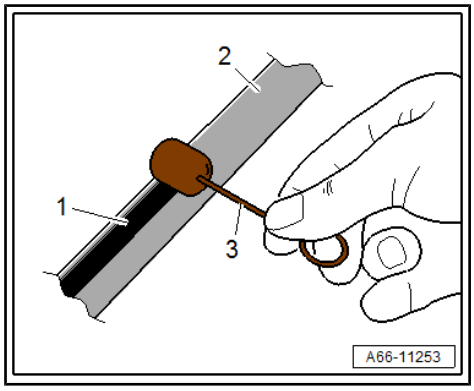
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- The vehicle and the seal must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- If flash-off time exceeds three hours, primer - D 355 205 A2- must be applied again.
- When installing, do not stretch seal.
- To prevent the outer door seal from becoming detached or misaligned, it is important that the door is not closed for at least two hours.

– Remove any residual adhesive with adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349- .

– Clean bonding surface on door with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .

– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area using applicator - D 009 500 25- -3- and allow to flash off.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Ends -5 and 6- of door seal -1- must be applied according to the markings made previously at top of door -4-.

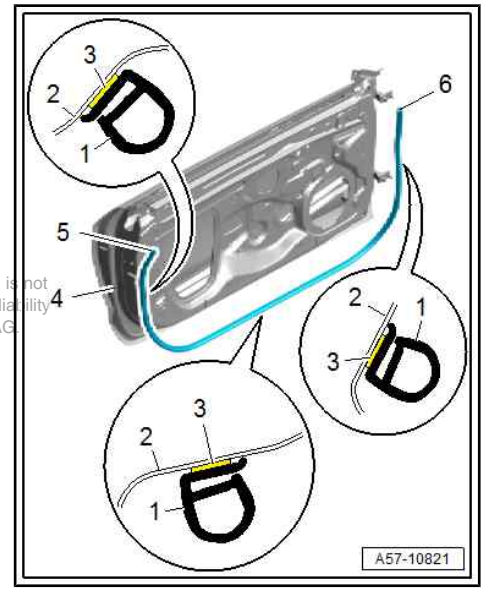
• When positioned correctly, the drain holes in the outer door seal are located at the bottom on the underside of the seal.

– Peel protective film off adhesive strip -3-.

– Bond new seal onto door -2- and press on using roller - 3356- .

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 2 hours with doors open.

The data is protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



2 Door components

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - window regulator”, page 92

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 93

⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips”, page 96

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing window regulator”, page 96

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing window regulator motor”, page 97

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing microswitch for lowering window E621 / E622 ”, page 98

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing door handle”, page 99

⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing door handle trim”, page 100

⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing mounting bracket”, page 101

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing operating cable for exterior door handle”, page 102

⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing lock cylinder”, page 104

⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing cap for lock cylinder”, page 104

⇒ “2.13 Removing and installing housing”, page 105

⇒ “2.14 Removing and installing door lock”, page 105

⇒ “2.15 Removing and installing cover for door lock”, page 106

⇒ “2.16 Removing and installing striker”, page 107

⇒ “2.17 Removing and installing operating cable for interior door handle”, page 107

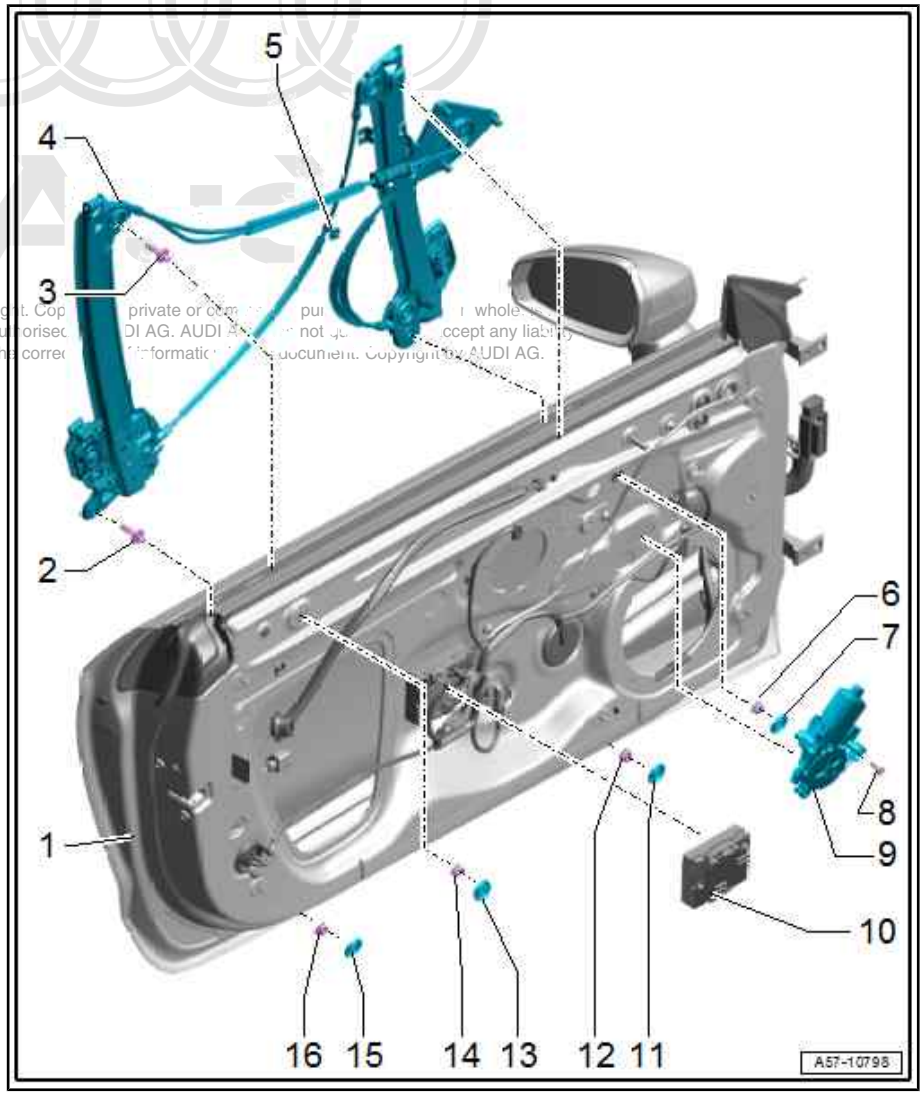
⇒ “2.18 Removing and installing inner door cover”, page 108

⇒ “2.19 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip”, page 108

⇒ “2.20 Removing and installing outer window slot trim strip”, page 110

2.1 Exploded view - window regulator

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Door

2 - Centre hex stud (bottom)

3 - Centre hex stud (top)

4 - Window regulator

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96

5 - Retaining clip

- ❑ For cable for window regulator

6 - Nut

- ❑ 9 Nm

7 - Cap

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

9 - Window regulator motor

- ❑ Driver side window regulator motor - V147- , front passenger side window regulator motor - V148-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 97

10 - Door control unit

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ page 112

11 - Cap

12 - Nut

- ❑ 9 Nm

13 - Cap

14 - Nut

- ❑ 9 Nm

15 - Cap

16 - Nut

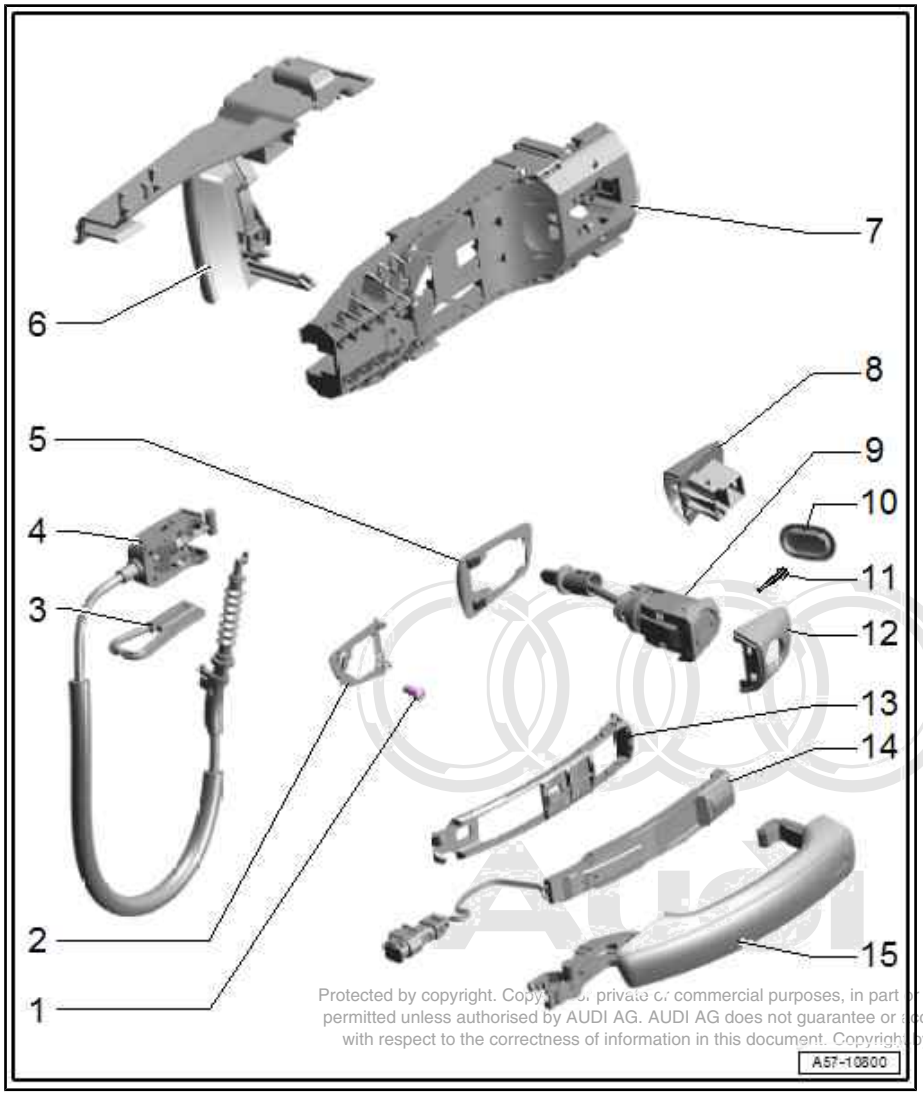
- ❑ 9 Nm

2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock

Exploded view - door handle and mounting bracket ⇒ page 93

Exploded view - door lock and striker ⇒ page 95

Exploded view - door handle and mounting bracket



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

2 - Backing plate

- ❑ Front
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 99

3 - Retainer

- ❑ For operating cable

4 - Operating cable

- ❑ For exterior door handle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 102

5 - Backing plate

- ❑ Rear
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 99

6 - Microswitch for lowering window

- ❑ Microswitch for lowering driver window - E621- / microswitch for lowering front passenger window - E622-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 98

7 - Mounting bracket

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 101

8 - Cap with housing (passenger side)

- ❑ Closed design
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 105

9 - Lock cylinder

- ❑ For driver's door
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 104

10 - Cap

- ❑ For securing bolt

11 - Securing bolt

- ❑ For lock cylinder
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

12 - Cap (driver side)

- ❑ For lock cylinder
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 104

13 - Door handle trim

- ❑ Equipment version for vehicles without convenience key
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 100

14 - Contact sensor for exterior door handle

- ❑ In door handle
- ❑ Depending on equipment version

- ❑ Driver door exterior handle contact sensor - G415- , front passenger door exterior handle contact sensor - G416-
- ❑ Overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation; Overview - keyless entry system

15 - Door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 99

Exploded view - door lock and striker

1 - Inner door cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 108

2 - Operating cable

- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 107

3 - Grommet

- ❑ Cannot be renewed separately

4 - Door lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 105

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 19 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 25 Nm

7 - Striker

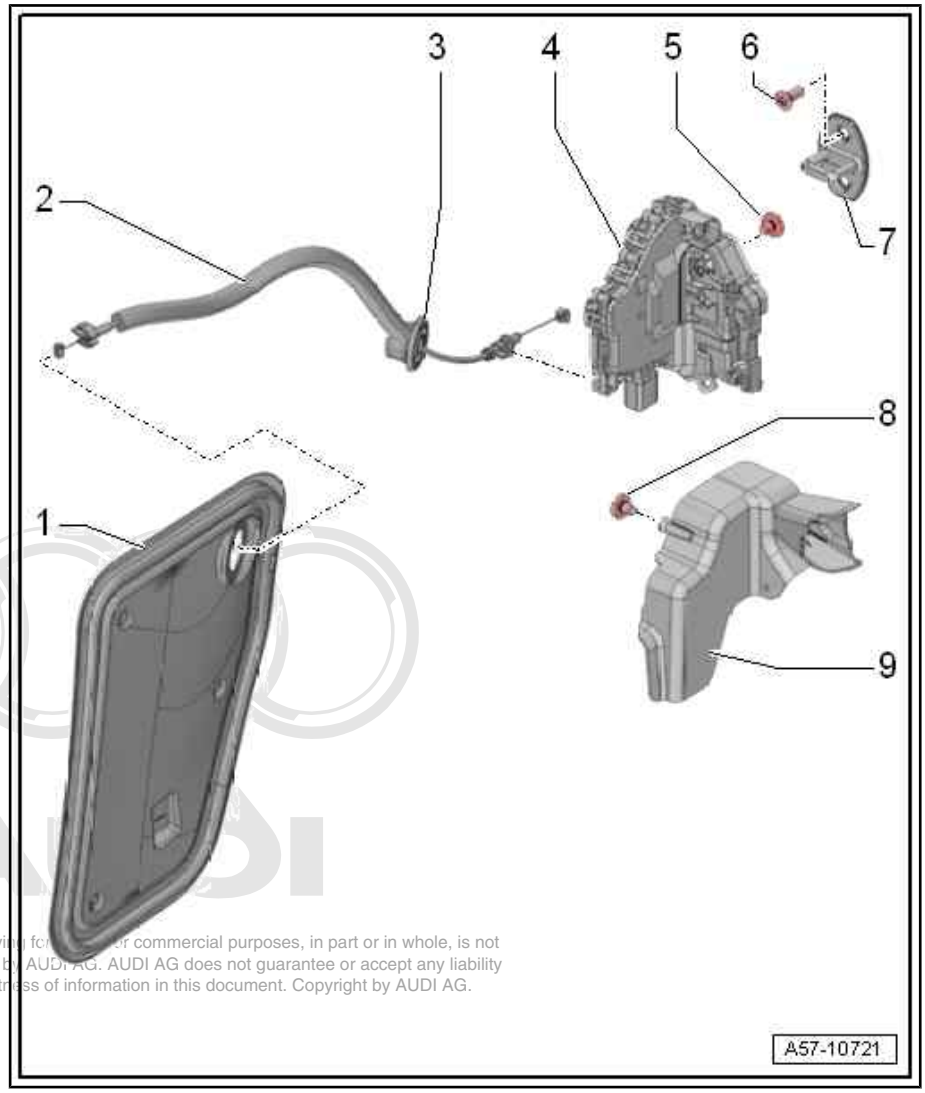
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 107

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

9 - Cover

- ❑ For door lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 106



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips

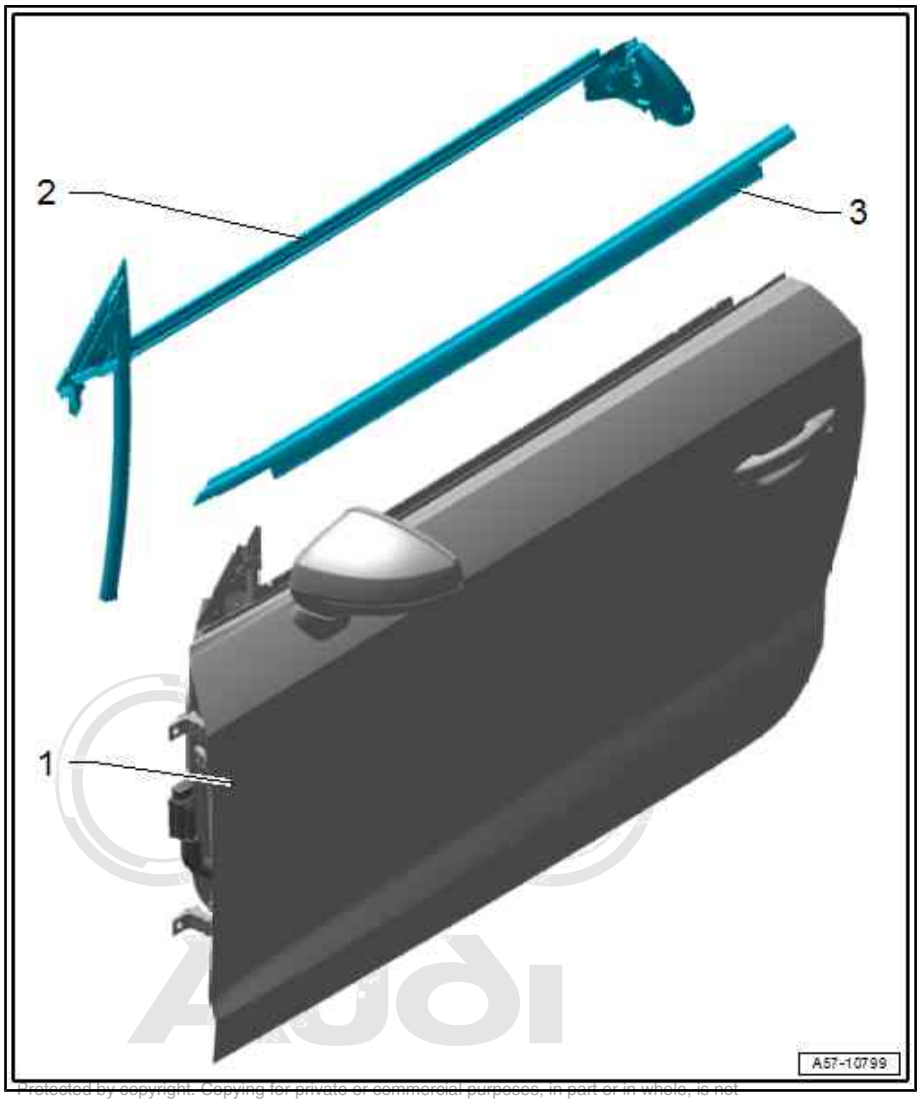
1 - Door

2 - Inner window slot trim strip

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 108

3 - Outer window slot trim strip

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 110



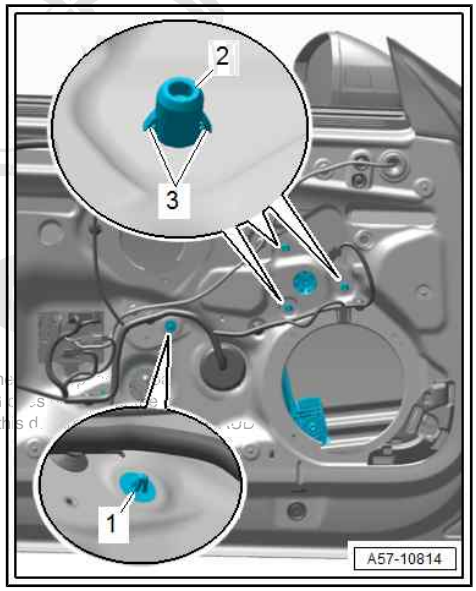
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4 Removing and installing window regulator

Removing

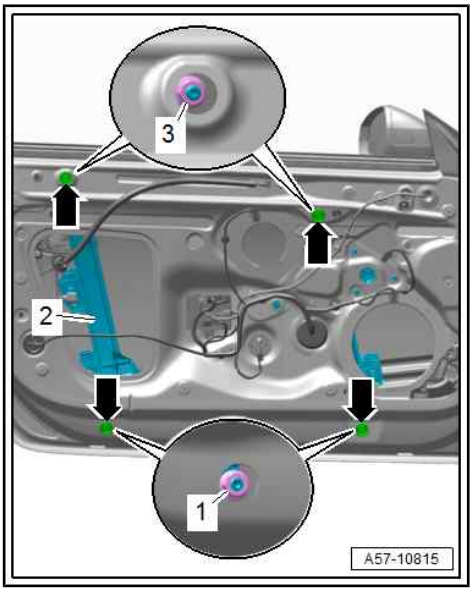
– Remove door window ⇒ page 256 .

– Use an 11 mm socket to release retaining clips -3- of threaded pins -2- for window regulators (slide socket over threaded pins).
– Unfasten retaining clip -1- for guide for window regulator cable.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of information in th

– Take out plugs -arrows-.
– Loosen nuts -3- three turns.
– Remove nuts -2-.
– Disengage window regulator -1- at guides (bottom) and take out of opening towards rear.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Retaining clips of threaded pins for window regulator must be engaged in inner door panel.
- Retaining clip for guide for window regulator cable must be clipped into inner door panel.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - window regulator”, page 92 .

2.5 Removing and installing window regulator motor

Removing

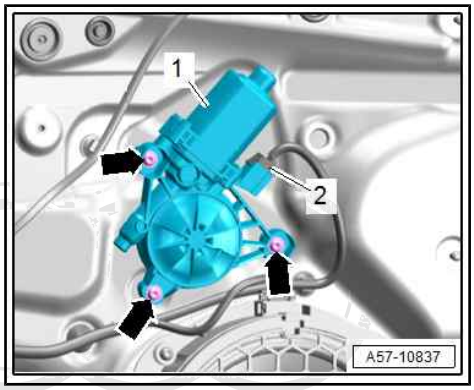
Note

The window regulator motor can be removed or installed with the motor or door window in any position.

– Remove door trim (front) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (front); Removing and installing door trim (front) .

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach window regulator motor -1- from window regulator.

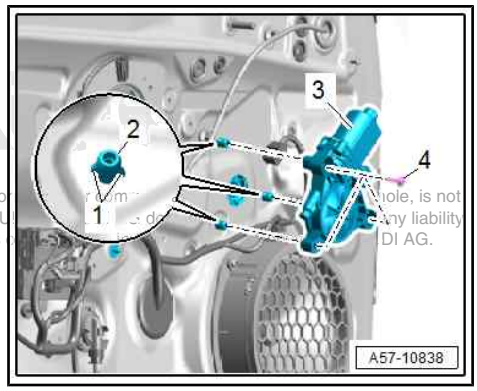


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

• Retaining clips -1- of threaded pins -2- for window regulator must be engaged in inner door panel.

– Slide window regulator motor -3- onto threaded pins and tighten bolts -4-.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - window regulator”, page 92 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6 Removing and installing microswitch for lowering window -E621- / -E622-

Removing

– Move door window to “closed” position.

– Remove door handle ⇒ page 99 .

– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 108 .

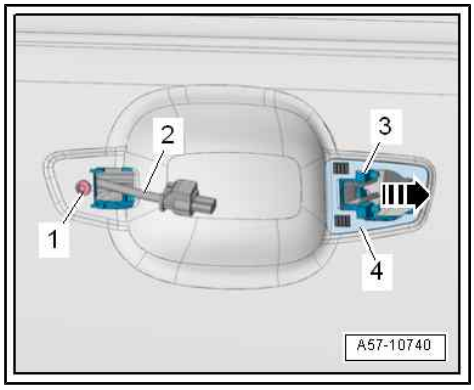
> **Caution**
>
> *Risk of damage to operating cable (may become deformed).*
>
> ◆ *Operating cable must never be bent or kinked excessively.*

– If fitted, move electrical wiring -2- clear at mounting bracket -3-.

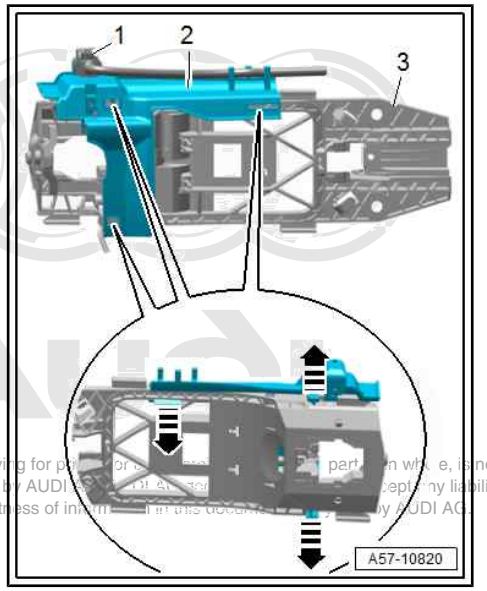
– Detach sealing piece (rear) -4-.

– Remove bolt -1-.

– Press mounting bracket slightly in direction of -arrow- from inside of door and detach.



– Unplug electrical connector -1- and move wiring harness clear.
– Release fasteners -arrows-.
– Pull microswitch for lowering window -2- off mounting bracket -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

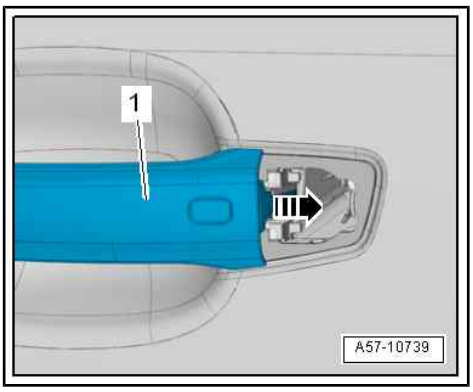
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.7 Removing and installing door handle

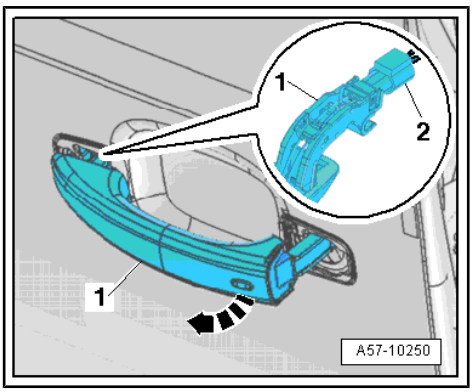
Removing

– Driver side: Remove lock cylinder ⇒ page 104 .
– Passenger side: Remove housing for front passenger's door ⇒ page 105 .
– Pull door handle -1- in direction of -arrow-, thereby detaching door handle from operating lever in mounting bracket.



– Swivel door handle -1- outwards -arrow- and take out of mounting on mounting bracket.
– On vehicles with “Keyless Entry system”, unplug electrical connector -2- at door handle.
– If renewing door handle, also remove the following components:

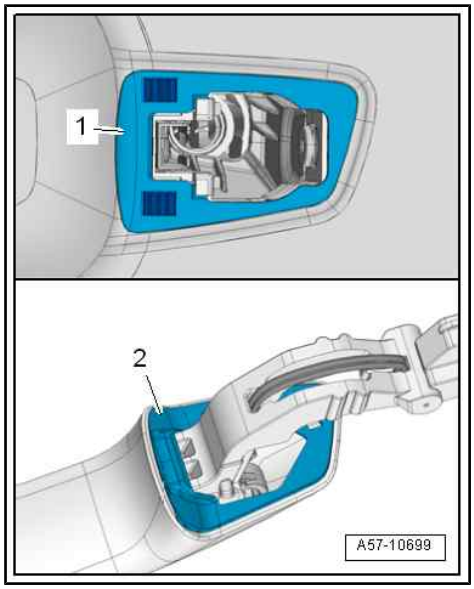
♦ Door handle trim ⇒ page 100
♦ Contact sensor for exterior door handle ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation; Overview - keyless entry system



Installing

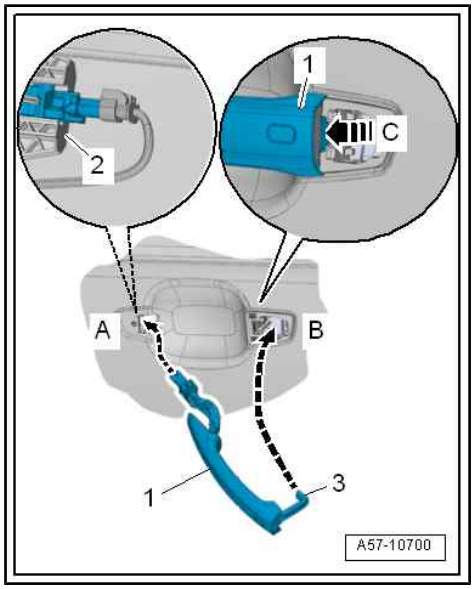
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Renew seal for door handle -1- and -2- if damaged or brittle.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Fit door handle -1- -arrow A-, making sure that door handle engages in mounting on mounting bracket -2-.
– Swivel door handle in direction of -arrow B- and engage it at front until it engages audibly -arrow C-.
• This will position actuator -3- in front of operating lever.



2.8 Removing and installing door handle trim

On vehicles without Keyless Entry system trim is fitted instead of the contact sensor for exterior door handle.

Removing

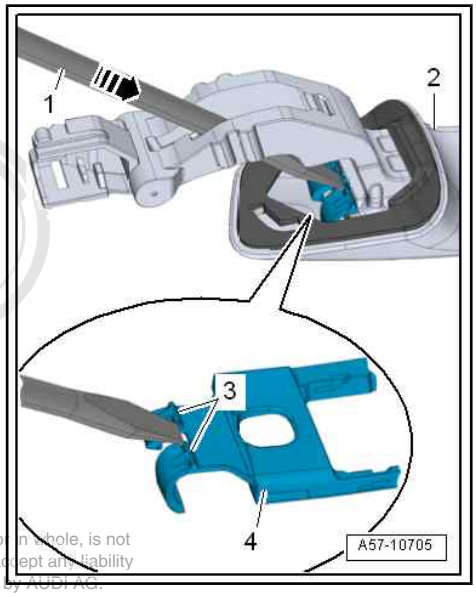
– Remove door handle ⇒ page 99 .

– Position a large, robust screwdriver -1- at door handle -2- as shown in illustration.

• Screwdriver must be applied at recess -3-.

– Using a lot of force, press door handle trim -4- forwards out of fastener on door handle -arrow-.

– Pull door handle trim out of door handle.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Door handle trim must be inserted in door handle until it engages audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.9 Removing and installing mounting bracket

Removing

– Move door window to “closed” position.

– Remove door handle ⇒ page 99 .

– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 108 .

Caution

Risk of damage to operating cable (may become deformed).

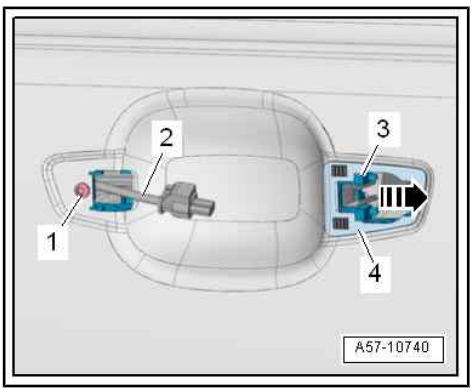
♦ *Operating cable must never be bent or kinked excessively.*

– If fitted, move electrical wiring -2- clear at mounting bracket -3-.

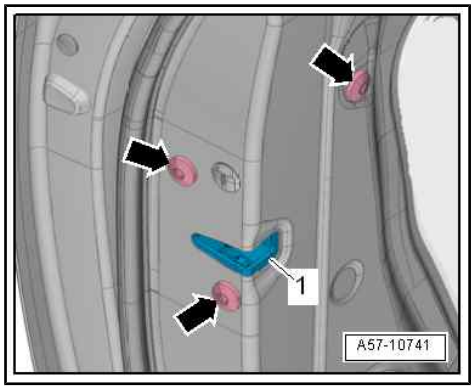
– Detach sealing piece (rear) -4-.

– Remove bolt -1-.

– Press mounting bracket slightly in direction of -arrow- from inside of door and detach.



– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Unplug electrical connector and move wiring harness clear.
– Slide mounting bracket with door lock -1- downwards and take both components out of door.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

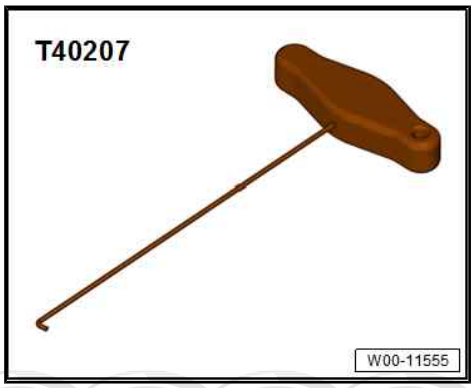
Note

- *On vehicles with convenience key, the wiring harness for the contact sensor for exterior door handle must be routed at the mounting bracket so that it faces the outer door panel.*
- *If the wiring harness is not routed correctly, this could cause noise when opening and closing the door window as the window would come into contact with the wiring harness.*

2.10 Removing and installing operating cable for exterior door handle

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hook - T40207-



Removing

Caution

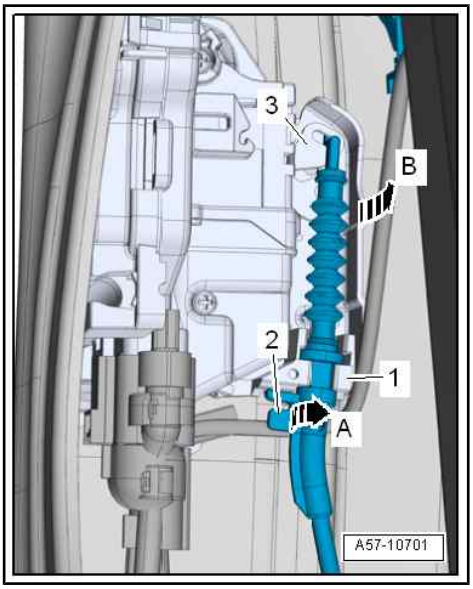
Risk of damage to operating cable (may become deformed).

- ***Operating cable must never be bent or kinked excessively.***

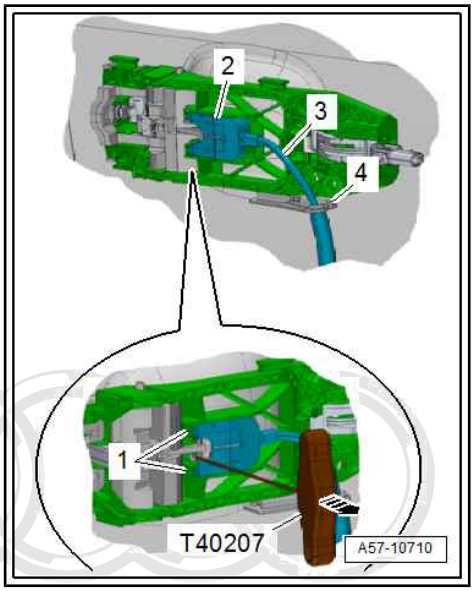
– Remove mounting bracket and door lock ⇒ page 105 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Turn lever -2- on operating cable 90° in direction of -arrow A- and take it out of cable support bracket -1-.
– Turn operating cable on operating lever -3- for door lock in direction of -arrow B-.
• The operating cable must be aligned with the opening on the operating lever.
– Disengage operating cable from operating lever.



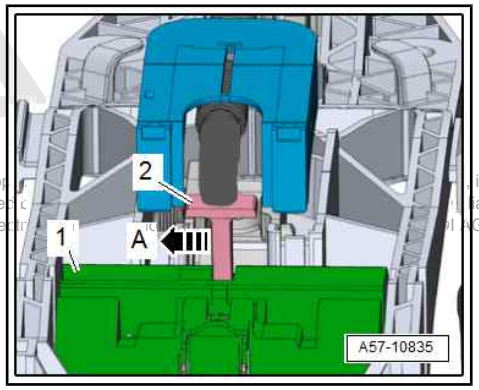
– Move operating cable -3- clear at retainer -4-.
– Move operating lever to “open” position and hold in this position.
– Using hook - T40207- , pull housing -2- with operating cable out of mounting bracket in direction of -arrow- (this will release securing tabs -1-).
– Move operating lever to “closed” position.



– Disengage operating cable -2- on operating lever -1- in direction of -arrow-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

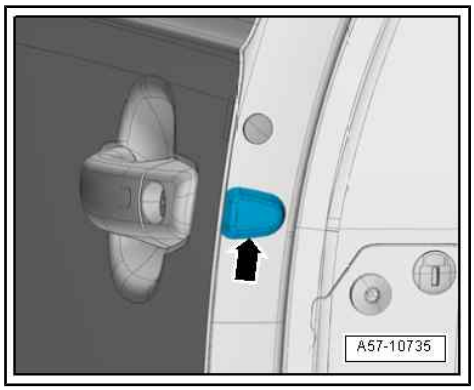


Protected by copyright. Co is not permitted unless authorised t liability with respect to the corre G.

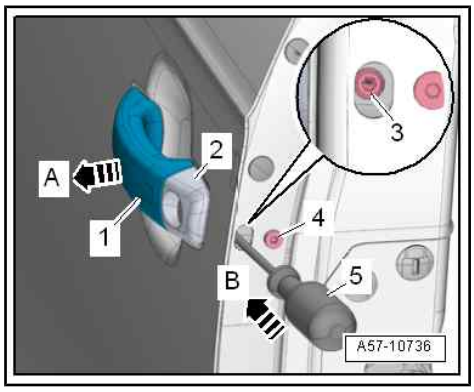
2.11 Removing and installing lock cylinder

Removing

– Pull off cap -arrow-.



– Remove securing bolt -4-.
– Unscrew clamping bolt -3- as far as possible using a screwdriver -5-.
– Push retainer for lock cylinder inwards -arrow B-.
– Pull door handle -1- outwards slightly -arrow A- and pull lock cylinder -2- out of mounting bracket.



Note

If the lock cylinder cannot be pulled out, insert the ignition key in the lock cylinder and pull out the lock cylinder with the key turned slightly.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Push lock cylinder into mounting bracket and then check whether the closing and opening positions for the door lock are actuated.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 93

2.12 Removing and installing cap for lock cylinder

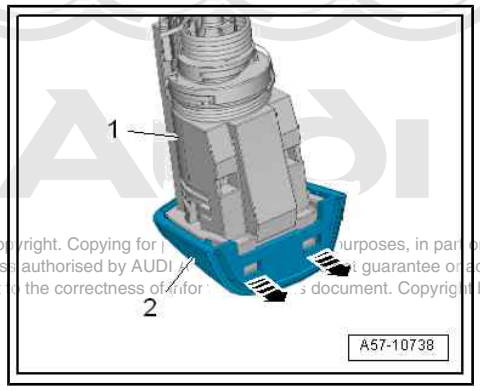
Removing

– Remove lock cylinder ⇒ page 104 .
– Release catches -arrows- and detach cap -2- from lock cylinder -1-, using an awl if necessary.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press on cap for lock cylinder until it engages audibly.

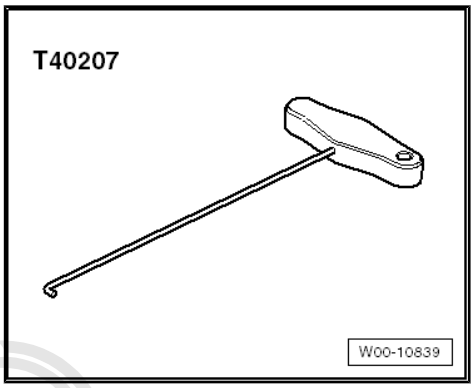


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.13 Removing and installing housing

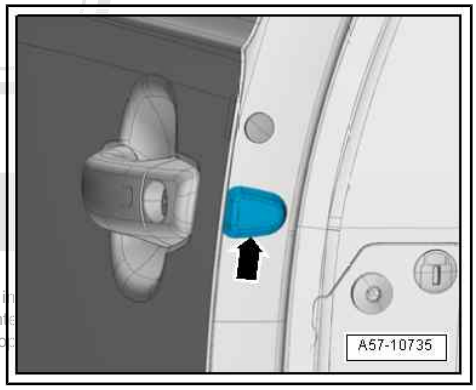
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hook - T40207-



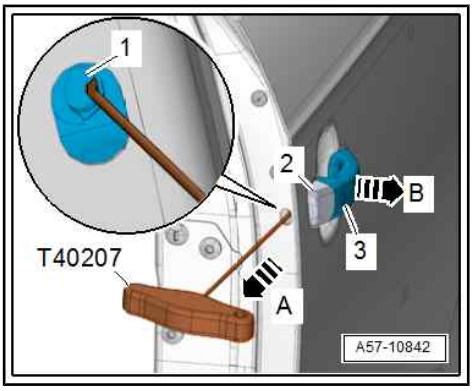
Removing

– Pull off cap -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarant
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

– Pull retainer -1- outwards -arrow A- with hook - T40207- .
– Pull door handle -3- outwards slightly -arrow B- and pull housing -2- out of mounting bracket.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.14 Removing and installing door lock

Removing

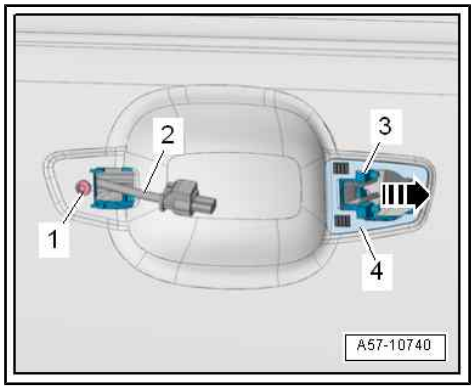
– Move door window to “closed” position.
– Remove door handle ⇒ page 99 .
– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 108 .

Caution

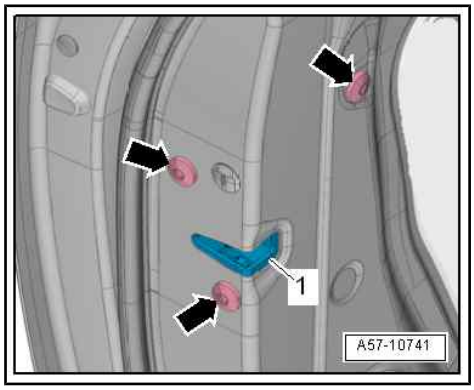
Risk of damage to operating cable (may become deformed).

- *Operating cable must never be bent or kinked excessively.*

– If fitted, move electrical wiring -2- clear at mounting bracket -3-.
– Detach sealing piece (rear) -4-.
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Press mounting bracket slightly in direction of -arrow- from inside of door and detach.



– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Unplug electrical connector and move wiring harness clear.
– Slide mounting bracket with door lock -1- downwards and take both components out of door.



Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Observe notes on installing mounting bracket ⇒ page 102 .

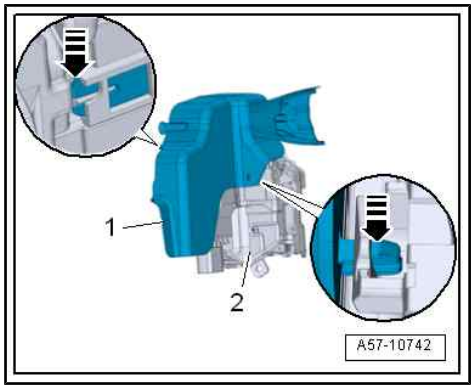
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 93

2.15 Removing and installing cover for door lock

Removing

– Remove mounting bracket and door lock ⇒ page 105 .
– Release fasteners -arrows-.
– Detach guide -1- for lock cylinder at door lock -2-.



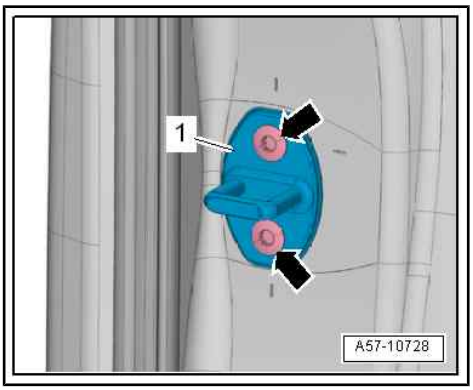
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.16 Removing and installing striker

Removing

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach striker -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Adjust striker ⇒ page 84 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 93

2.17 Removing and installing operating cable for interior door handle

Removing

– Driver side: Remove lock cylinder ⇒ page 104 .

– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 108 .

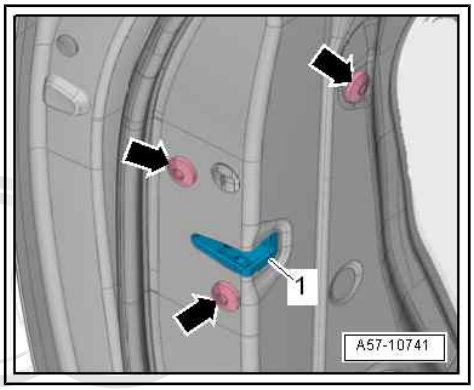
Caution

Risk of damage to operating cable (may become deformed).

◆ *Operating cable must never be bent or kinked excessively.*

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

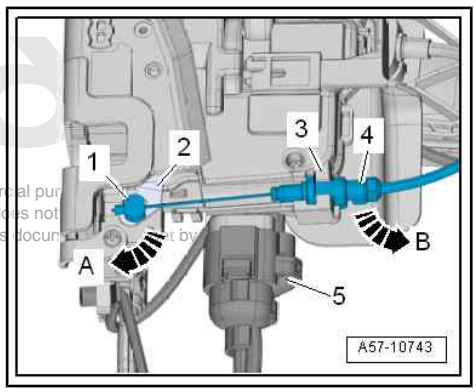
– Press door lock -1- slightly to the side.



– If necessary, unplug electrical connector -5-.

– Turn operating cable on lever -4- 90° in direction of -arrow B- and take it out of cable support bracket -3-.

– Disengage nipple -1- from release lever -2- at door lock -arrow A-.



Installing

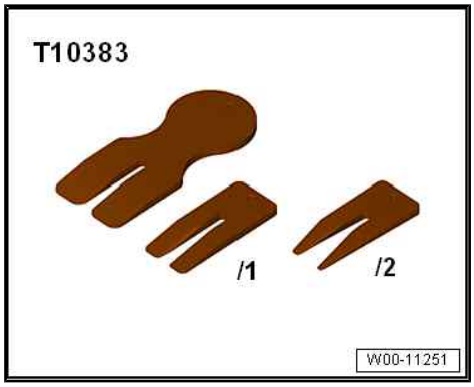
Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pur
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not
with respect to the correctness of information in this docum

2.18 Removing and installing inner door cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383-



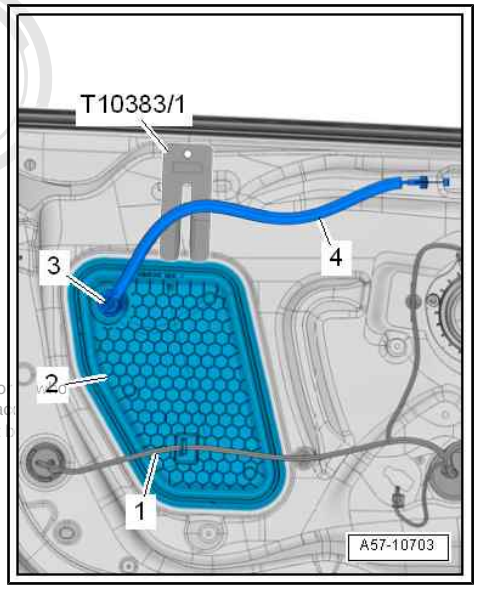
Removing

– Remove door trim (front) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (front); Removing and installing door trim (front) .

– Move electrical wiring harness -1- clear.

– Prise inner door cover -2- off inner door panel with wedge - T10383/1- .

– Disengage grommet -3- for cable -4- for interior door handle from inner door cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press on inner door cover until it engages audibly.

- Inner door cover must be flush.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part o
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

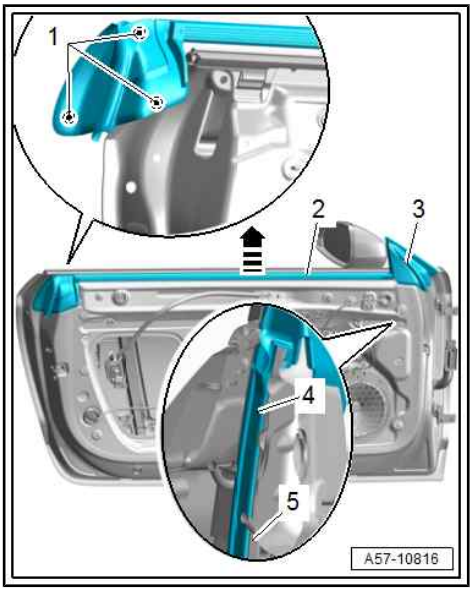
2.19 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip

Removing

– Remove front door window ⇒ page 256 .

– Remove trim panel for A-pillar ⇒ page 281 .

– Detach retaining lugs -1- from inner door panel.
– Lift off window slot trim strip -2- -arrow-.
– Detach sealing piece -3- for A-pillar upwards off door shell; window guide strip -4- will automatically be pulled out of guide rail -5- for door window.

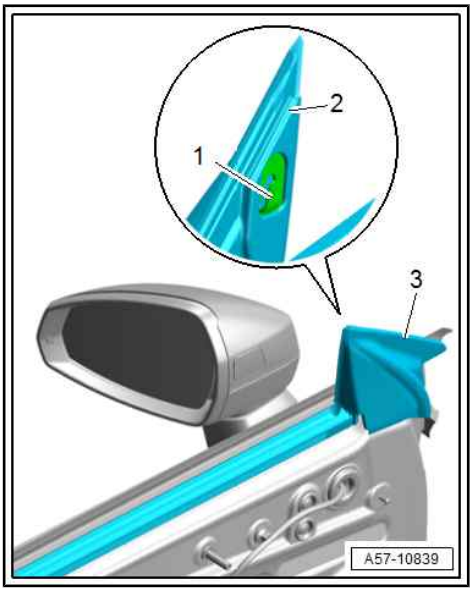


Installing

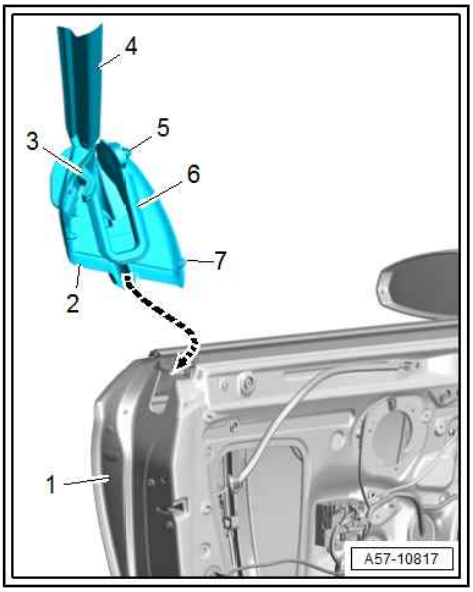
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Slide sealing piece -2- for A-pillar onto front of door shell -1-, making sure tip -3- is positioned correctly.



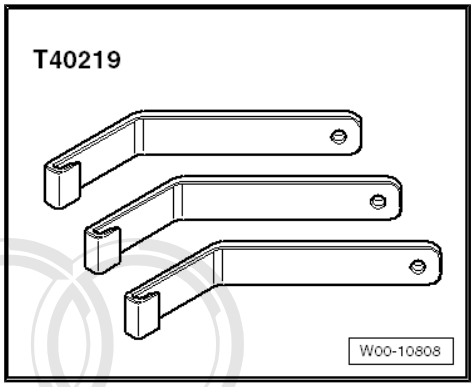
– Fit sealing piece -2- on door -1-; to do so, engage guides -3 and 6- into mounting on door shell -arrow- and press retaining lugs -5 and 7- on completely.
– Press on window slot trim strip -4-.
– Slide window guide strip into guide rail for door window.



2.20 Removing and installing outer window slot trim strip

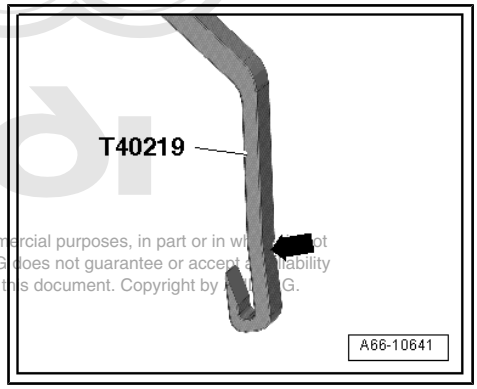
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal tool - T40219-



Preparing removal tool - T40219- :

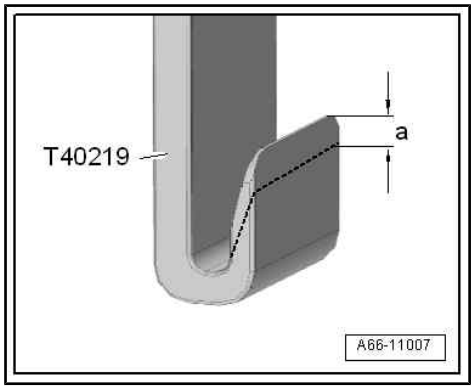
- Before removing window slot trim strip, carefully bend removal tool - T40219- at the point indicated -arrow- so that removal tool can be applied behind retaining strip.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in wh ot permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept a liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by A G.

– Shorten removal tool - T40219- at position shown by dimension -a-.

- Dimension -a- = 5 mm



Removing

– Lower door window.

– Remove trim panel for A-pillar ⇒ page 281 .

– Remove inner window slot trim strip ⇒ page 274 .

– Insert removal tool - T40219- next to guide -4- for window slot trim strip -3- and apply at retaining strip -2-.

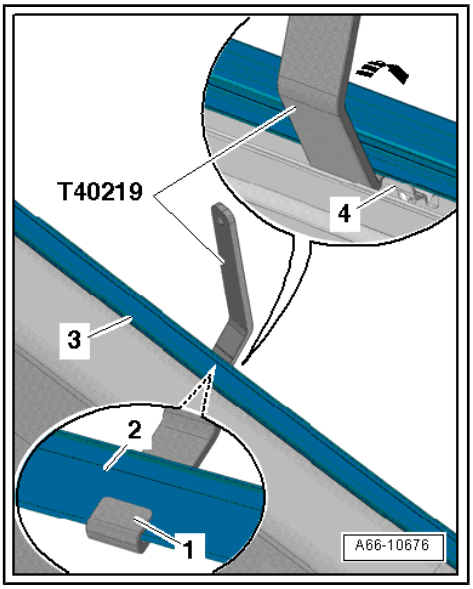
• Front section -1- of removal tool -T40219- must be positioned as shown in illustration.

– Press removal tool - T40219- lightly in direction of -arrow- to release component.

• You should hear the retaining strip disengage.

– Carefully pull window slot trim strip upwards off door flange using removal tool - T40219- .

– Detach window slot trim strip.



Installing

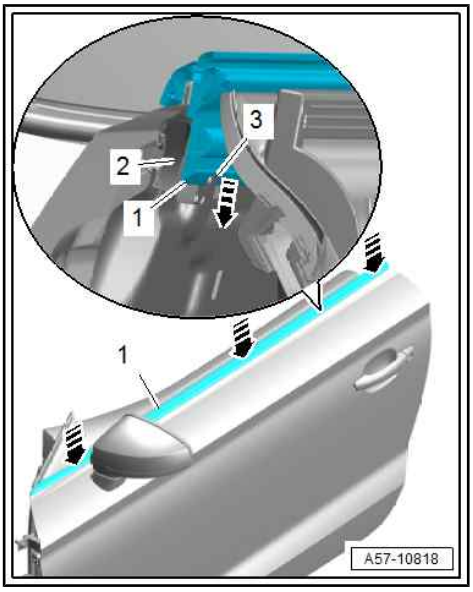
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

For installing, you can coat the bottom edge of the window slot trim strip with tyre assembly paste.

– Position window slot trim strip -1- at trim panel for B-pillar on door seam and press on evenly -arrows-; retaining strip must be guided along guides -3- and must engage audibly at retaining plate -2-.

• When fixing retaining strip in position, it should engage underneath retaining plate.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Central locking system

⇒ “3.1 Overview of fitting locations - central locking system”, page 112

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing driver door control unit J386 and front passenger door control unit J387 ”, page 113

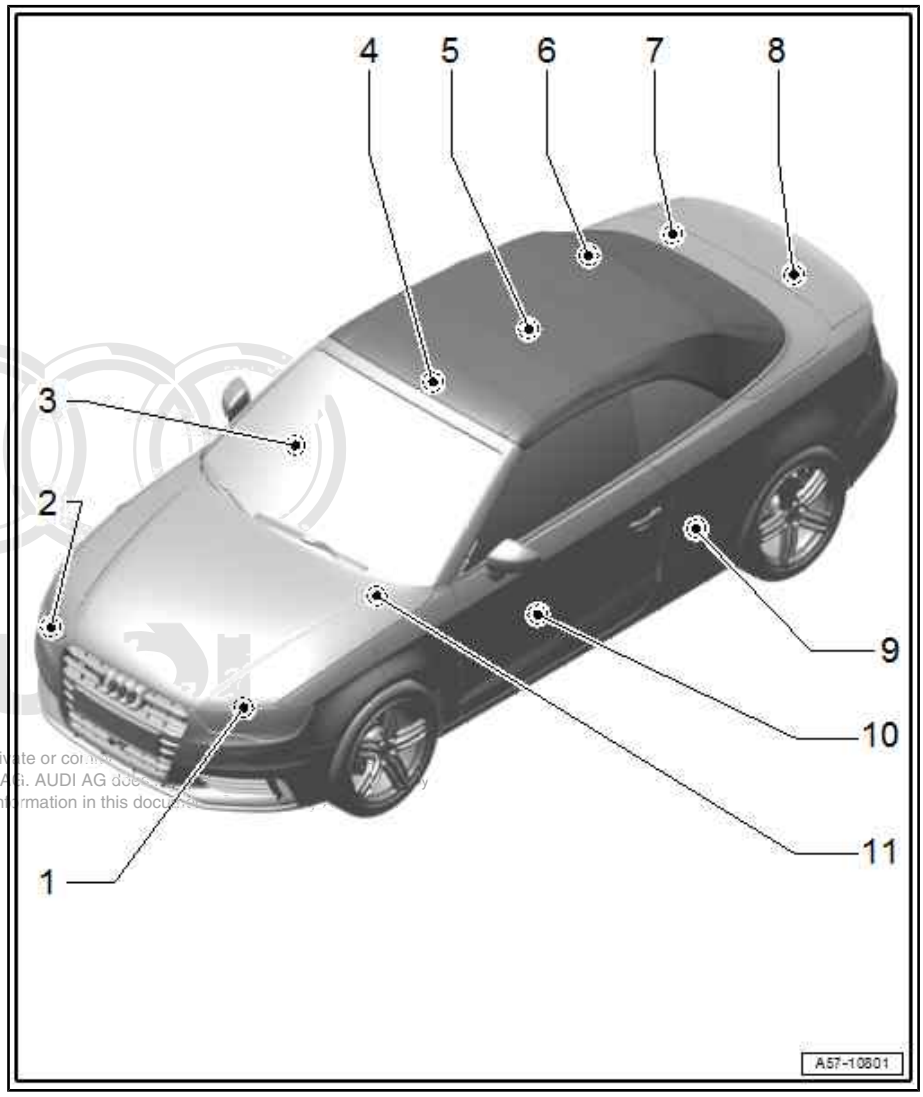
⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing control unit with rear driver side window regulator motor J1016 and control unit with rear passenger side window regulator motor J1017 ”, page 113

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing interface control unit for vehicle location system J843 ”, page 114

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing bonnet contact switch F266 ”, page 114

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing tank filler flap locking motor V155 ”, page 115

3.1 Overview of fitting locations - central locking system



1 - Bonnet contact switch - F266-

- ❑ In bonnet lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 114

2 - Bonnet contact switch 2 - F329-

- ❑ In bonnet lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 114

3 - Front passenger door control unit - J387-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 113

4 - Anti-theft alarm sensor - G578-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Anti-theft alarm system; Overview - interior monitoring

5 - Control unit with rear passenger side window regulator motor - J1017-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 113

6 - Tank filler flap locking motor - V155-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 115

7 - Interface control unit for vehicle location system - J843-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 114

8 - Rear lid lock

- ❑ With rear lid central locking motor - V53- / rear lid contact switch for anti-theft alarm - F123- ; cannot be renewed separately

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do... with respect to the correctness of information in this docu...

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 47

9 - Control unit with rear driver side window regulator motor - J1016-

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 113

10 - Driver door control unit - J386-

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 113

11 - Onboard supply control unit - J519-

❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Control units; Overview of fitting locations - control units

3.2 Removing and installing driver door control unit - J386- and front passenger door control unit - J387-

Removing

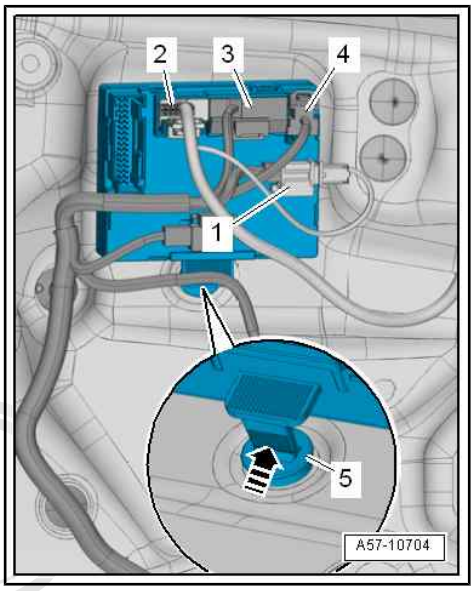
– Remove door trim (front) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (front); Removing and installing door trim (front) .

– Unplug electrical connectors -2 and 3-; to do so, pull locking element and press release mechanism downwards.

– Unplug electrical connector -4-.

– Move clear electrical connector -1- at door control unit.

– Press retaining catch -5- in direction of -arrow- and disengage door control unit from door shell.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- If renewing the driver door control unit - J386- or front passenger door control unit - J387- , select the function “Replace control unit” for the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, Diagnosis.

3.3 Removing and installing control unit with rear driver side window regulator motor - J1016- and control unit with rear passenger side window regulator motor - J1017-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

Note

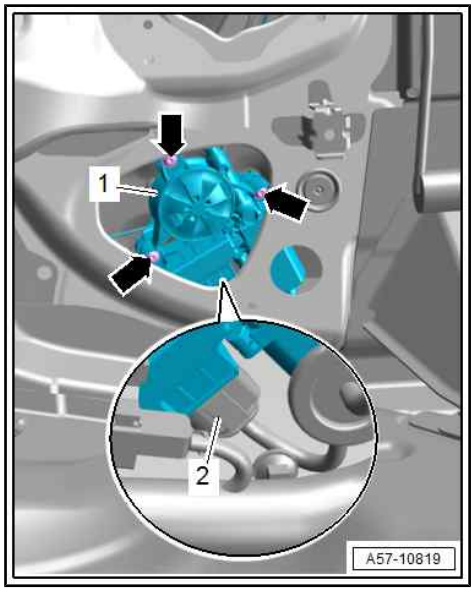
The control unit with rear window regulator motor can be removed or installed with the motor or the side window in any position.

– Remove side trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim .

– Remove inner cover ⇒ page 121 .

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach control unit with window regulator motor -2- from window regulator.

– Unplug electrical connector -1-; to do so, move locking element towards rear and press release mechanism downwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- If renewing the control unit with rear driver side window regulator motor - J1016- or control unit with rear passenger side window regulator motor - J1017- , select the function “Replace control unit” for the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, Diagnosis.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - window regulator”, page 116 .

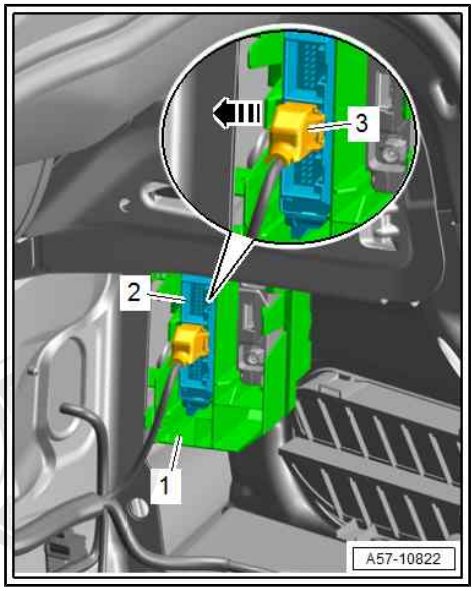
3.4 Removing and installing interface control unit for vehicle location system - J843-

Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim (right-side) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim .

– Unplug electrical connector -3-.

– Release fastener -arrow- and pull interface control unit for vehicle location system - J843- -item 2- out of mounting and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- If renewing the interface control unit for vehicle location system - J843- , select the function “Replace control unit” for the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, Diagnosis.

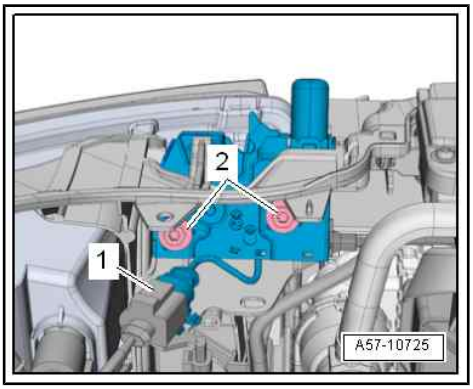
3.5 Removing and installing bonnet contact switch - F266-

Removing

– Left-side: Remove filler neck for washer fluid reservoir ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen washer system; Removing and installing washer fluid reservoir .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Unscrew bolts -2- and detach bonnet lock.

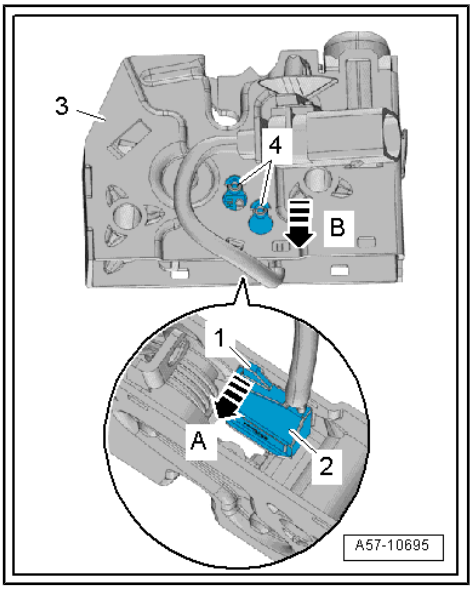


– Lift retaining tab -1- -arrow A-.
– Disengage contact switch -2- at bonnet lock -3- -arrow B- and detach contact switch.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Guide pins -4- on contact switch must be inserted correctly in bonnet lock.



3.6 Removing and installing tank filler flap locking motor - V155-

Removing

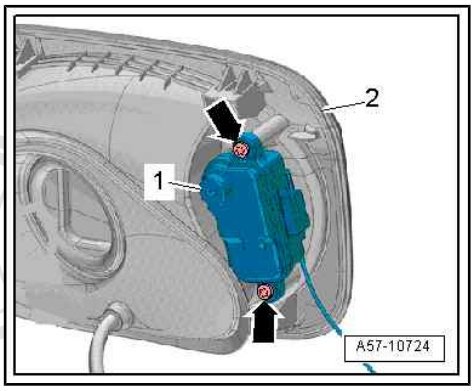
– Remove tank flap unit ⇒ page 75 .
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach tank filler flap locking motor -1- with manual release cable from tank flap unit -2-.
– If tank filler flap locking motor is to be renewed, remove manual release cable for locking tank flap ⇒ page 78 .

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - tank flap unit”, page 74 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

58 – Rear doors, door components

1 Door components

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - window regulator”, page 116

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips”, page 117

⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing window regulator”, page 117

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing window regulator motor”, page 119

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing mounting for side window”, page 120

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing inner cover”, page 121

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip”, page 122

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing outer window slot trim strip”, page 123

1.1 Exploded view - window regulator

1 - Inner cover
- ❑ For window regulator
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121

2 - Sealing plug
- ❑ 2x

3 - Nut
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 20 Nm

4 - Washer
- ❑ 3x

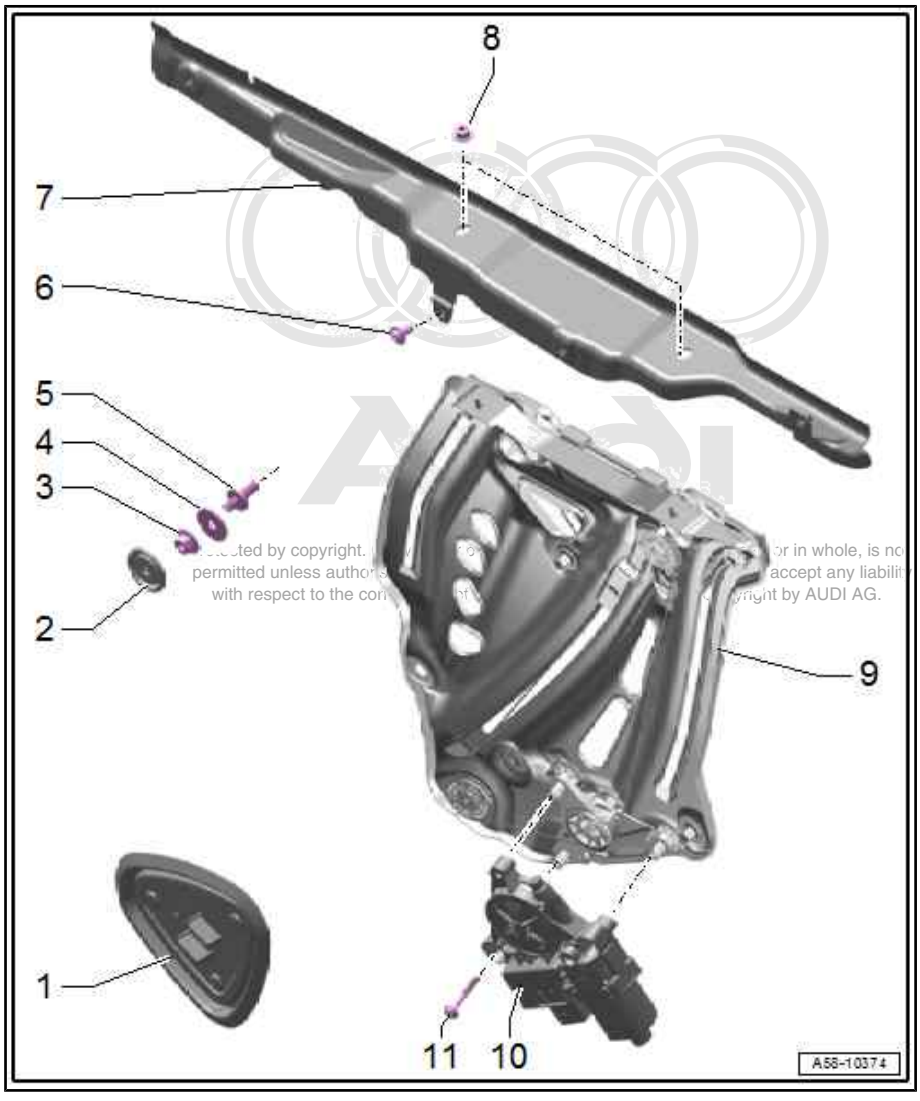
5 - Centre hex stud
- ❑ For adjustment of window regulator

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 8 Nm

7 - Mounting
- ❑ For side window
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 120

8 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

9 - Window regulator
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 117



...ected by copyright. ...or in whole, is no... permitted unless author... accept any liabili... with respect to the cor... ...right by AUDI AG.

10 - Window regulator motor (rear)

- ❑ Control unit with rear driver side window regulator motor - J1016- , control unit with rear passenger side window regulator motor - J1017-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 119

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

1.2 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips

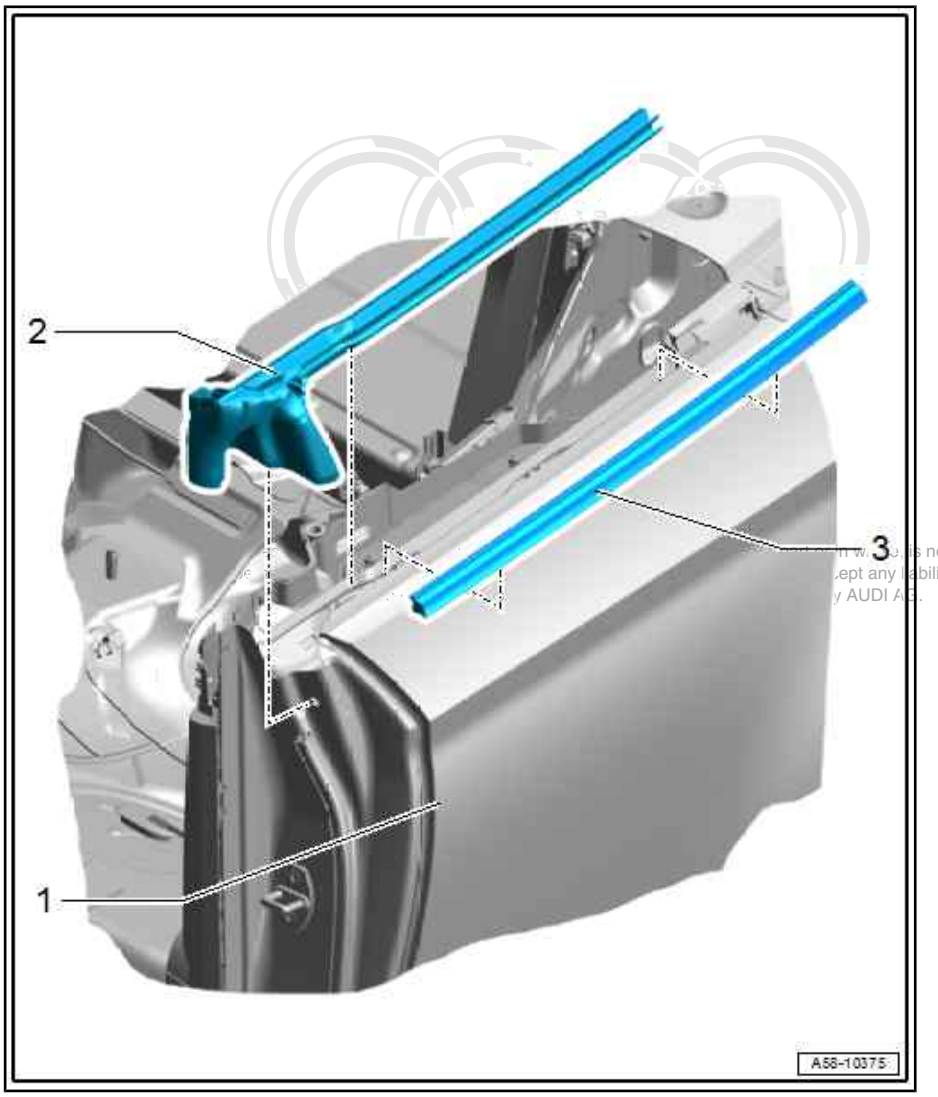
1 - Side panel

2 - Inner window slot trim strip

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 122

3 - Outer window slot trim strip

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123

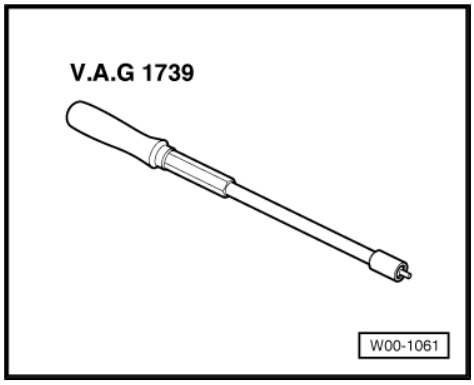


...ot warranty that ... is not ...cept any liability ... AUDI AG.

1.3 Removing and installing window regulator

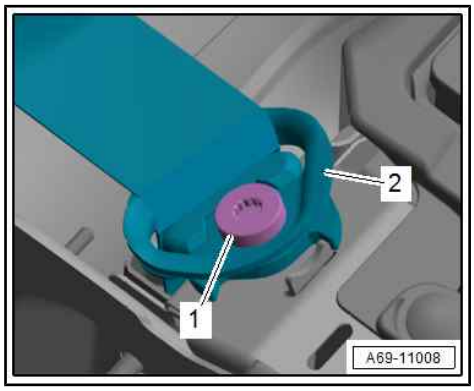
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Rear window adjusting tool - V.A.G 1739-

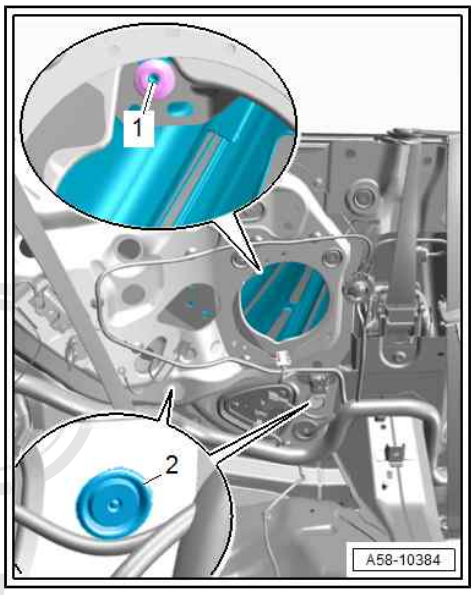


Removing

– Remove mounting for side window ⇒ page 120 .
– Move side window to “semi-closed” position.
– Remove loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Detach belt guide fitting -2- with belt.

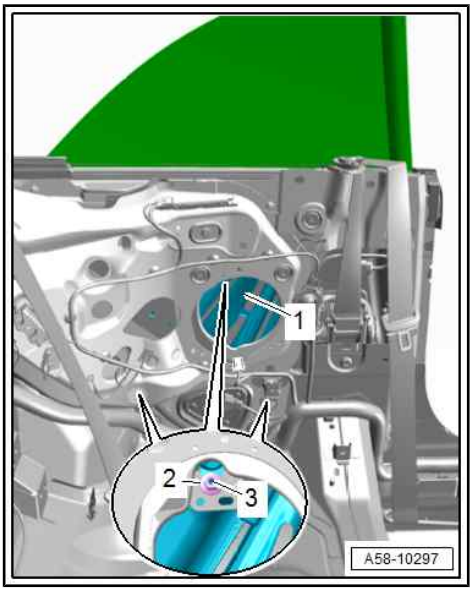


– Pull off sealing plug -2-.
– Note dimensions at adjuster screws -1- for re-installation.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Loosen nuts -2- several turns using tubular socket wrench; counterhold adjuster screws -3- with tool insert while doing so.
– Lift window regulator -1- out of mountings and unplug electrical connector.
– Lift out window regulator together with side window and window regulator motor.



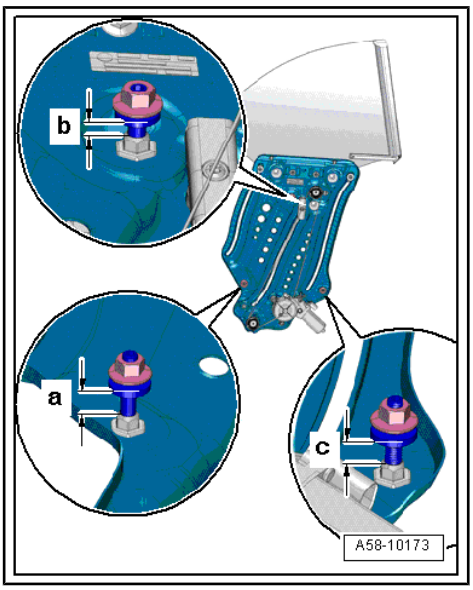
Note

- *If the window regulator is defective, the window regulator motor and the side window must be removed.*
- *Remove window regulator motor ⇒ page 119 .*
- *Remove side window ⇒ page 248 .*

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– When installing a new window regulator, it is important to set the bottom adjuster screws according to dimensions -a and c- of the adjuster screws on the old window regulator.
– After inserting component in mountings, set dimension -b- according to notes taken during removal.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– To insert rear sealing plug, move convertible roof to service position and insert sealing plug from convertible roof compartment.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - window regulator”, page 116 .
- Belt guide fitting ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Seat belts; Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)

1.4 Removing and installing window regulator motor

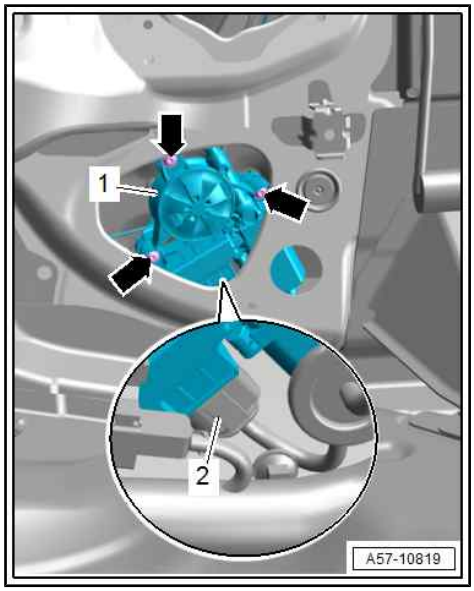
Removing

Note

The window regulator motor can be removed or installed with the motor or side window in any position.

– Remove inner cover ⇒ page 121 .
– Remove loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach control unit with window regulator motor -2- from window regulator.
– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Take window regulator motor out through opening for loudspeaker.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

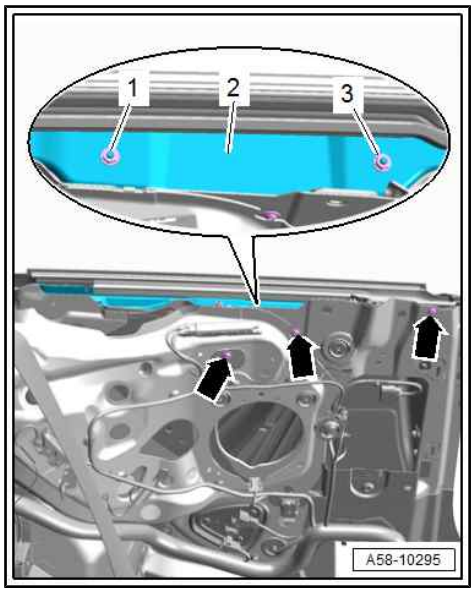
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - window regulator”, page 116 .

1.5 Removing and installing mounting for side window

Removing

– Move rear side window to “open” position.
– Remove inner window slot trim strip ⇒ page 122 .
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Remove nuts -1 and 3-.
– Remove mounting -2- for side window by pulling upwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

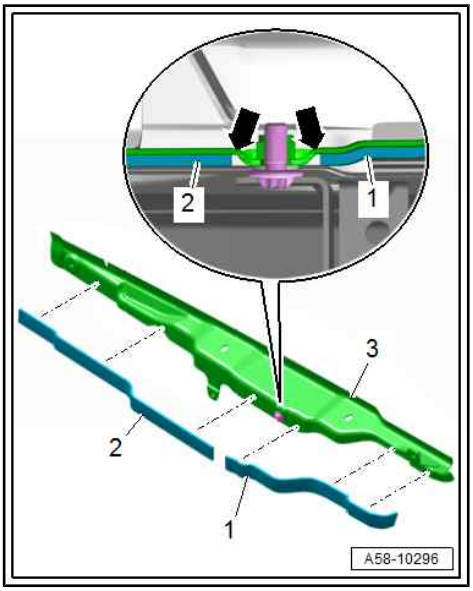
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Before installing, check that foam strips -1 and 2- are correctly positioned on mounting -3- for side window.

• Foam strip must be positioned on radius -arrows-.

Tightening torques

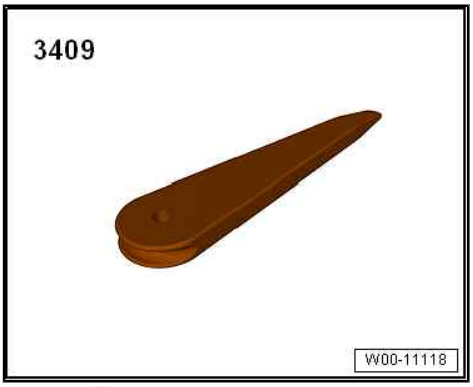
♦ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - window regulator”, page 116 .



1.6 Removing and installing inner cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



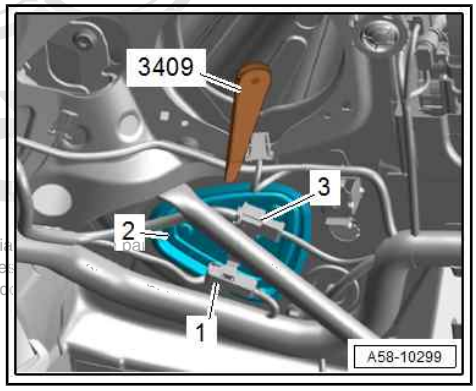
Removing

– Remove side trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim .

Left side:

– Move electrical connectors -1 and 3- clear.

– Prise off inner cover -2- using removal wedge - 3409- .



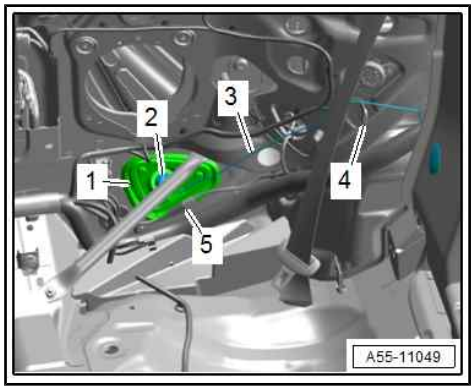
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Right side:

– Move aerial connector -5- clear at inner cover -1-.

– Move manual release cable -3- clear at mounting -4-.

– Prise off inner cover using removal wedge - 3409- and move clear grommet -2- with manual release cable.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

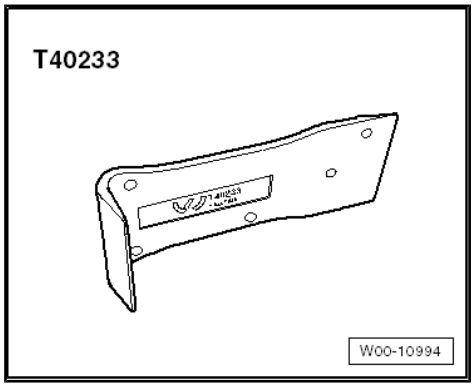
– Press on inner cover until it engages audibly.

• Inner cover must be flush.

1.7 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - T40233-



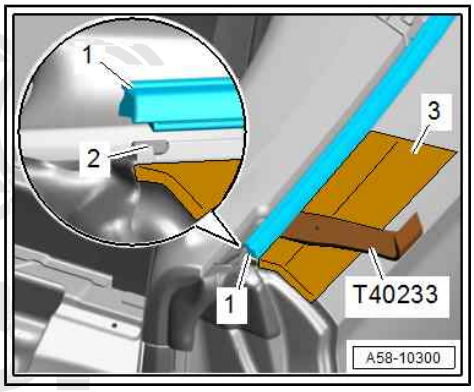
Removing

– Move rear side window to “open” position.

– Remove side trim (rear) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim .

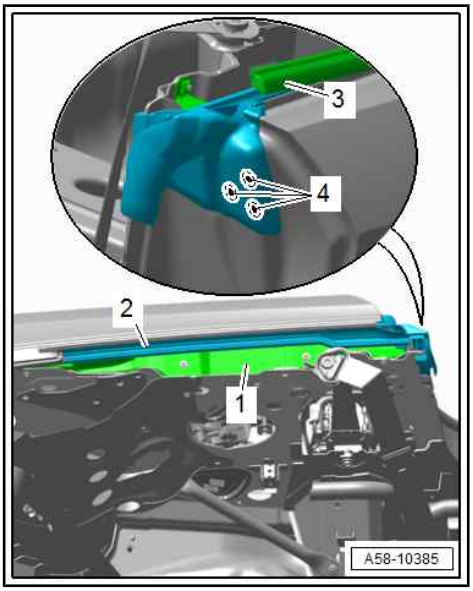
– Mask body -3- in area of B-pillar/window slot trim strip.

– Using removal wedge - T40233- , press outer window slot trim strip -1- slightly off body seam -2- in vicinity of B-pillar.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

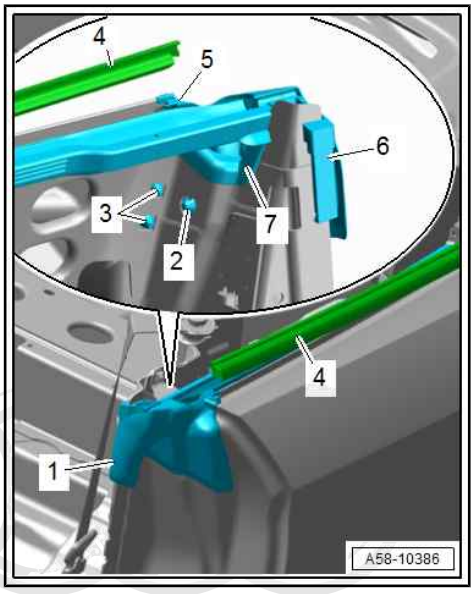
– Pull inner window slot trim strip -2- off mounting -1- for side window.
– Disengage retaining lugs -4- on inner window slot trim strip from outside of B-pillar and detach outer window slot trim strip -3- from body seam.
– Detach inner window slot trim strip.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

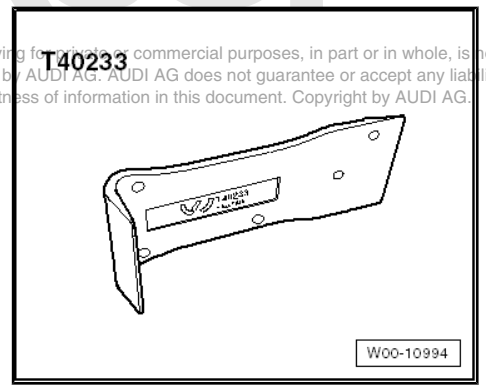
– Position inner window slot trim strip -1- on B-pillar so that sealing lug -7- engages in B-pillar and sealing lug -6- makes contact with body seam.
– Position inner window slot trim strip flush against door seal.
– Fasten retaining lugs -2 and 3- of inner window slot trim strip to outside of B-pillar.
– Insert end -5- of inner window slot trim strip into mounting of outer window slot trim strip -4-.



1.8 Removing and installing outer window slot trim strip

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - T40233-

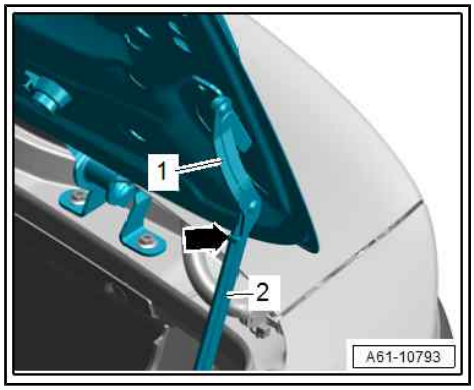


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

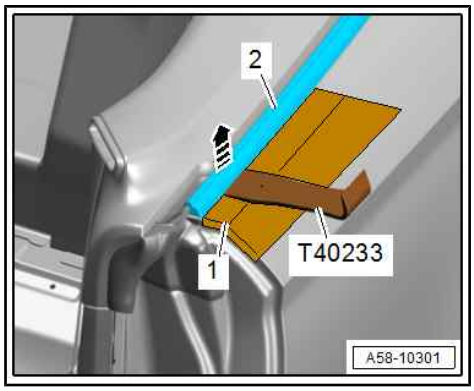
Removing

– Open convertible roof.

– Secure convertible roof compartment lid in “open” position to make sure it is not closed unintentionally; to do so, press strut -2- to the rear until stop -arrow- of support -1- makes contact with strut.
– Move rear side window to “open” position.



– Mask body -1- in area of window slot trim strip.
– Using removal wedge - T40233- , press outer window slot trim strip -2- off body seam, starting in area of B-pillar.
– Detach window slot trim strip.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

For installing, you can coat the bottom edge of the window slot trim strip with tyre assembly paste.

– Position window slot trim strip on body seam at B-pillar and press on evenly by hand.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

61 – Convertible roof, hardtop, canopy

1 Convertible roof

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - convertible roof”, page 125

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - main mounting for convertible roof”, page 127

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - locking mechanism for convertible roof”, page 128

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing convertible roof”, page 129

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing retaining plate for convertible roof”, page 134

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing convertible roof locking mechanism”, page 135

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing locking element”, page 135

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing convertible roof lock motor V223 ”, page 136

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing drive unit for convertible roof locking mechanism”, page 136

⇒ “1.10 Service position of convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid”, page 137

⇒ “1.11 Manual operation”, page 138

Audi
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1 Exploded view - convertible roof

1 - Main mounting

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 127

2 - Rear roof frame

3 - Centre roof frame

4 - Front roof frame

5 - Front cross strut

6 - Cross strut 1

7 - Cross strut 2

8 - Cross strut 3

9 - Cross strut 4

10 - Rear window

- ❑ Not available as a separate replacement part

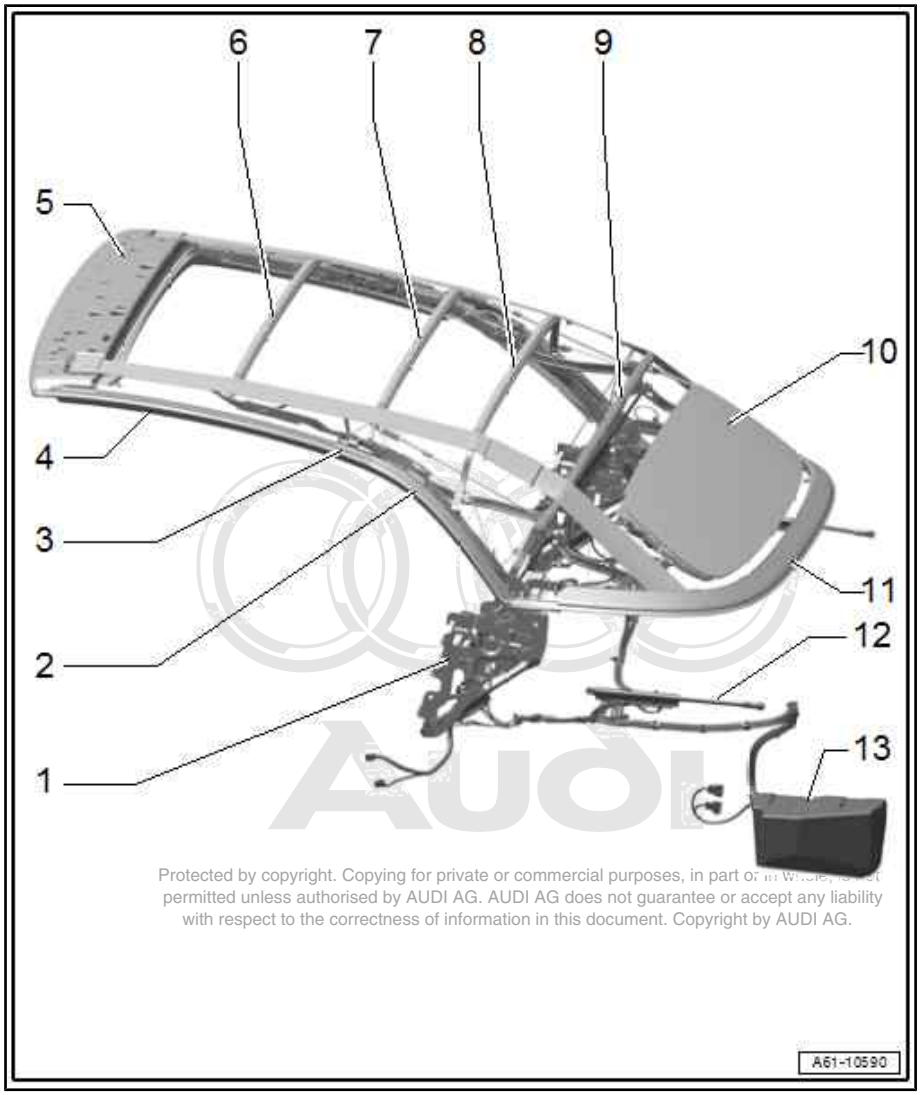
11 - Tensioner

12 - Hydraulic cylinder

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 163

13 - Hydraulic pump

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 163



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2 Exploded view - main mounting for convertible roof

1 - Main mounting for convertible roof

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 34 Nm

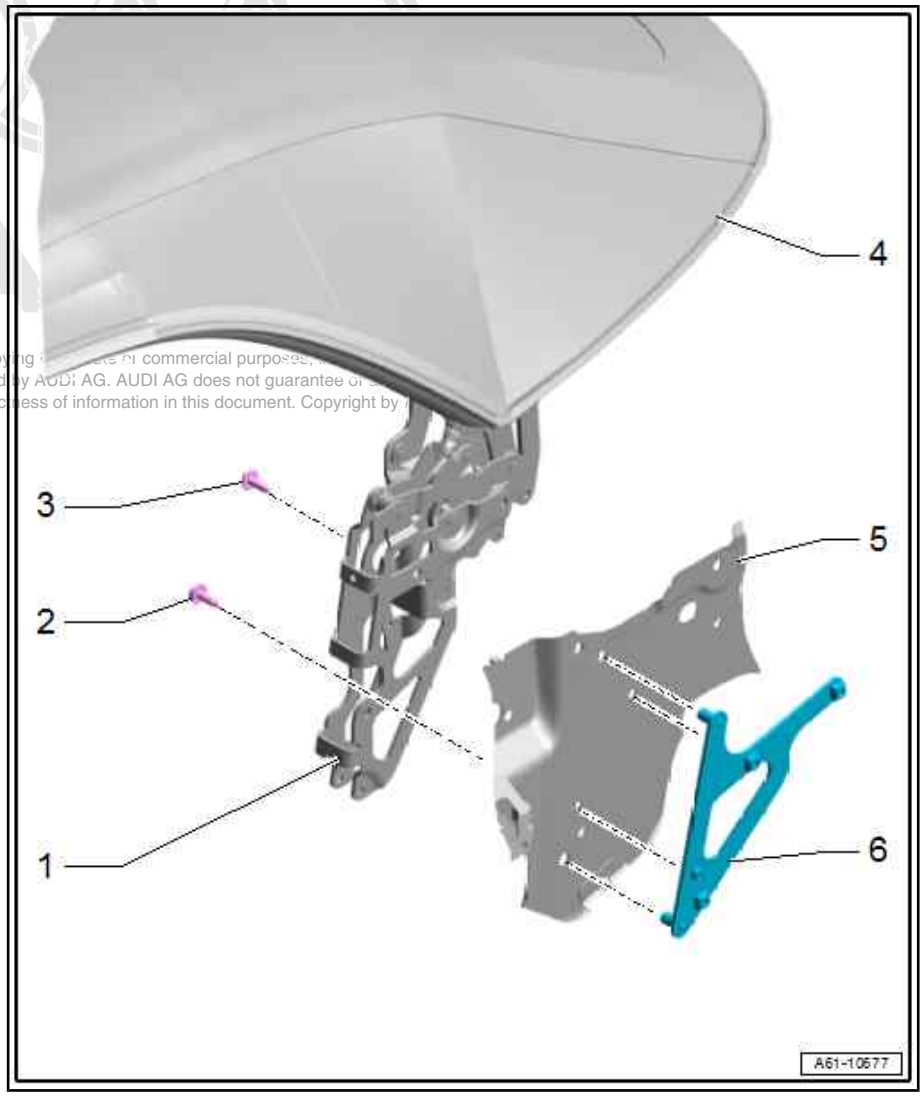
4 - Convertible roof

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 129

5 - Body

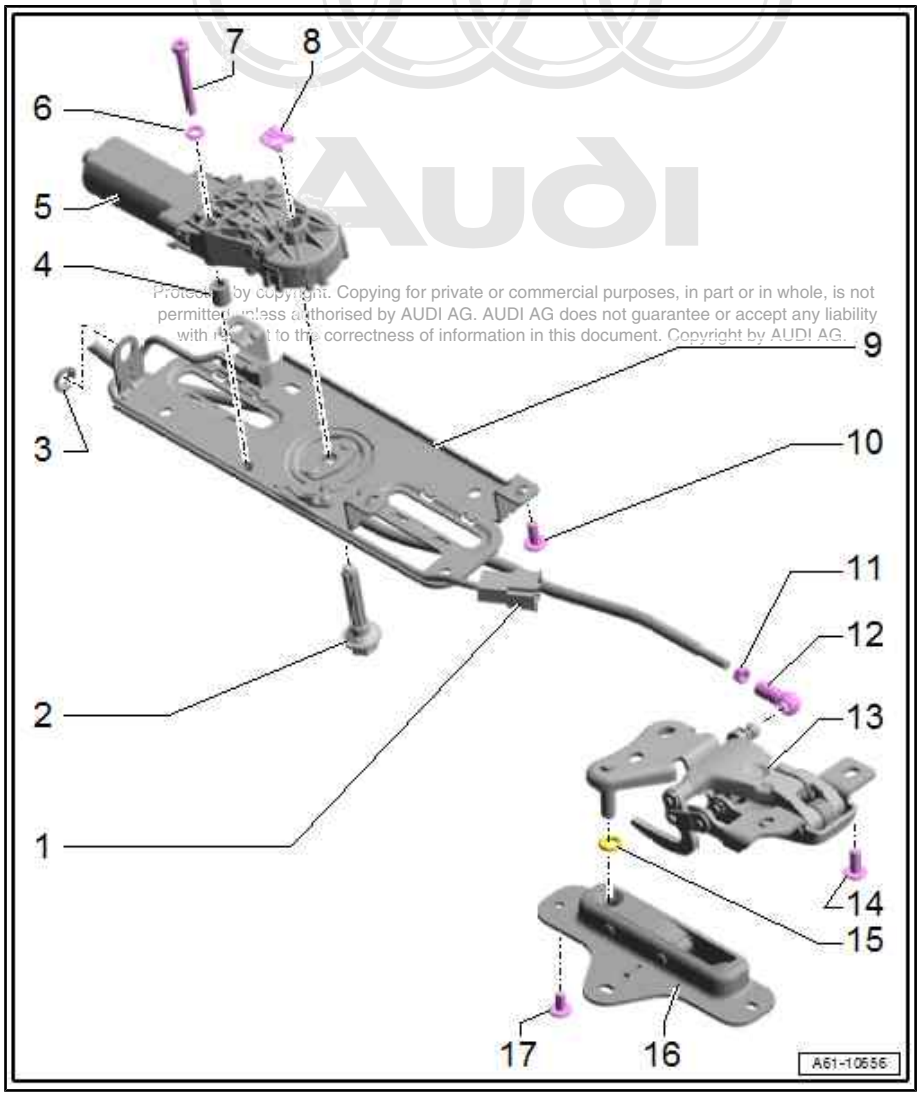
6 - Retainer

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 134



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Exploded view - locking mechanism for convertible roof



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Electrical wiring harness

2 - Input shaft

- For actuating convertible roof locks

3 - Grommet

- For securing convertible roof lock motor

4 - Spacer sleeve

5 - Convertible roof lock motor - V223-

- With convertible roof latch open switch - F294- , convertible roof latch closed switch - F295-
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 136

6 - Washer

7 - Bolt

- 6 Nm

8 - Retaining clip

- For input shaft

9 - Mounting

- With drive unit for convertible roof locking mechanism
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 136

10 - Bolt

- 3x
- 9 Nm

11 - Lock nut

12 - Ball socket

13 - Locking element

- With left switch for convertible roof closed - F411- , right switch for convertible roof closed - F412-
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 135

14 - Bolt

- 4x
- 10 Nm

15 - O-ring

- Renew if damaged

16 - Convertible roof lock mechanism

- With left latch switch for convertible roof - F169- , convertible roof latch open switch - F294-
- Pre-adjusted via locking rods
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 135

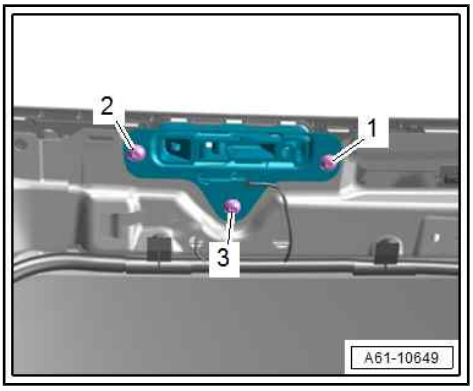
17 - Bolt

- 3x

❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 129

Locking element - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolts to 12 Nm in the sequence -1, 2, 3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4 Removing and installing convertible roof

• Two further mechanics are required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 132).

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Spacers - T40307-

Caution

Risk of damage to rear seat backrests.

- *To avoid dents or damage to the rear seat backrests, place a piece of foam between the body and the backrest.*
- *To avoid damaging the rear of the backrest, use a suitable cover.*

Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim (left-side) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim .

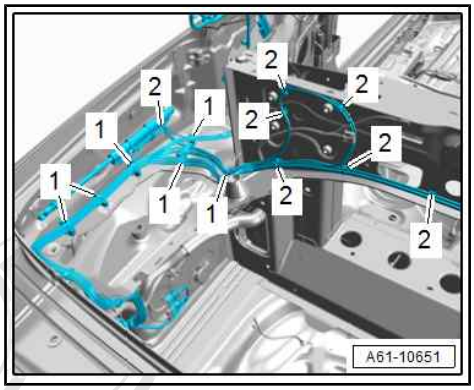
– Release rear seat backrest (right-side).

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .

– Remove convertible roof compartment ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Convertible roof compartment; Removing and installing convertible roof compartment .

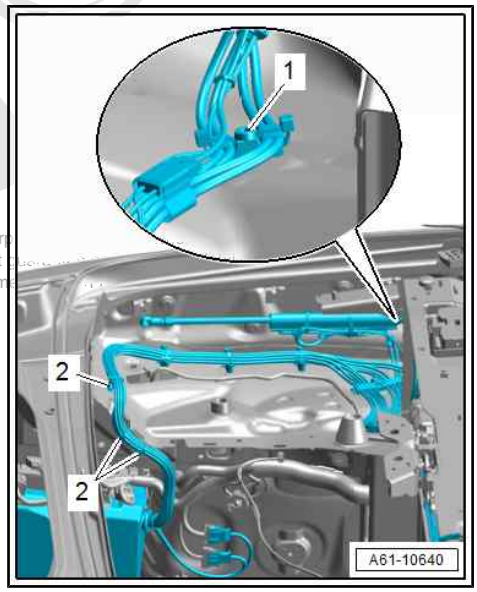
– Remove back panel trim (rear section) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels .

– Move hydraulic lines clear; to do so:
– Press retainers -1- off threaded pins.
– Prise pine-tree clip -2- out of body.

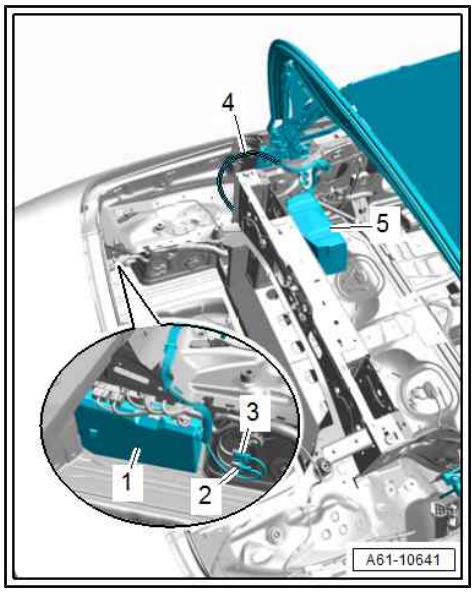


– Press retainer -1- off threaded pin.
– Prise pine-tree clip -2- out of body.
– Remove hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid and move clear to one side with hydraulic line connected ⇒ page 179 .
– Remove side trim panels ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim .

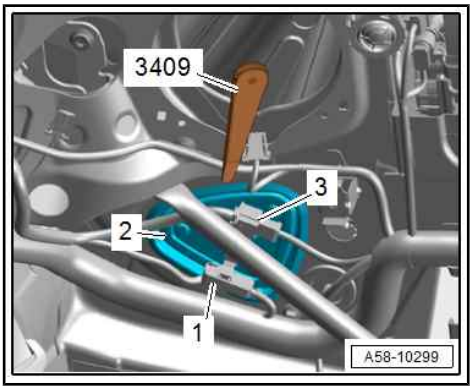
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not
with respect to the correctness of information in this docum



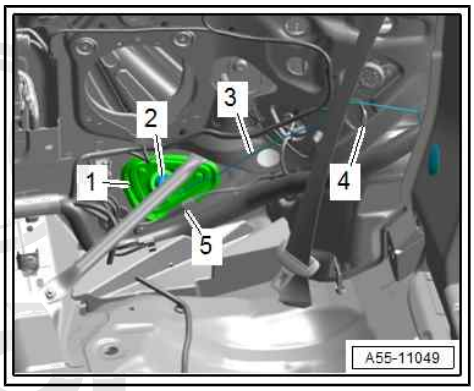
– Unplug electrical connectors -2 and 3- and take hydraulic pump -1- out of side compartment.
– Move hydraulic pump -5- towards front with hydraulic lines -4- connected.



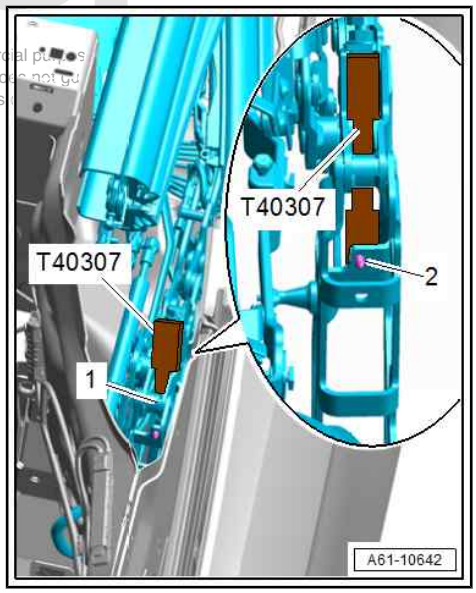
– Left side: Move electrical connectors -1 and 3- clear at inner cover -2-.



– Right side: Move aerial connector -5- clear at inner cover -1- and unplug connector.
– Move convertible roof to “open” position by hand.

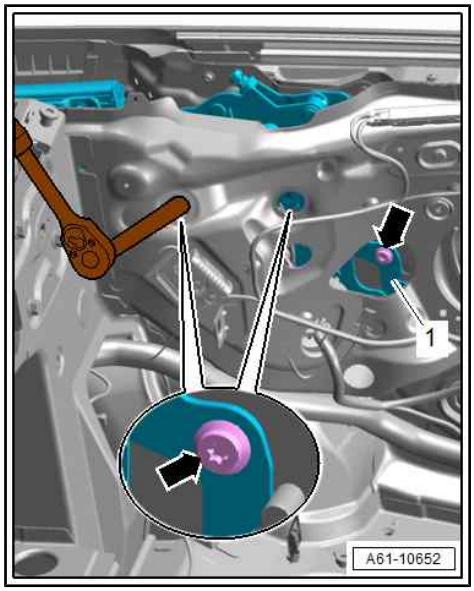


– Lift convertible roof with the help of a second mechanic and insert spacers - T40307- at main mounting -1-.
• Narrow side must face downwards.
• Spacer - T40307- must be inserted in front of stop buffer -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this

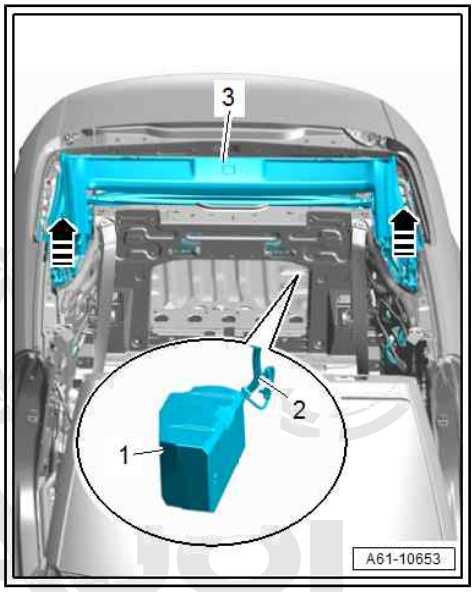
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- at main mounting -1-.



– Convertible roof -3- must be lifted out of vehicle carefully -arrows- by three mechanics.

• Two mechanics should take hold of the convertible roof.

• The third mechanic should remove the hydraulic pump -1- and hydraulic lines -2-.



– Mask body -4- to prevent damage to paintwork.

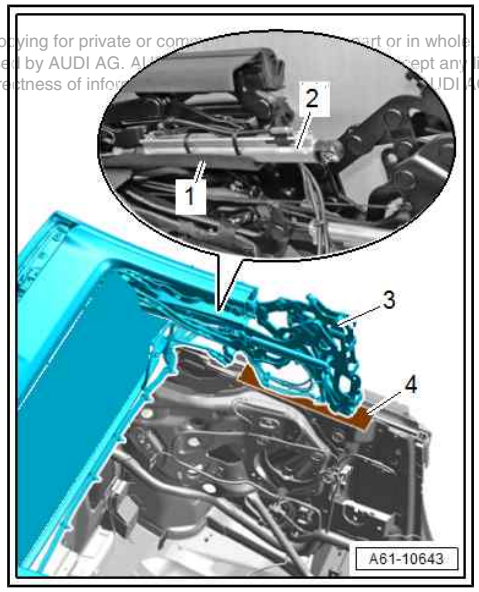
– When lifting out convertible roof, carefully guide it past open convertible roof compartment lid and set it down with main mountings -3- on body.

– Place hydraulic cylinder -2- for convertible roof compartment lid down in roof guide element (rear) -1-.

– Close convertible roof compartment lid by hand.

– Remove convertible roof towards rear and set it down on a soft surface.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



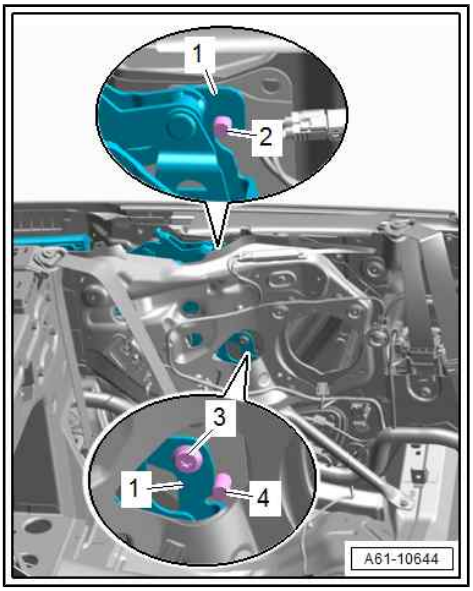
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Fit convertible roof in vehicle with the assistance of two mechanics.

- Two mechanics should take hold of the convertible roof.
- The third mechanic should fit the hydraulic pump, hydraulic cylinder and hydraulic lines.
- Main mounting -1- of convertible roof must be engaged at upper pin -2- of retaining plate and must make contact with lower pin -4- of retaining plate.

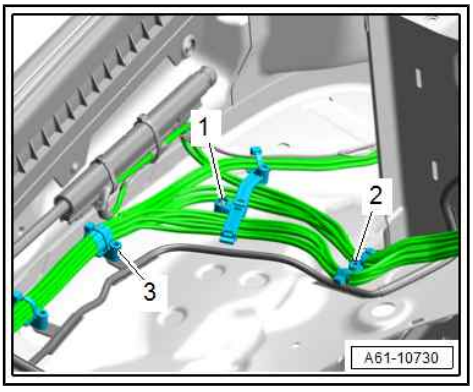
– Tighten bolt -3- to specified torque.



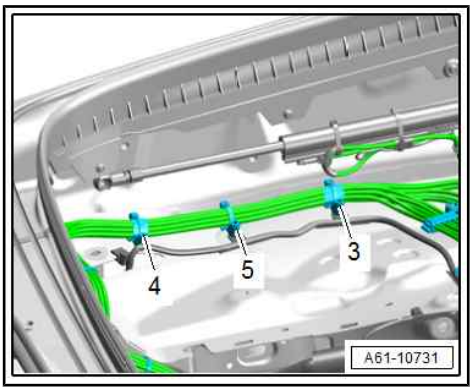
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document's contents and its usability for any purpose.

– Fit hydraulic lines in the sequence -1 ... 23-, as shown in illustrations.

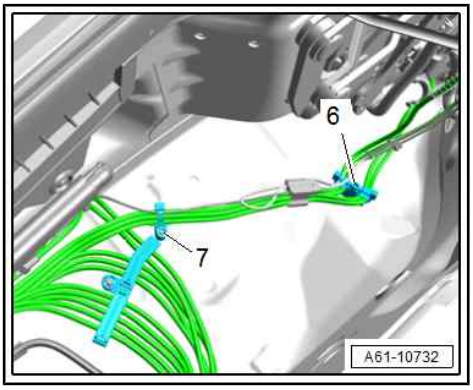
♦ Hydraulic lines in convertible roof compartment (centre left)



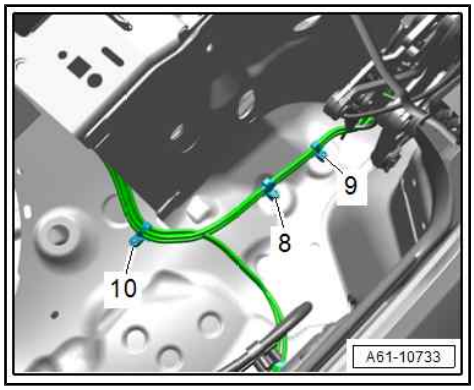
♦ Hydraulic lines in convertible roof compartment (left-side)



♦ Hydraulic lines in convertible roof compartment (front left)

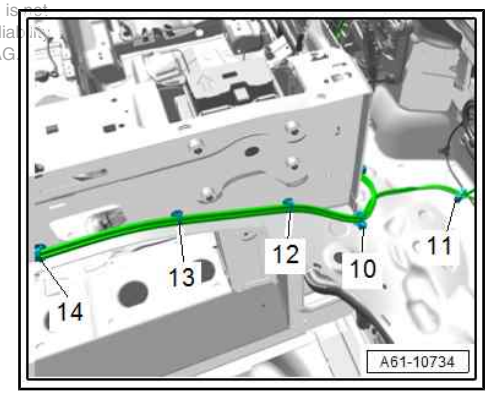


- Hydraulic lines in convertible roof compartment (front right)

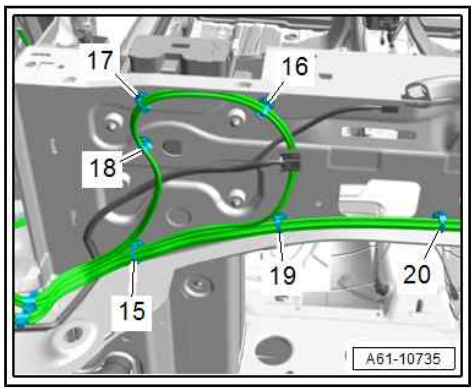


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

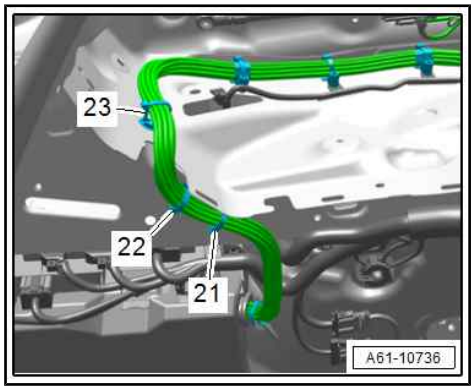
- Hydraulic lines in convertible roof compartment (centre right)



- Hydraulic lines on back panel trim



- Hydraulic lines going to hydraulic pump



– Close convertible roof and check adjustment of side windows ⇒ page 249 .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - main mounting for convertible roof”, page 127

1.5 Removing and installing retaining plate for convertible roof

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 127 .

Removing

– Remove convertible roof ⇒ page 129 .

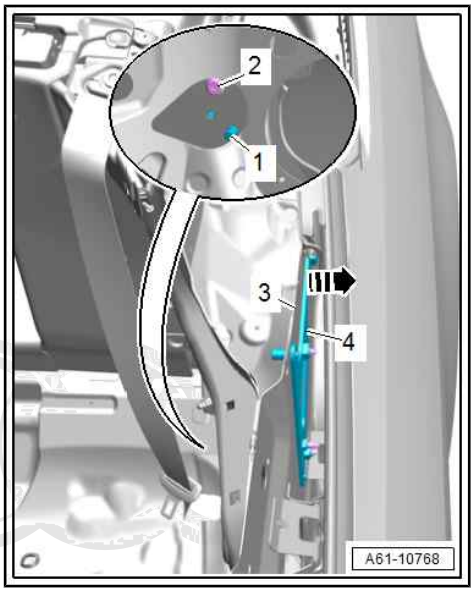
– Remove window regulator ⇒ page 117 .
– Remove bolt -2-.
– Pull retaining plate -4- with dowel pins -1- out of body -3- -arrow-.
– Lift out retaining plate.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - main mounting for convertible roof”, page 127



1.6 Removing and installing convertible roof locking mechanism

Removing

– Remove trim (front) ⇒ page 161 .
– Release locking pin -3- at ball socket -5- -arrow A- and pull out -arrow B-.
– Press ball socket with linkage off ball stud -4-.
– Unscrew bolts -1- and detach convertible roof locking mechanism -2-.

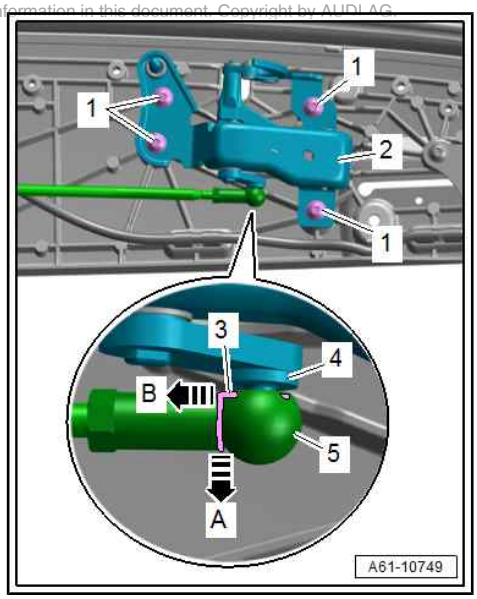
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - locking mechanism for convertible roof”, page 128

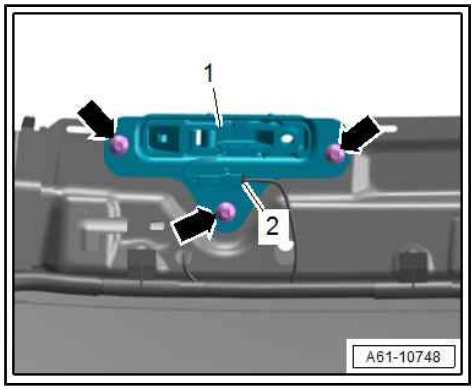


1.7 Removing and installing locking element

Removing

– Remove trim for windscreen frame ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels .

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach locking element -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

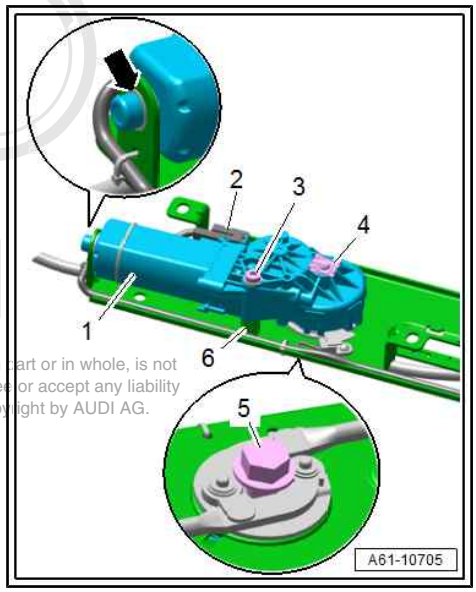
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - locking mechanism for convertible roof”, page 128

1.8 Removing and installing convertible roof lock motor - V223-

Removing

– Remove drive unit for convertible roof locking mechanism ⇒ page 136 .
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Press off retaining clip -4- and pull out drive bolt -5-.
– Remove bolt -3-.
– Pull convertible roof lock motor -1- out of mounting -arrow- and detach together with spacer -6-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure that switch is covered by metal retainer when drive bolt is inserted.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques

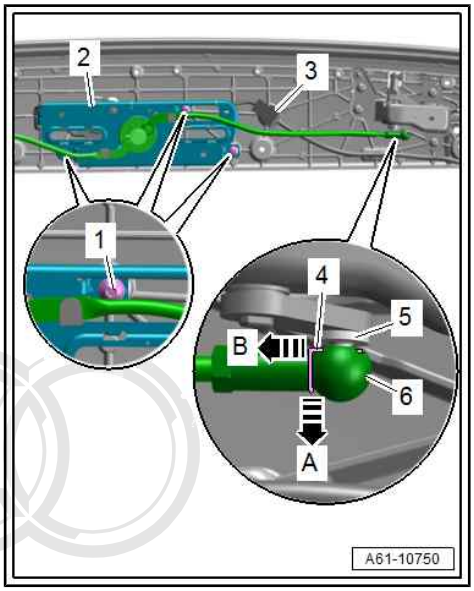
◆ ⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - locking mechanism for convertible roof”, page 128

1.9 Removing and installing drive unit for convertible roof locking mechanism

Removing

– Remove trim (front) ⇒ page 161 .

– Unplug electrical connector -3- and move it clear.
– Move convertible roof locking mechanism to “closed” position.
– Release locking pin -4- at ball socket -6- -arrow A- and pull out -arrow B-.
– Press ball socket with linkage off ball stud -5-.
– Remove bolts -1-.
– Detach mounting -2- with convertible roof lock motor - V223- .



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - locking mechanism for convertible roof”, page 128

1.10 Service position of convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Tensioning strap - T10038-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does nc ccept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this docu. ght by AUDI AG.



♦ Hook - T40306-

WARNING

Danger of injury as convertible roof compartment lid may close automatically.

After approx. 6 minutes, the convertible roof control unit abruptly releases the hydraulic pressure in the system, which could cause the convertible roof compartment lid to close suddenly.

- *When moving the convertible roof to the service position, the convertible roof compartment lid must be moved fully into the rear end position.*
- *The hydraulic pressure in the system must be released before working on the convertible roof system.*

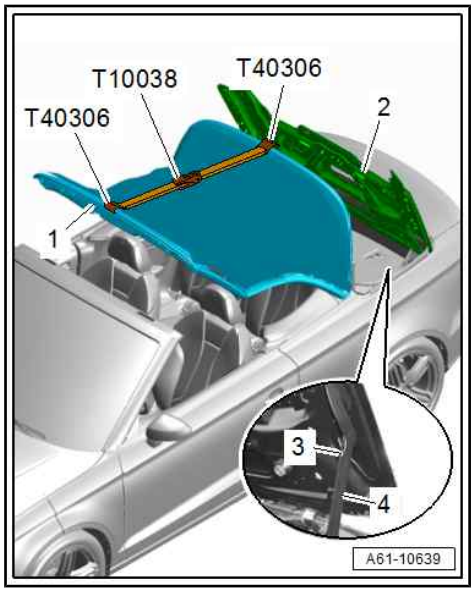
Procedure

– Open convertible roof -1- until convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid -2- are in the positions shown.

– Secure convertible roof compartment lid in “open” position to make sure it is not closed unintentionally; to do so, press strut -4- to the rear until stop of support -3- makes contact with strut.

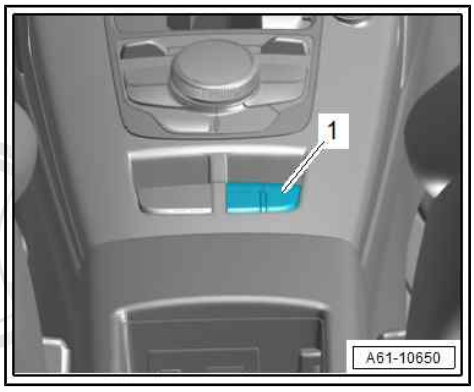
– Guide tensioning strap - T10038- into hooks - T40306- and tension strap three revolutions on shaft at quick-release tensioner.

– Engage hooks - T40306- at front and rear centre edge of convertible roof and tension again, if necessary.



– With ignition switched off, press and hold convertible roof actuation button - E137- -item 1- for approx. 5 seconds.

• This releases the pressure in the hydraulic system.



1.11 Manual operation

⇒ “1.11.1 Overload protection for convertible roof actuation active”, page 138

⇒ “1.11.2 Manual operation of convertible roof”, page 139

Audi
Any reproduction, use for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.11.1 Overload protection for convertible roof actuation active

If the convertible roof is actuated continuously over a lengthy period, the hydraulic unit is put under severe strain.

The overload protection is activated to prevent damage to the system.

• This protective function prevents the actuation of the convertible roof for approx. 15 to 30 minutes, after which the convertible roof can be actuated again.

WARNING

Risk of accident and injury.

- *Never drive the vehicle if the convertible roof is not properly locked in position at the windscreen frame.*
- *There is a risk of the convertible roof being opened by the air stream while driving; this can lead to injuries or cause damage to the vehicle.*

1.11.2 Manual operation of convertible roof

Procedure

– Observe the general notes ⇒ page 5 .

– Apply handbrake and open door windows.

WARNING

Risk of injury.

- *If the convertible roof actuation mechanism fails while the roof is being opened or closed, it is important not to reach into the convertible roof linkage or take hold of any other moving parts while the pressure is being reduced as the convertible roof and the convertible roof compartment lid will collapse and could trap your hands.*

WARNING

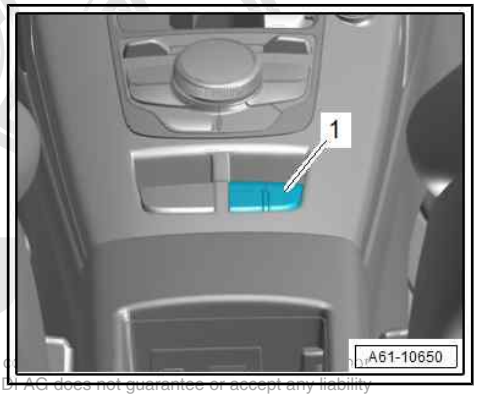
Danger of injury as convertible roof compartment lid may close automatically.

After approx. 6 minutes, the convertible roof control unit abruptly releases the hydraulic pressure in the system, which could cause the convertible roof compartment lid to close suddenly.

- *When moving the convertible roof to the service position, the convertible roof compartment lid must be moved fully into the rear end position.*
- *The hydraulic pressure in the system must be released before working on the convertible roof system.*

– With ignition switched off, press and hold convertible roof actuation button - E137- -item 1- for approx. 5 seconds.

• This releases the pressure in the hydraulic system.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release rear seat backrests.

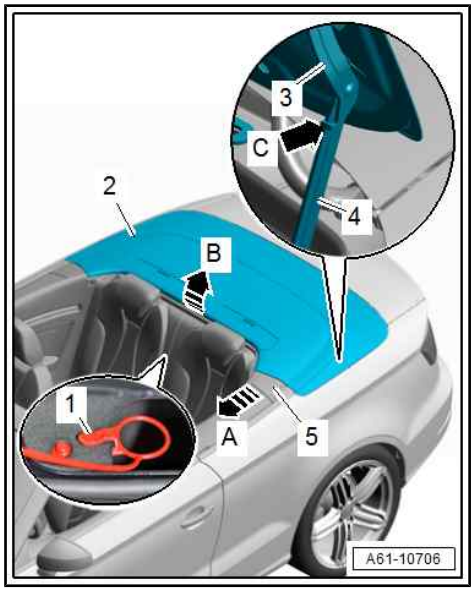
– Move eye -1- of manual release mechanism clear at body and pull at it until locking mechanism of convertible roof compartment is released.

– Slide cover -5- into side trim -arrow A-.

WARNING

Risk of injury.

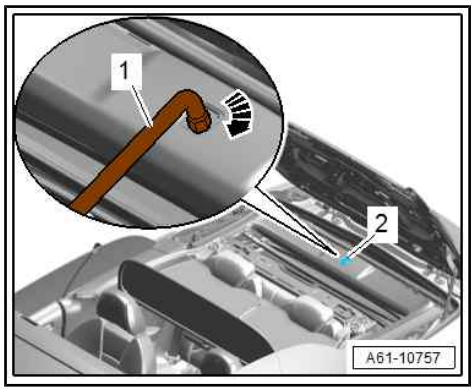
- *When raising the convertible roof, keep your hands away from the convertible roof linkage or other moving parts to avoid trapping your hands.*



– Open convertible roof compartment lid -2- -arrow B- and secure it in “open” position to make sure it is not closed unintentionally; to do so, press strut -4- to the rear until stop -arrow C- of support -3- makes contact with strut.

– Prise off cap -2-.

– Insert wheel bolt wrench -1- from vehicle tool kit in opening.

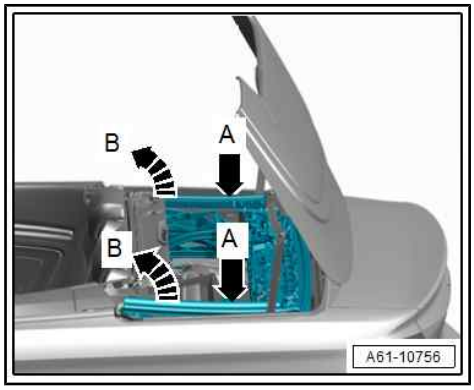


– Using wheel bolt wrench, turn manual locking mechanism clockwise as far as it will go -arrow-.

WARNING

Risk of injury.

- *When raising the convertible roof, keep your hands away from the convertible roof linkage or other moving parts to avoid trapping your hands.*



– With the help of a second mechanic, take hold of convertible roof from both sides -arrows A-, lift it and pull it out towards front -arrows B-.

– Press tensioner towards convertible roof.

Reproduction by any means, even for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

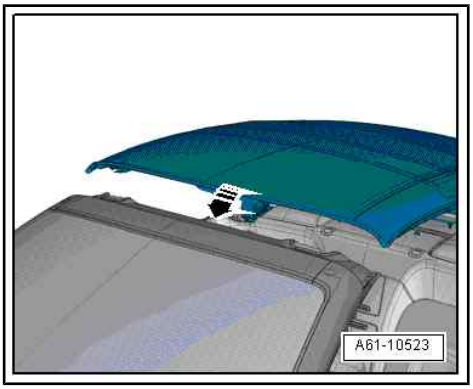
WARNING

Risk of injury.

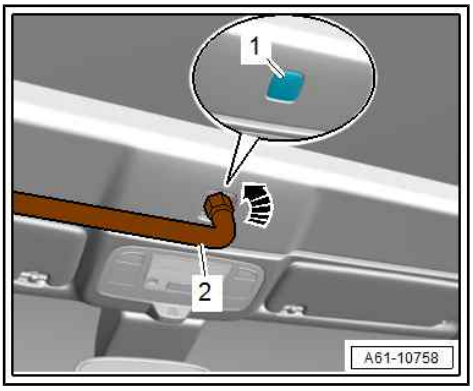
- *When closing the convertible roof, keep your hands away from the convertible roof linkage or other moving parts to avoid trapping your hands.*

– Carefully close convertible roof compartment lid and set tensioner down on convertible roof compartment lid.

– Press convertible roof as far forwards as possible towards windscreen frame -arrow-.



– Insert wheel bolt wrench -2- from vehicle tool kit in opening.
– Turn manual locking mechanism anti-clockwise as far as it will go -arrow-.
• Convertible roof is then locked in position at windscreen frame.
– Take out wheel bolt wrench and seal opening with cap -1-.



WARNING

Risk of accident and injury.

- *Never drive the vehicle if the convertible roof is not properly locked in position at the windscreen frame.*
- *There is a risk of the convertible roof being opened by the air stream while driving; this can lead to injuries or cause damage to the vehicle.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Convertible roof cover

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - insulation and convertible roof headliner”, page 142

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables, convertible roof headliner”, page 143

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing convertible roof cover”, page 145

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing tensioning cable for convertible roof cover”, page 149

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing guide strap for convertible roof cross strut”, page 150

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing convertible roof headliner”, page 154

2.1 Exploded view - insulation and convertible roof headliner

1 - Trim (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 161

2 - Convertible roof headliner
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 154

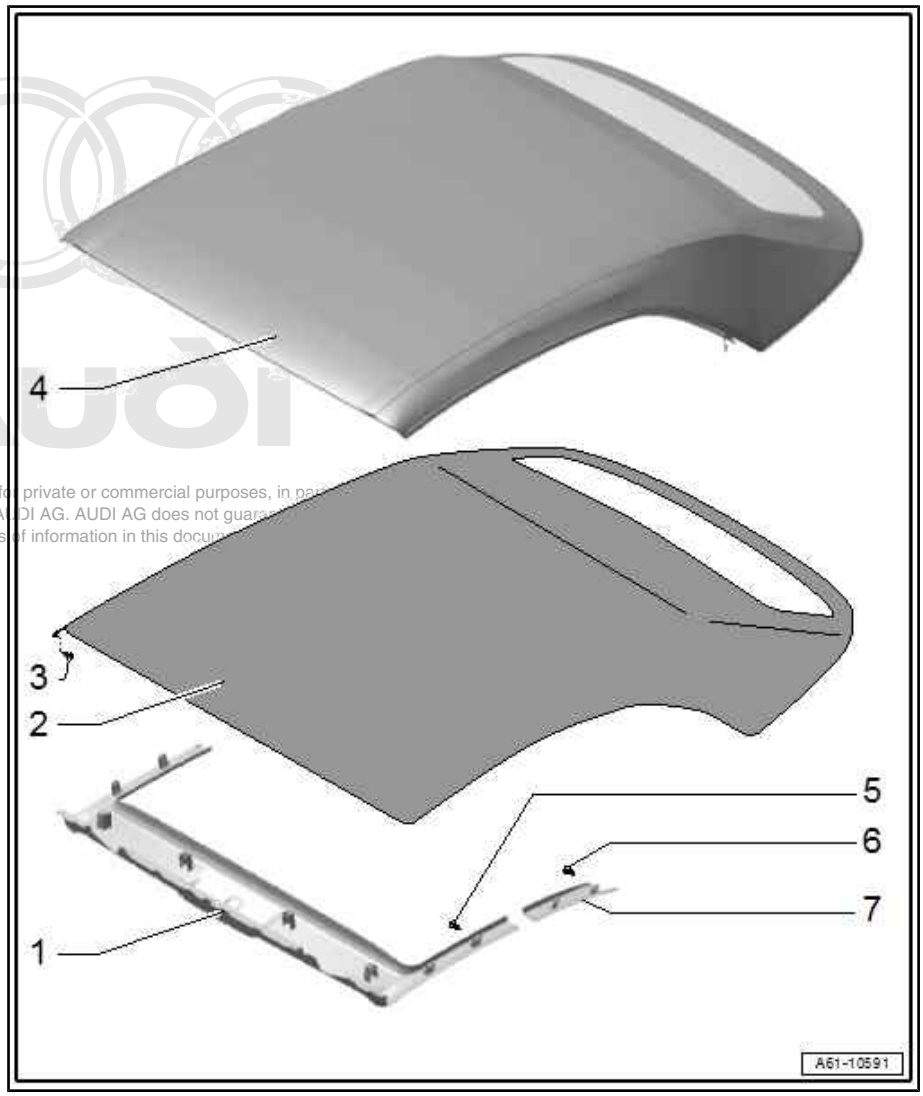
3 - Bolt
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

4 - Convertible roof cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 145

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

7 - Trim (centre)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 162



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

2.2 Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables, convertible roof headliner

⇒ “2.2.1 Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables (front), convertible roof headliner”, page 143

⇒ “2.2.2 Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables (rear), convertible roof headliner”, page 144

2.2.1 Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables (front), convertible roof headliner

1 - Extension spring

2 - Tensioning cable

- ❑ For convertible roof headliner

3 - Tensioning cable

- ❑ For convertible roof cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 149

4 - Cover panel

5 - Tensioning strip for convertible roof cover

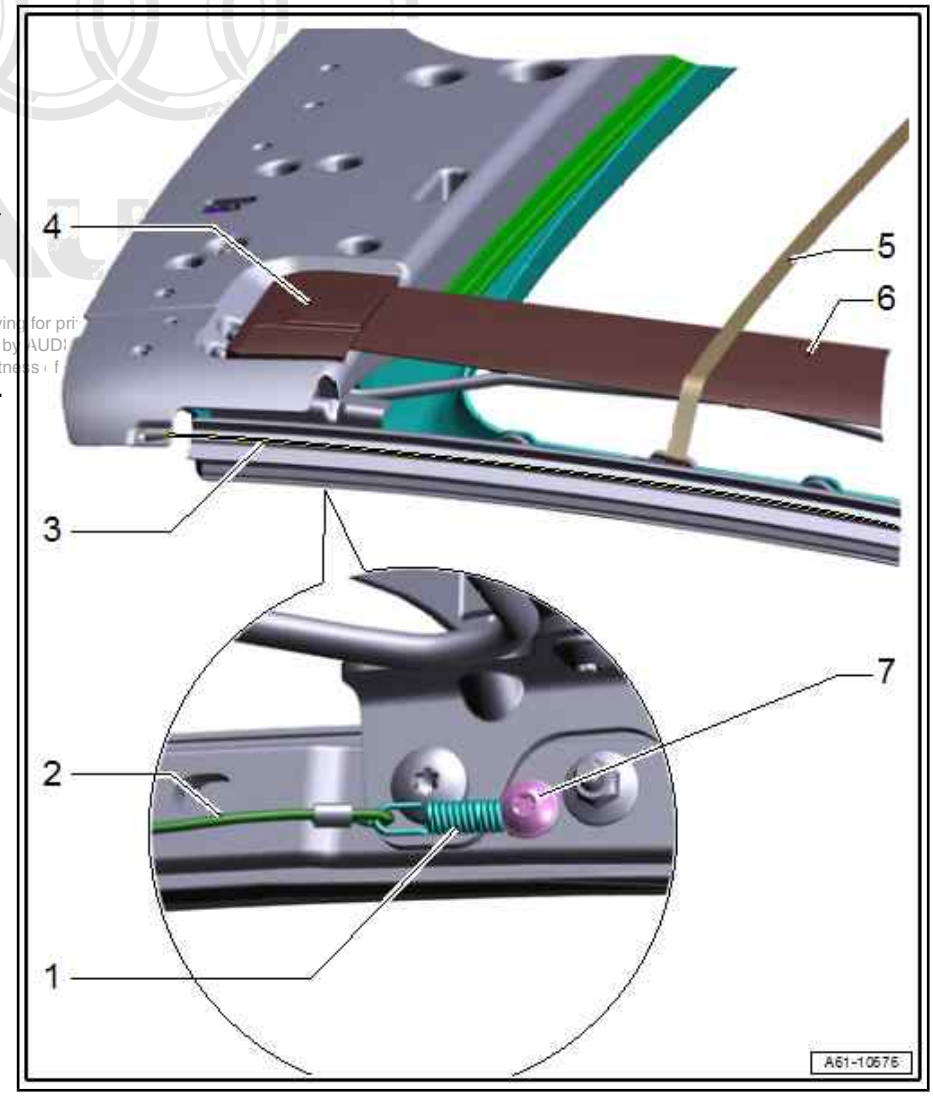
- ❑ For roof folding mechanism when convertible roof is opened

6 - Guide strap

- ❑ For cross struts “1 ... 3”
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 150

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2.2 Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables (rear), convertible roof headliner

Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables (rear), convertible roof headliner - part 1 ⇒ page 144

Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables (rear), convertible roof headliner - part 2 ⇒ page 144

Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables (rear), convertible roof headliner - part 1

1 - Rubber strap

2 - Control cable 2

3 - Control cable 6

4 - Tensioning strip for convertible roof cover

- ❑ For roof folding mechanism when convertible roof is opened

5 - Extension spring

6 - Holder

- ❑ For extension spring
- ❑ Is guided in guide strap

7 - Guide cable for convertible roof cover

8 - Control cable 1

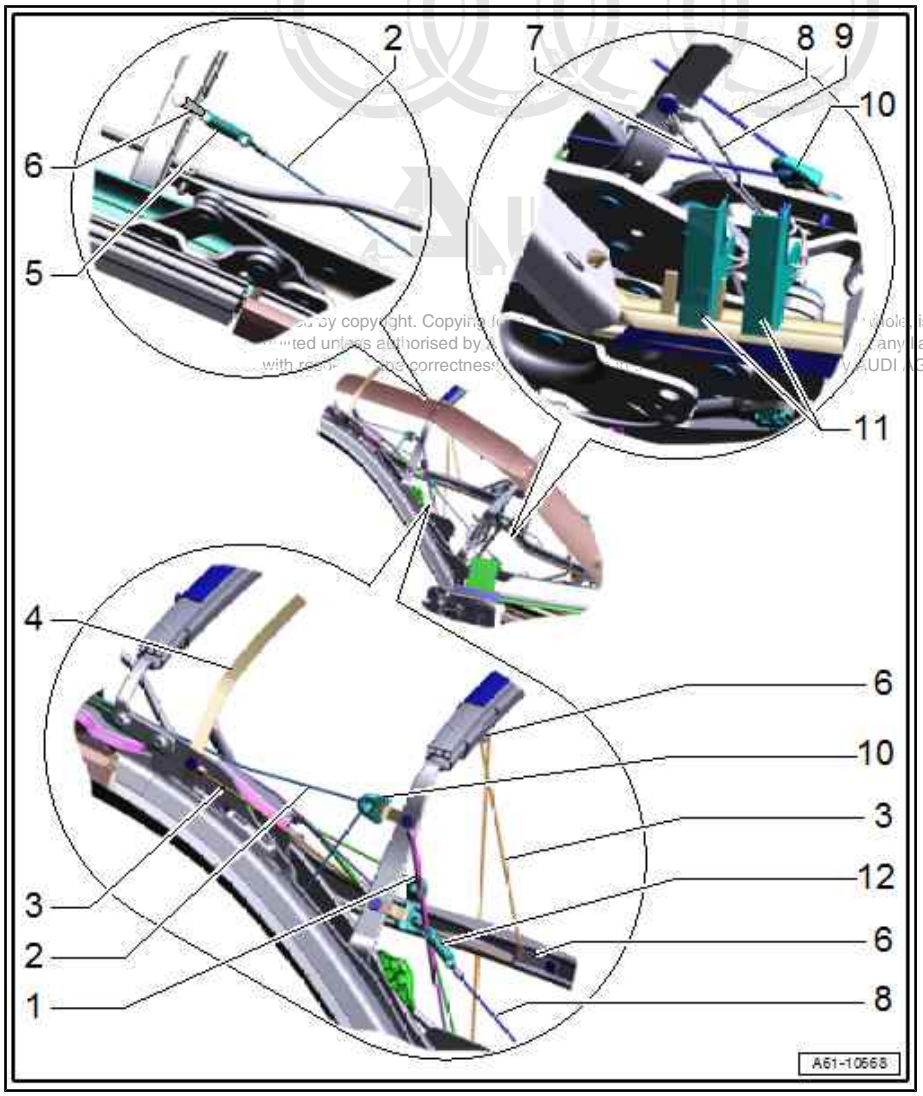
9 - Guide cable for convertible roof cover

10 - Reversing mechanism

11 - Bracket for convertible roof cover

- ❑ For guide cable

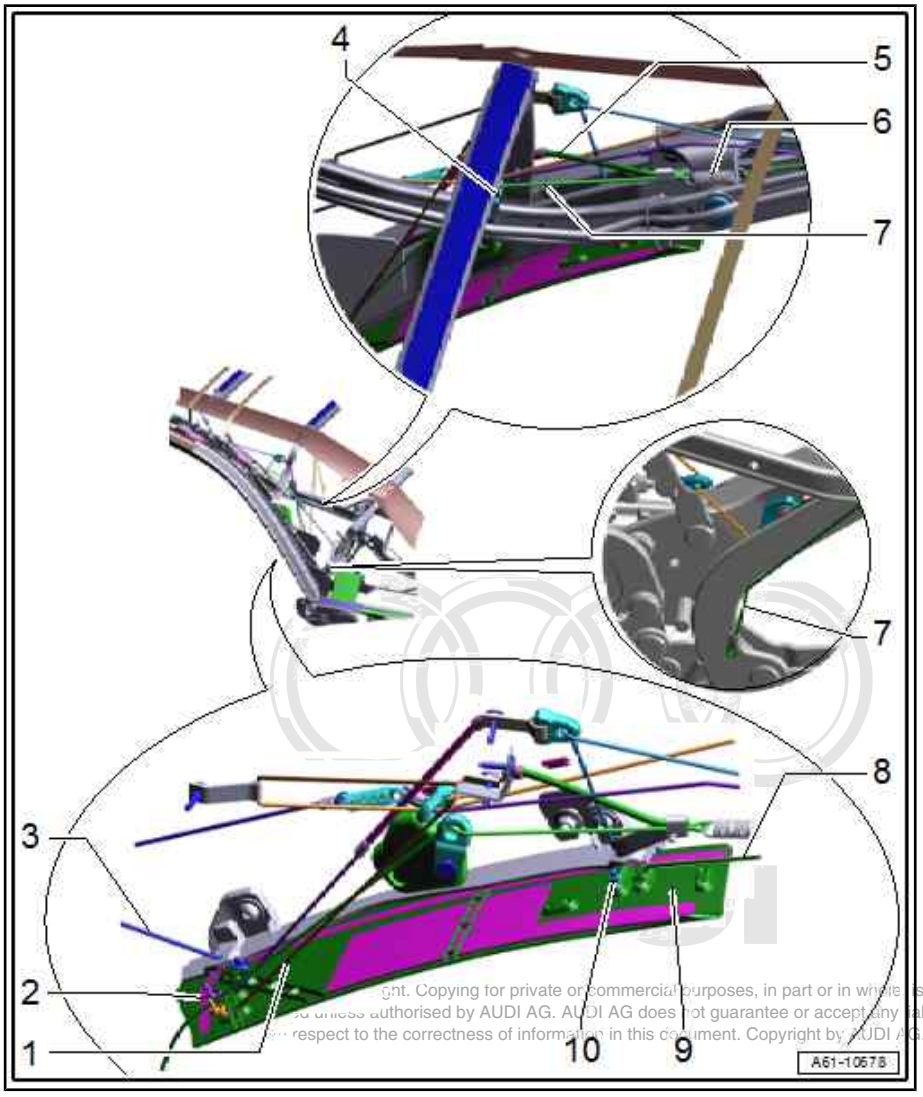
12 - Extension spring



...ed by copyright. Copying ... whole is not ...ted unless authorised by ... any liability with ... correctness ... AUDI AG.

Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables (rear), convertible roof headliner - part 2

1 - Control cable 6
2 - Control cable 7
3 - Control cable
4 - Reversing mechanism
5 - Rubber strap
6 - Extension spring
7 - Contour cable
8 - Control cable 5
9 - Cover
❑ For convertible roof hinge
10 - Control cable 2



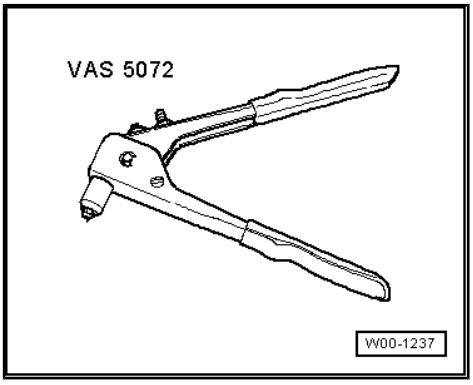
ght. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Removing and installing convertible roof cover

To avoid interchanging components and to make sure that they are re-installed in the original positions, mark the retaining straps, tensioning cables and electrical wires prior to removal. Make sketches or take photographs if necessary.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072-



♦ Drill

- Drill bit ∅ 4 mm
- Safety goggles
- Wide mole grips (commercial type)

Removing

– Remove convertible roof seal (front) ⇒ page 159 .

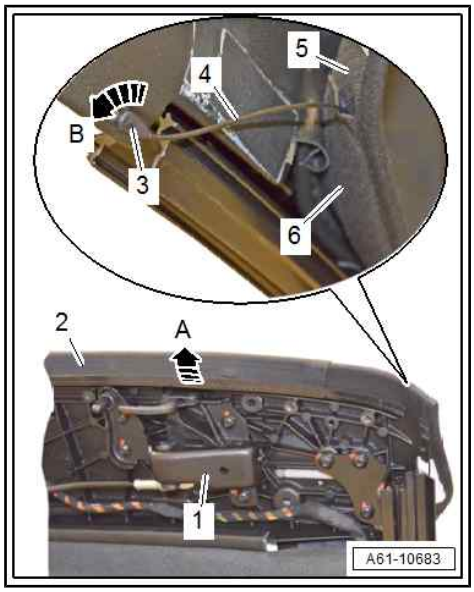
– Remove trim (front) ⇒ page 161 .

– Remove convertible roof seal (rear) ⇒ page 160 .

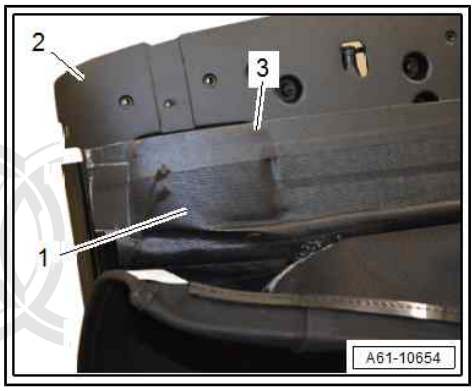
– Disengage convertible roof cover -2- from front cross strut -1- and fold back towards rear -arrow A-.

– Disengage guide cable -4- from front cross strut; to do so, turn fastener -3- 90° -arrow B-.

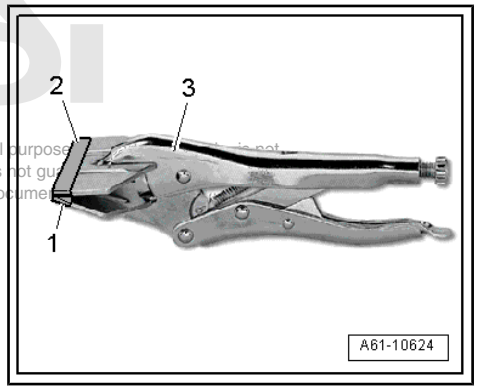
– Move guide cable clear at convertible roof cover -6-; to do so, pull guide cable out of guide -5- in convertible roof cover.



– Unfasten netting -1- and adhesive tape -3- from front cross strut -2-.



– Mask clamping jaws of wide mole grips (commercially available) -3- with felt strips -1, 2- to protect convertible roof cover.

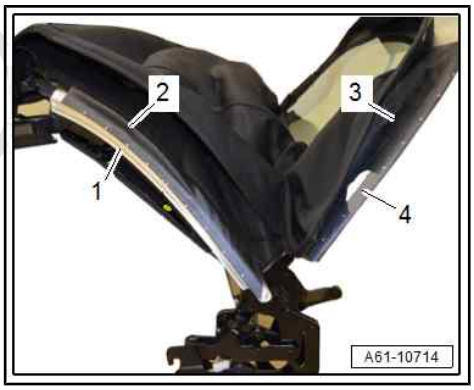


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Using wide mole grips -1-, pull retaining strip on convertible roof cover -2- off surround at main guide element (rear) -3- and off tensioner.

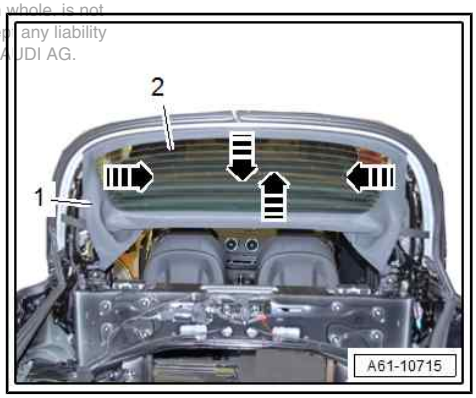


– Unfasten netting -2, 3- from main guide element (rear) -1- and from tensioner -4-.

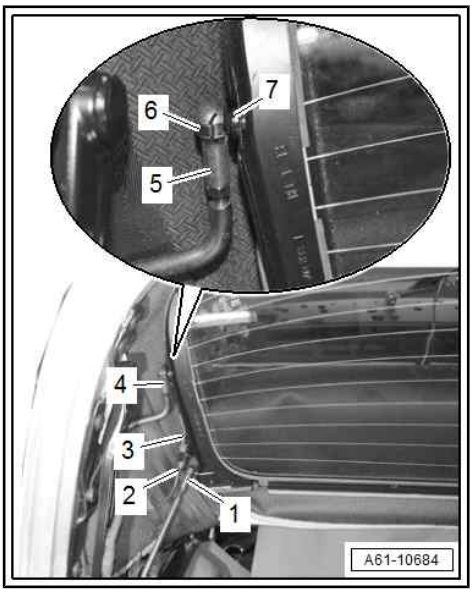


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

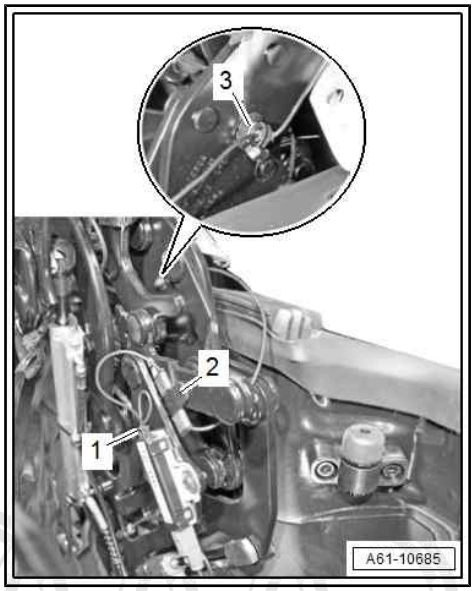
– Pull convertible roof headliner -1- out of surround at rear window -2- -arrows-.



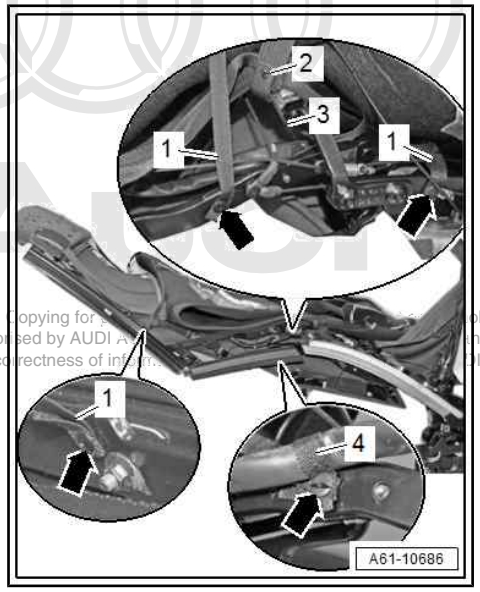
– Unfasten relay levers -1 and 4- from rear window frame; to do so, lift locking spring -6- slightly and pull relay lever -5- off ball stud -7-.
– Unfasten connector -2- from window frame and unplug connector -3-.



– Unplug connector -1- at main mounting (right-side) and move wiring -2, 3- clear.

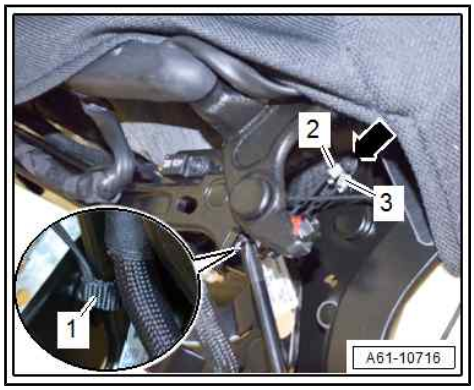


– Drill off pop rivets -arrows-, detach retaining straps -1- and guide loop -4- and knock out rivet stems.
– Open locking mechanism -2-, move clear guide cable -3- of cross strut “3” and close locking mechanism again.



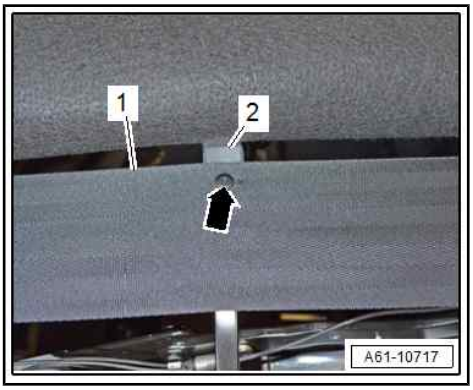
Protected by copyright. Copying for p... ble, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI A... ny liability with respect to the correctness of inf... DI AG.

– Drill off pop rivet -arrow-, remove tensioning cables -2 and 3- and knock out rivet stem.
– Guide tensioning cables out of guide loop -1-.

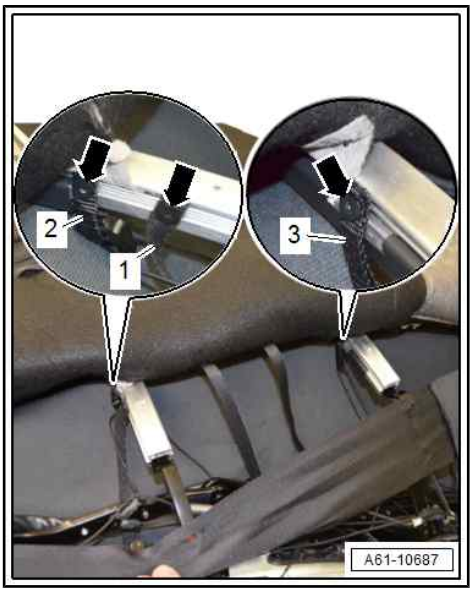


Note

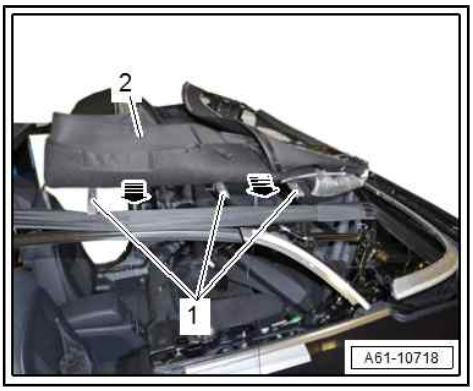
Drill off pop rivets at cross struts “1, 2 and 3” on left side of vehicle only.



– Move convertible roof to “closed” position by hand.
– Fold outside of convertible roof cover inwards.
– Drill off pop rivet -arrow-, move retaining strap -1- at cross strut -2- towards outside and knock out rivet stem.



– Drill off pop rivets -arrows- at cross struts “2 and 3”, remove retaining strap -1- and guide loops -2 and 3- and knock out rivet stems.
– Fold up convertible roof cover -2-.
– Pull convertible roof cover out of cross struts “1, 2 and 3” -item 1- towards left side -arrows- (as seen in direction of travel).



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

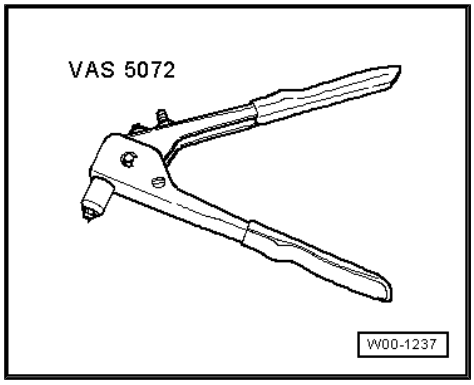
– If pop rivets cannot be knocked out, they must be drilled off.
– Check all cross struts for sharp edges at openings; if necessary remove burrs at edges.
– Coat openings of all cross struts with a small amount of Vaseline.
– Route tensioning and control cables ⇒ page 143 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4 Removing and installing tensioning cable for convertible roof cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072-

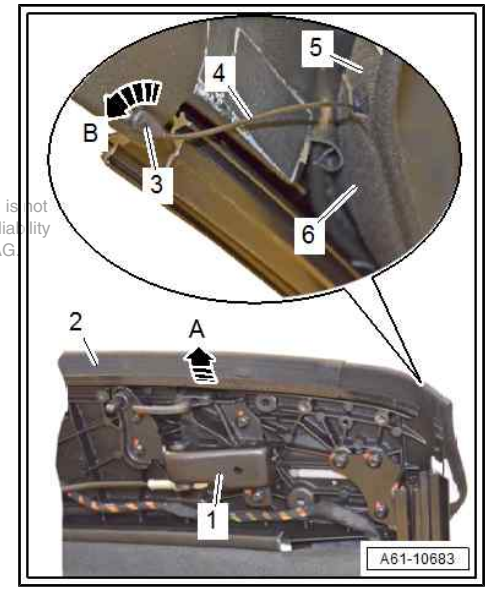


- Drill
- Drill bit ∅ 4 mm
- Safety goggles

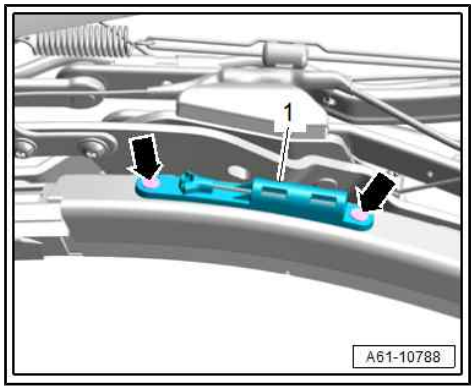
Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .
– Remove convertible roof seal (front) ⇒ page 159 .
– Remove trim (front) ⇒ page 161 .
– Disengage convertible roof cover -2- from front cross strut -1- and fold back towards rear -arrow A-.
– Disengage guide cable -4- from front cross strut; to do so, turn fastener -3- 90° -arrow B-.
– Move guide cable clear at convertible roof cover -6-; to do so, pull guide cable out of guide -5- in convertible roof cover.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Drill off pop rivets -arrows-, detach retainer for tensioning cable -1- and knock out rivet stems.



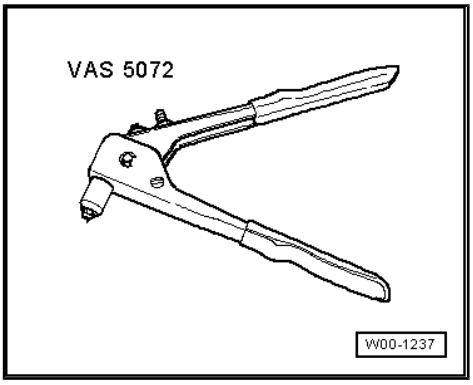
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.5 Removing and installing guide strap for convertible roof cross strut

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072-



- Drill
- Drill bit ∅ 4 mm
- Safety goggles
- Wide mole grips (commercial type)

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .

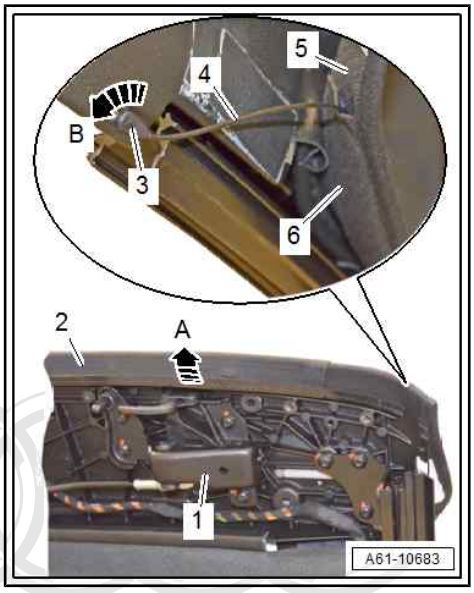
– Remove convertible roof seal (front) ⇒ page 159 .

– Remove trim (front) ⇒ page 161 .

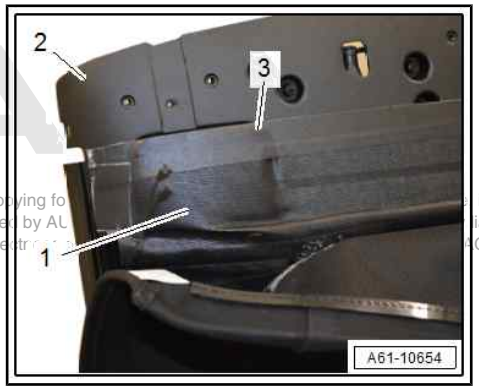
– Disengage convertible roof cover -2- from front cross strut -1- and fold back towards rear -arrow A-.

– Disengage guide cable -4- from front cross strut; to do so, turn fastener -3- 90° -arrow B-.

– Move guide cable clear at convertible roof cover -6-; to do so, pull guide cable out of guide -5- in convertible roof cover.

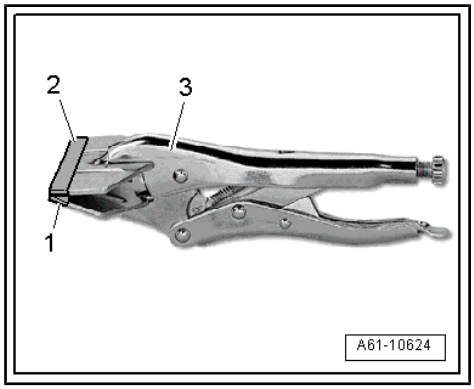


– Unfasten netting -1- and adhesive tape -3- from front cross strut -2-.

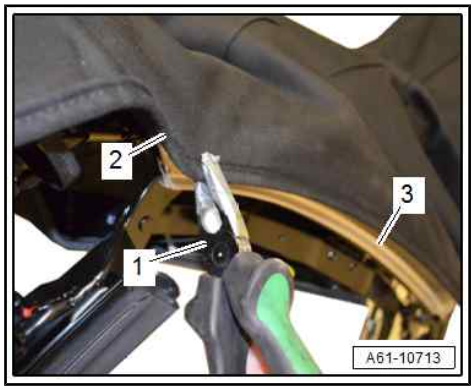


Protected by copyright. Copying fo is not permitted unless authorise by AU iability with respect to the corre tr AG.

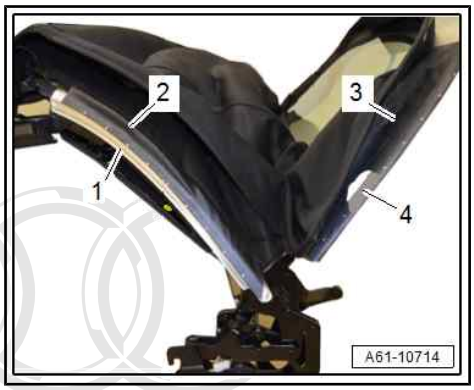
– Mask clamping jaws of wide mole grips (commercially available) -3- with felt strips -1, 2- to protect convertible roof cover.



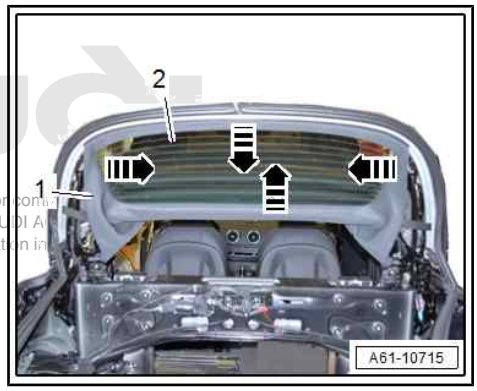
– Using wide mole grips -1-, pull retaining strip on convertible roof cover -2- off surround at main guide element (rear) -3- and off tensioner.



– Unfasten netting -2, 3- from main guide element (rear) -1- and from tensioner -4-.

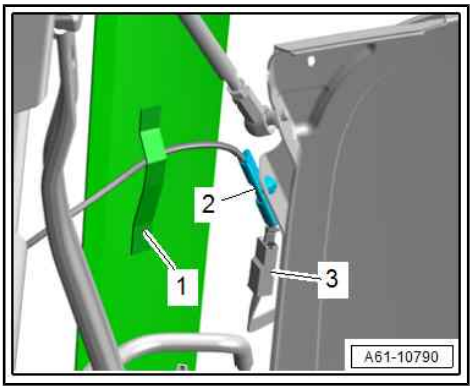


– Pull convertible roof headliner -1- out of surround at rear window -2- -arrows-.

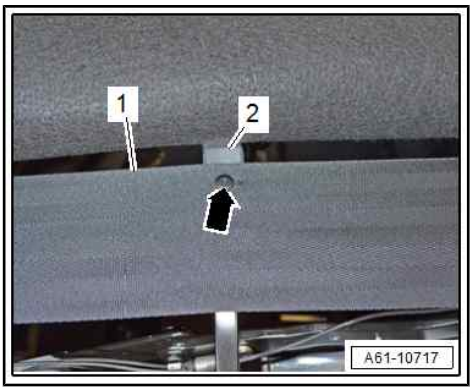


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

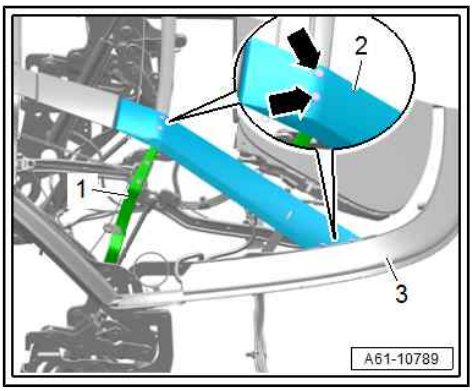
– Unfasten connector -2- from window frame and unplug connector -3-.
– Guide wiring harness out of retaining strap -1-.
– Move convertible roof to “closed” position by hand.
– Fold outside of convertible roof cover as far as possible inwards.



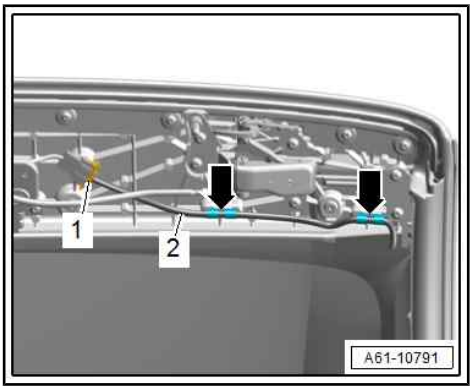
– Drill off pop rivet -arrow-, move retaining strap -1- at cross strut -2- towards outside and knock out rivet stem.



– Drill off pop rivets -arrows-, move retaining strap -2- at cross strut -1- and at tensioner -3- towards outside and knock out rivet stems.
– Guide retaining strap for convertible roof cover out of guide loops.
– Fold up main cross strut.



– Unplug electrical connector -1- and move wiring harness -2- clear -arrows-.

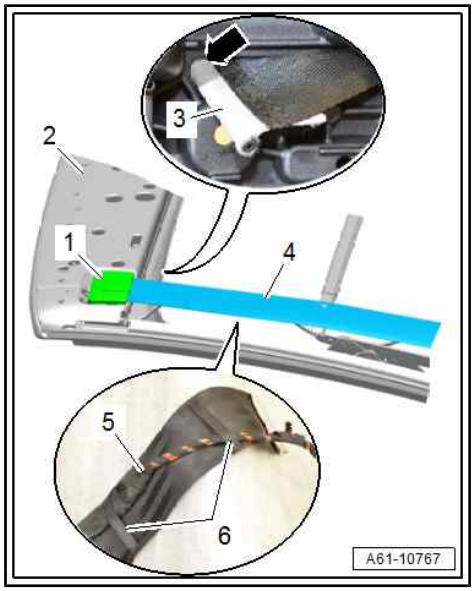


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Fold cover -1- to the side.
– Guide retainer -3- on guide strap -4- out through opening -arrow- in main cross strut -2-.
– Guide electrical wiring harness -5- out through retaining loops -6-.
– Detach guide strap.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



2.6 Removing and installing convertible roof headliner

To avoid interchanging components and to make sure that they are re-installed in the original positions, mark the rubber straps, tensioning cables and electrical wires prior to removal. Make sketches or take photographs if necessary.

- If the convertible roof headliner is replaced with a new part, control cables 6 and 7 ⇒ page 144 must be removed on the new headliner.
- If the convertible roof cover is renewed together with the convertible roof frame, the convertible roof headliner must be removed together with control cables 6 and 7 ⇒ page 144 before it is re-used. In addition, the reversing mechanism ⇒ Item 10 (page 144) must be detached by drilling out the rivets and then re-attached to fit control cable 7.

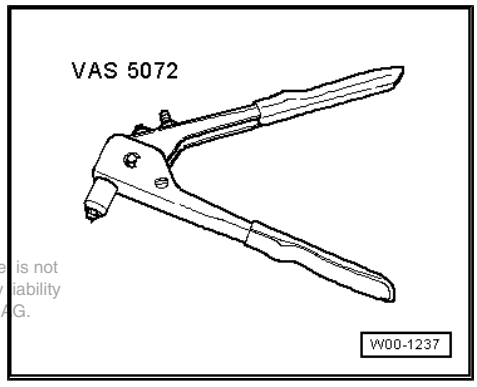
Caution

Noise from moving components.

- *To avoid noise at moving components such as cross struts, vacuum out swarf while drilling off pop rivets.*

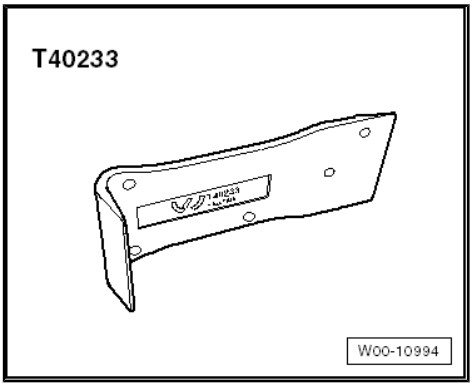
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Removal wedge - T40233-



- Drill
- Drill bit ∅ 4 mm
- Safety goggles

Removing

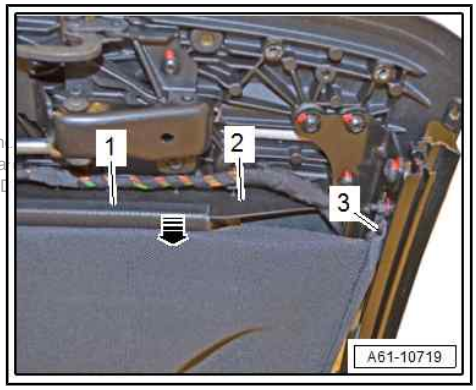
– Remove convertible roof seal (front) ⇒ page 159 .

– Remove trim (front) ⇒ page 161 .

– Remove bolt -3- securing convertible roof headliner.

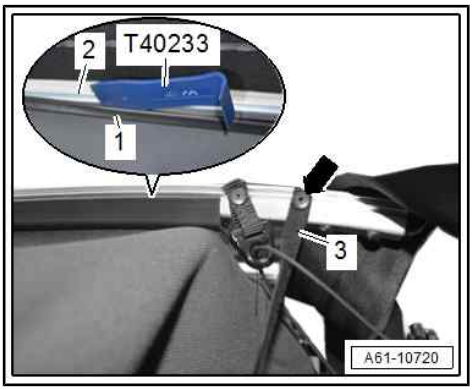
– Detach fastening strip -1- for convertible roof headliner from front cross strut -2- -arrow-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in wh
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUD

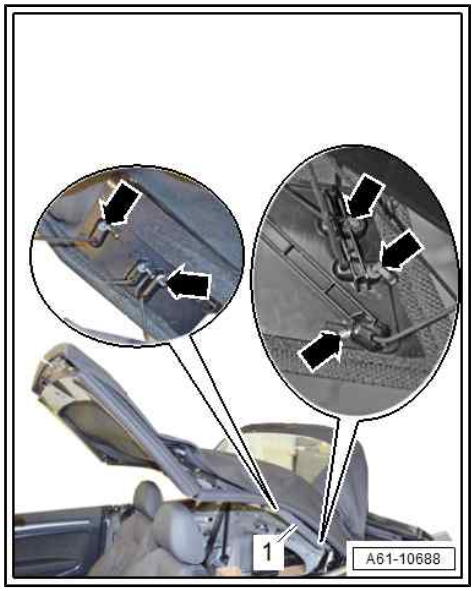


– Prise retaining strip -1- for convertible roof headliner out of mounting -2- at cross struts “1 and 2” using removal wedge - T40233- .

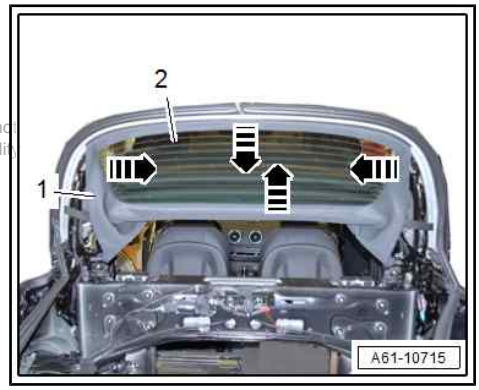
– Drill off pop rivet -arrow-, remove retaining strap -3- and knock out rivet stem.



– Untie knots -arrows- of tensioning and guide cables at cover -1- for convertible roof hinge.

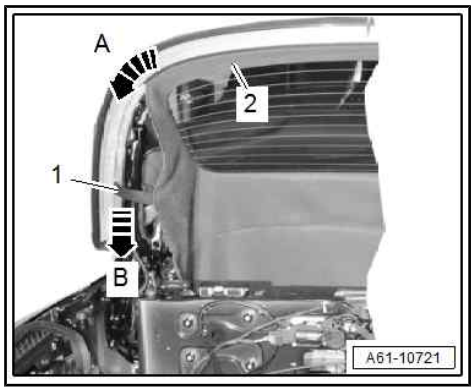


– Pull convertible roof headliner -1- out of surround at rear window -2- -arrows-.

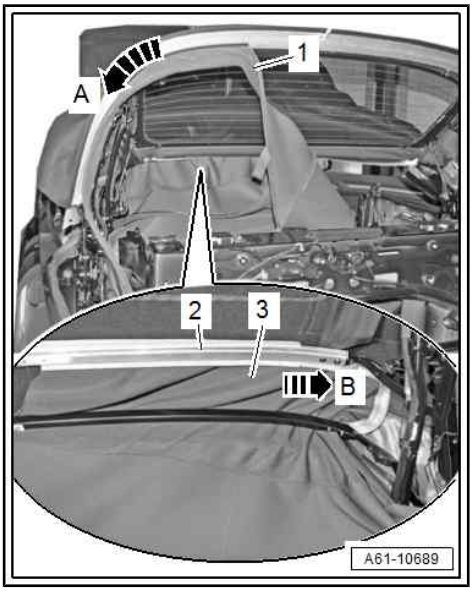


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Slide convertible roof headliner -2- at tensioner as far towards left side -arrow A- and then right side until retaining strap -1- can be removed from guide rail -arrow B-.



– Slide convertible roof headliner -1- towards left side out of tensioner -arrow A- (as seen in direction of travel); at the same time, convertible roof headliner -3- must be pushed out of guide rail -arrow B- at cross strut “3” -item 2-.
– Place convertible roof headliner in vehicle interior.
– Fold convertible roof headliner and take it out towards front.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Renew self-locking bolts.

– Using a thread tap, remove any locking fluid residue from all threaded holes in which self-locking bolts are to be fitted.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - insulation and convertible roof headliner”, page 142

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Attachments

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - convertible roof seals”, page 158

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing convertible roof seals”, page 159

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing convertible roof trim”, page 161

3.1 Exploded view - convertible roof seals

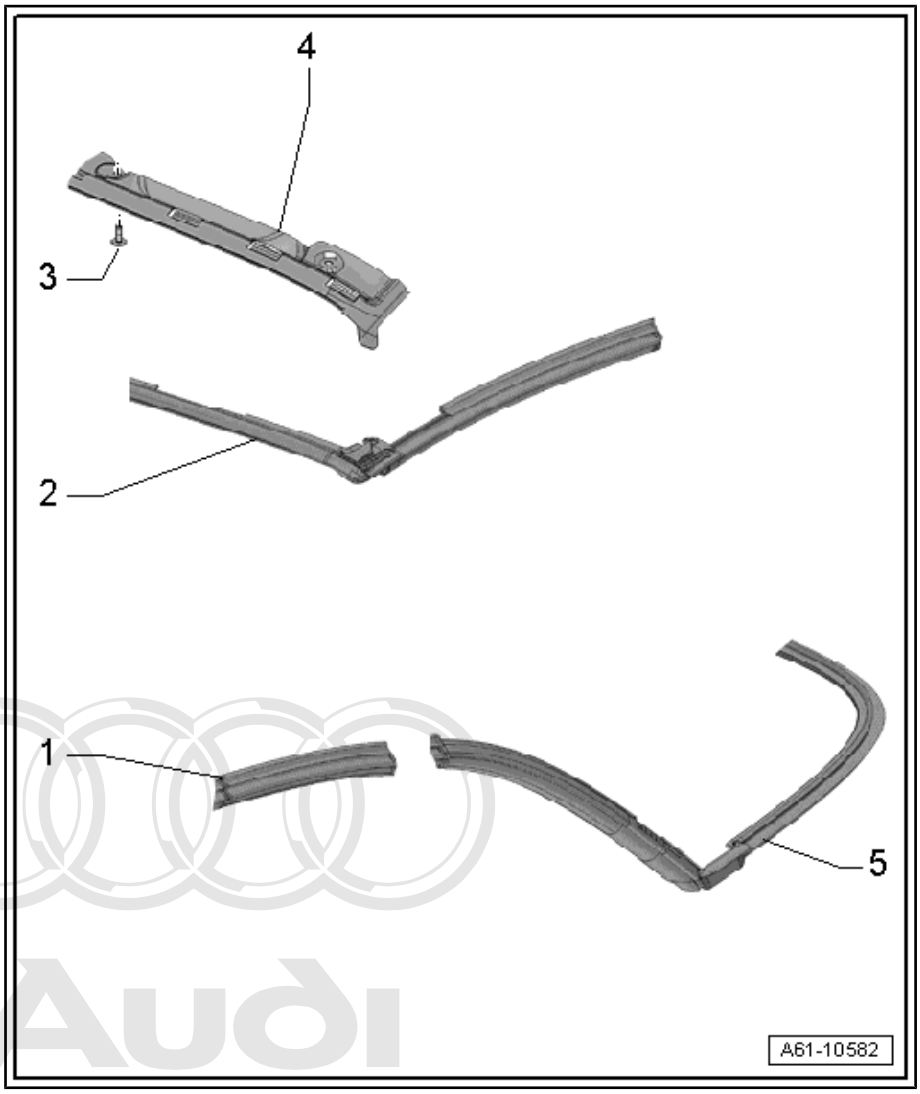
1 - Seal (centre)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 160

2 - Seal (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 159

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 5.5 Nm

4 - Retaining strip
- ❑ For seal (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.2.1 Removing and installing convertible roof seal (front)”, page 159

5 - Seal (rear)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 160



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Removing and installing convertible roof seals

⇒ “3.2.1 Removing and installing convertible roof seal (front)”, page 159

⇒ “3.2.2 Removing and installing convertible roof seal (centre)”, page 160

⇒ “3.2.3 Removing and installing convertible roof seal (rear)”, page 160

3.2.1 Removing and installing convertible roof seal (front)

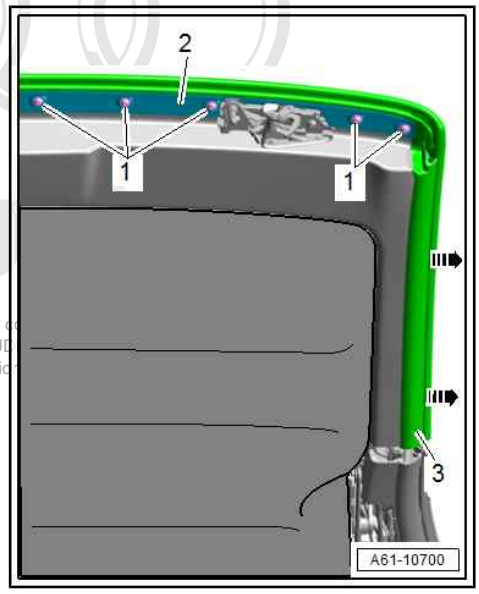
Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .

– Pull convertible roof seal -3- off retaining strip, starting from outer edge -arrows-.

– Remove bolts -1-.

– Detach convertible roof seal -2- together with strip.



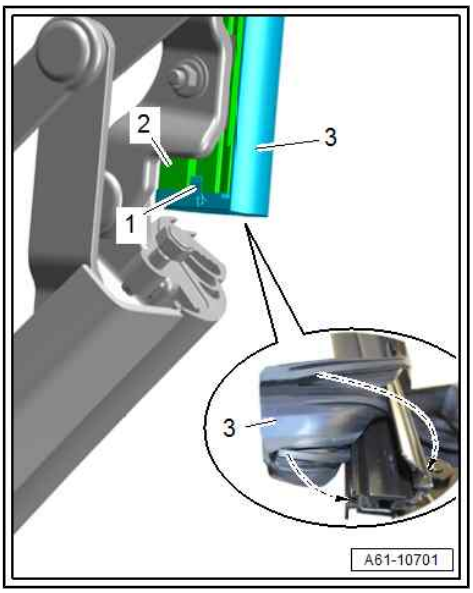
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUD
with respect to the correctness of informatio

– Make sure that guides -arrows- of convertible roof seal -3- are correctly seated in mountings of retaining strip -2-.

– Lug -1- must be pressed as far as possible into guide.



Tightening torques

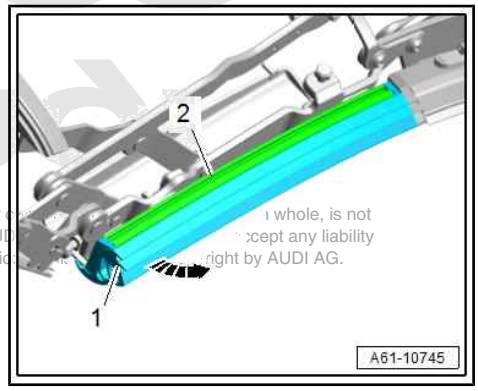
◆ ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - convertible roof seals”, page 158

3.2.2 Removing and installing convertible roof seal (centre)

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .

– Pull convertible roof seal -1- off retaining strip -2-, starting at outer edge -arrow-, and detach.



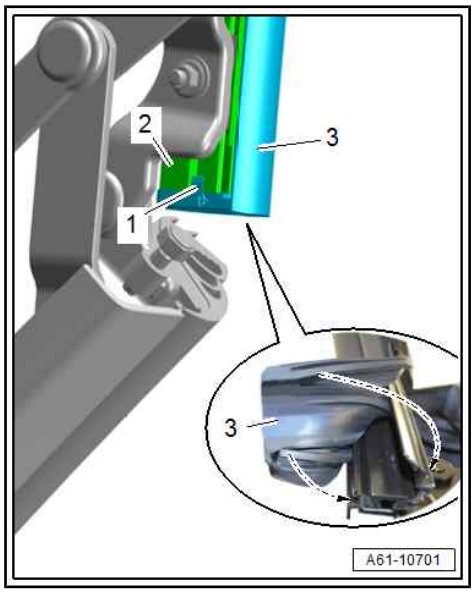
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
whole, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AU
cept any liability
with respect to the correctness of informati
right by AUDI AG.

– Make sure that guides -arrows- of convertible roof seal -3- are correctly seated in mountings of retaining strip -2-.

– Lug -1- must be pressed as far as possible into guide.



3.2.3 Removing and installing convertible roof seal (rear)

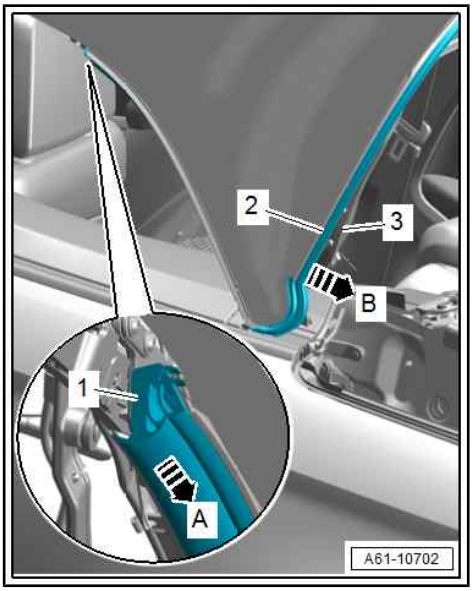
Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .

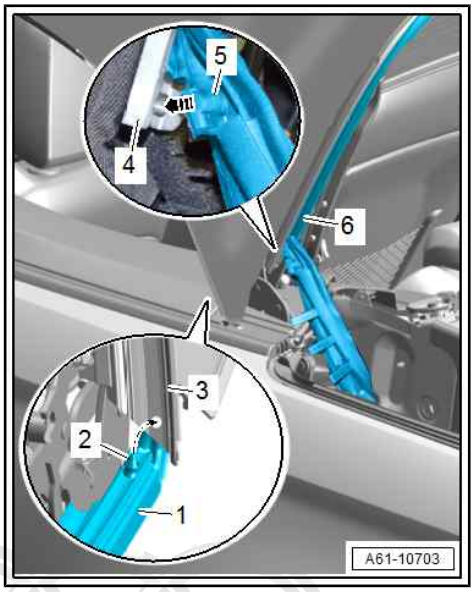
– Pull convertible roof seal -1- off retaining strip, starting at connection point -arrow A-.
– Pull convertible roof seal -2- off retaining strip -3- at tensioner -arrow B-, and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



– Insert guide pin -5- of convertible roof seal into mounting of retaining strip -4- on tensioner and press convertible roof seal -6- evenly into retaining strip.
– Insert guide pin -2- of convertible roof seal into mounting of retaining strip -3- and press convertible roof seal -1- evenly into retaining strip.
• Guides of convertible roof seal must be seated correctly in mountings of retaining strip.



3.3 Removing and installing convertible roof trim

⇒ “3.3.1 Removing and installing trim (front)”, page 161
⇒ “3.3.2 Removing and installing trim (centre)”, page 162

3.3.1 Removing and installing trim (front)

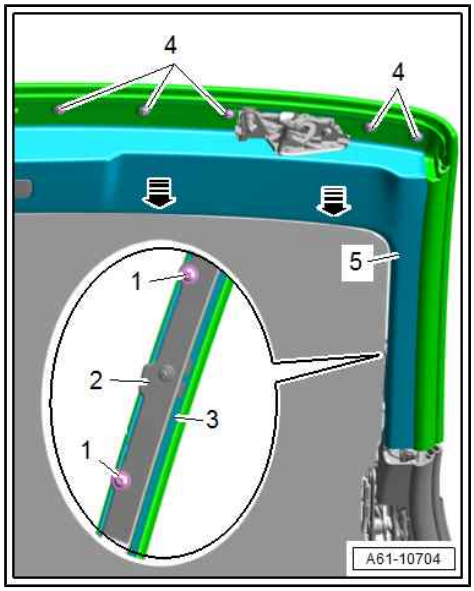
Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -1- and disengage trim -3- from retaining strip -2-.
– Remove bolts -4-.
– Release fasteners -arrows- and detach trim -5-.
– Loosely screw two bolts into retaining strip for convertible roof seal.

• If the strip is unfastened with the convertible roof seal in position, it can become deformed due to its own weight.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

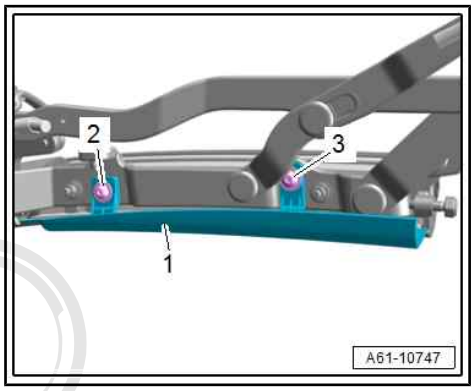
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - insulation and convertible roof headliner”, page 142

3.3.2 Removing and installing trim (centre)

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .
– Remove bolts -2 and 3-.
– Detach trim -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - insulation and convertible roof headliner”, page 142

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Hydraulic system

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - hydraulic system”, page 163

⇒ “4.2 Exploded view - motor and fluid reservoir for hydraulic pump”, page 165

⇒ “4.3 Exploded view - hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof”, page 166

⇒ “4.4 Exploded view - hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid”, page 167

⇒ “4.5 Removing and installing hydraulic pump”, page 167

⇒ “4.6 Removing and installing hydraulic pump motor”, page 168

⇒ “4.7 Removing and installing hydraulic fluid reservoir”, page 170

⇒ “4.8 Checking fluid level in hydraulic system”, page 171

⇒ “4.9 Filling and bleeding the hydraulic system”, page 171

⇒ “4.10 Removing and installing power operated convertible roof valve N272 / N341 / N342 ”, page 174

⇒ “4.11 Removing and installing hydraulic line”, page 174

⇒ “4.12 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinders”, page 177

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.1 Exploded view - hydraulic system

1 - Hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof drive unit (left-side)

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 166

2 - Hydraulic cylinder for tensioner (left-side)

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 166

3 - Hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof drive unit (right-side)

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 166

4 - Hydraulic cylinder for tensioner (right-side)

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 166

5 - Hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid (right-side)

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 166

6 - Fastener

- ❑ For hydraulic lines

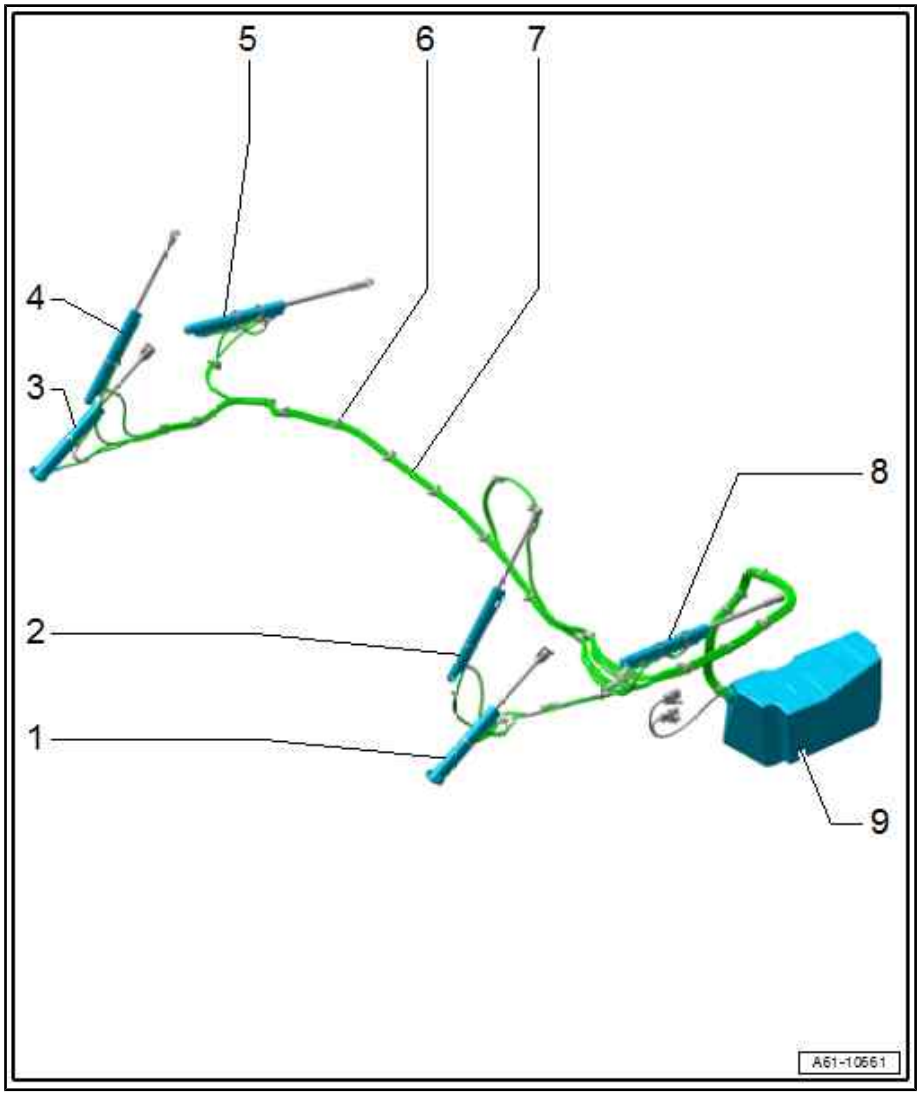
7 - Hydraulic lines

8 - Hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid (left-side)

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 166

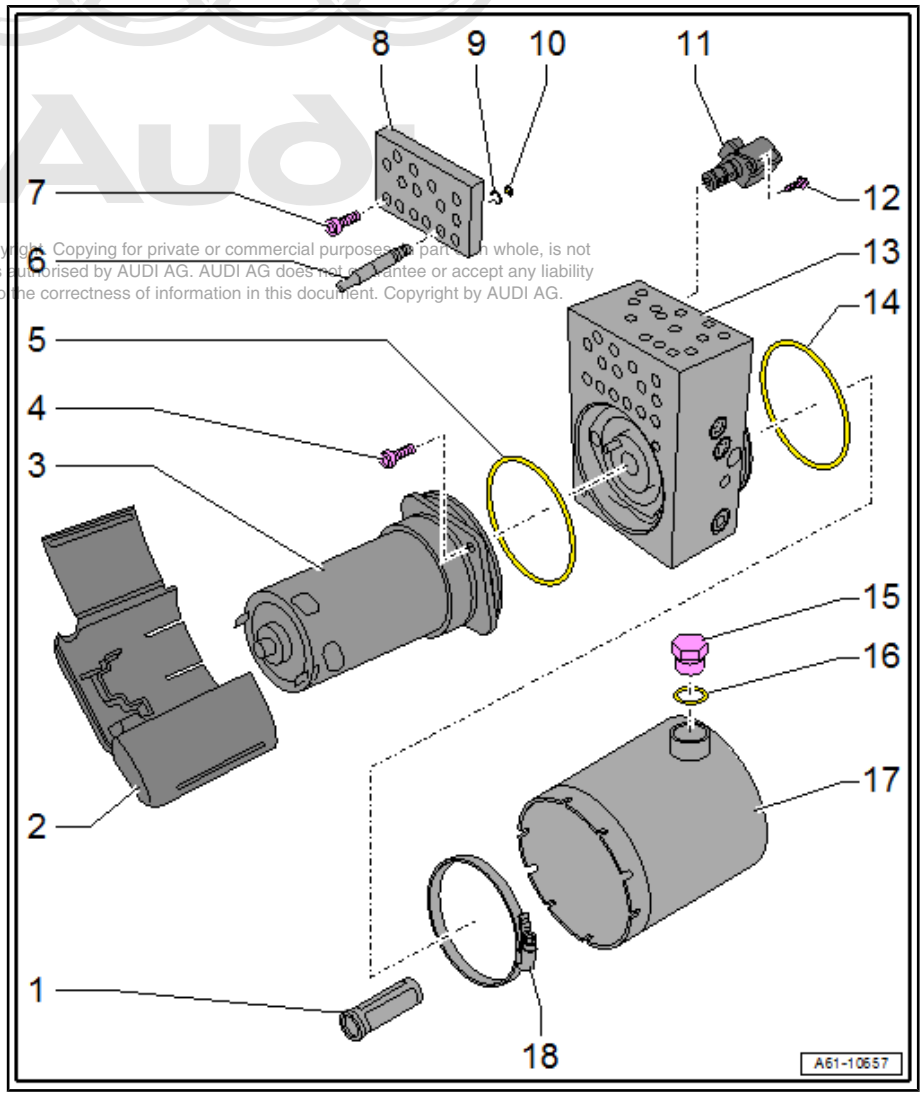
9 - Hydraulic pump

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 165



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.2 Exploded view - motor and fluid reservoir for hydraulic pump



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Strainer

2 - Cover

- ❑ For electrical wiring harness

3 - Motor

- ❑ For hydraulic pump
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 168

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 6 Nm

5 - Seal

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Coat lightly with hydraulic fluid before installing

6 - Hydraulic line

- ❑ Every hydraulic line is marked with a number which must be positioned opposite the number on the valve block.
- ❑ Renew O-ring after removing

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 10 Nm

8 - Retaining plate

- ❑ For hydraulic lines

9 - Clamp

- ❑ For hydraulic line

10 - Seal

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Coat lightly with hydraulic fluid before installing

11 - Power operated convertible roof valve

- ❑ Power operated convertible roof valve 1 - N272- , power operated convertible roof valve 2 - N341- , power operated convertible roof valve 3 - N342-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 174

12 - Securing bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 6 Nm

13 - Valve block

14 - Seal

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Coat lightly with hydraulic fluid before installing

15 - Filler plug

- ❑ 2 Nm

16 - Seal

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Coat lightly with hydraulic fluid before installing

17 - Fluid reservoir

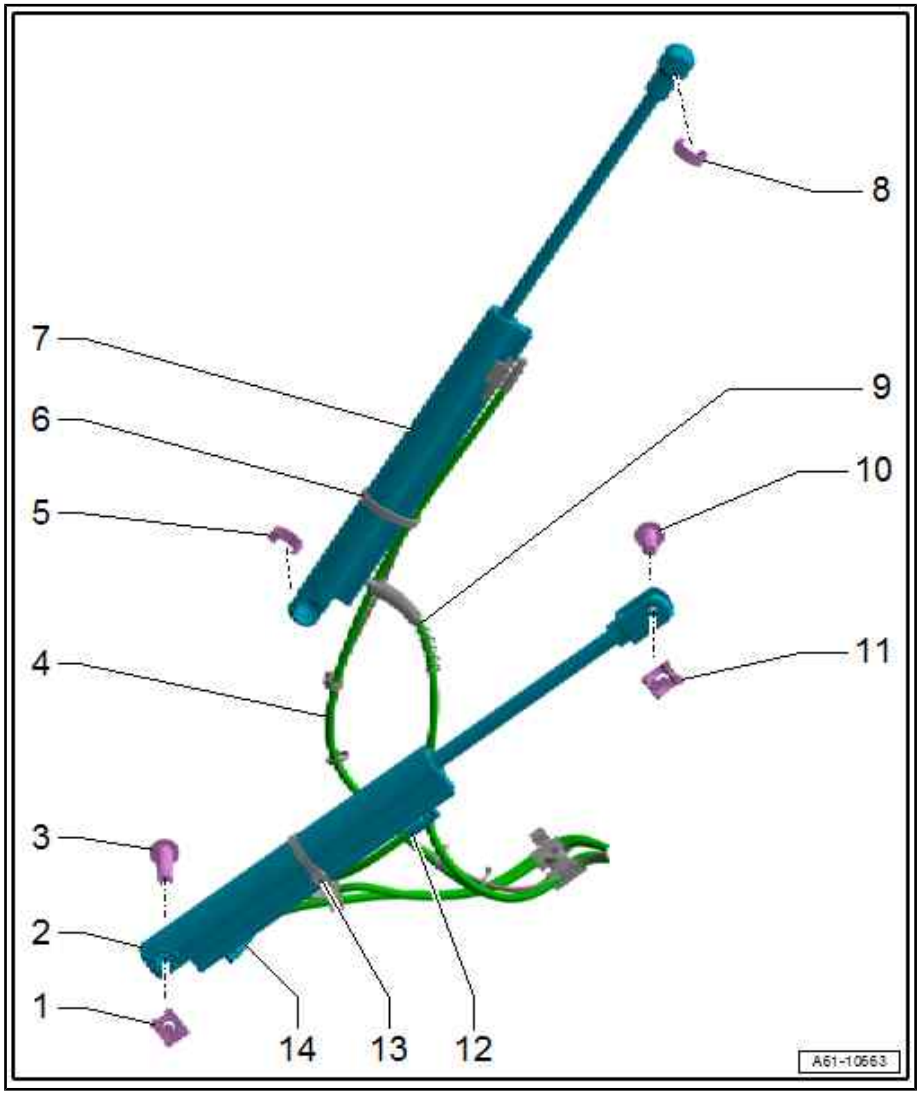
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 170

18 - Screw-type clip

- ❑ 3.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.3 Exploded view - hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof



1 - Retaining clip

2 - Hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof drive unit

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 177

3 - Pin

4 - Hydraulic line

- ❑ On cylinder
- ❑ Renew O-ring after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 174

5 - Retaining clip

6 - Cable tie

7 - Hydraulic cylinder for tensioner

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 178

8 - Retaining clip

9 - Hydraulic line

- ❑ On cylinder
- ❑ Renew O-ring after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 174

10 - Pin

11 - Retaining clip

12 - Hydraulic line

- ❑ On cylinder
- ❑ Renew O-ring after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 174

13 - Cable tie

14 - Hydraulic line

- ❑ On cylinder
- ❑ Renew O-ring after removing

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 174

4.4 Exploded view - hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid

1 - Hydraulic line
- ❑ On cylinder
- ❑ Renew O-ring after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 174

2 - Retaining clip

3 - Cable tie

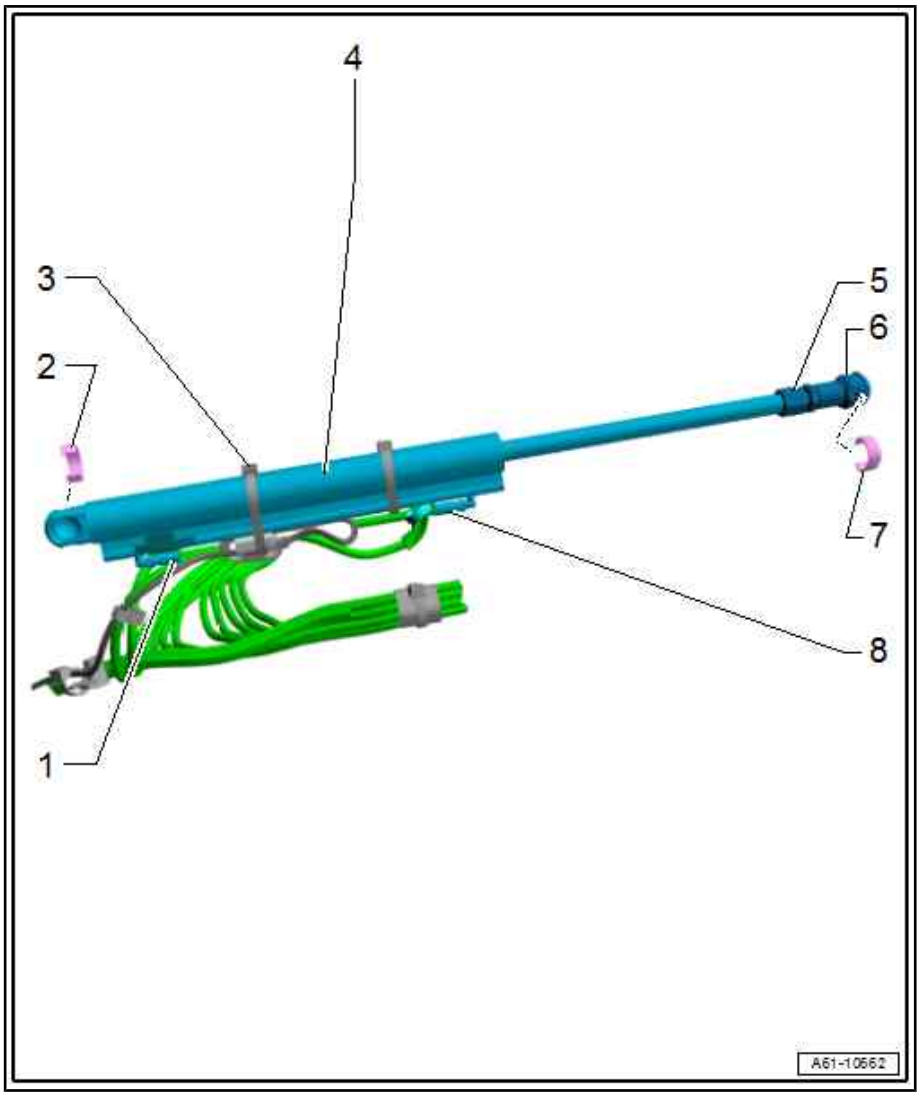
4 - Hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 179

5 - Nut

6 - Ball socket
- ❑ For adjusting

7 - Retaining clip

8 - Hydraulic line
- ❑ On cylinder
- ❑ Renew O-ring after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 174



4.5 Removing and installing hydraulic pump

WARNING

Risk of injury due to pressurised hydraulic system.

- *The hydraulic pressure in the system must be released before working on the convertible roof system.*

Removing

– Close convertible roof completely.

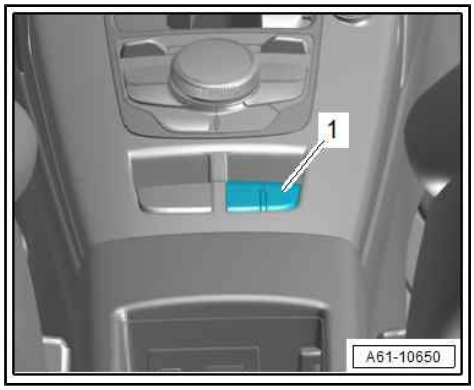
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched off, press and hold convertible roof actuation button - E137- -item 1- for approx. 5 seconds.

• This releases the pressure in the hydraulic system.

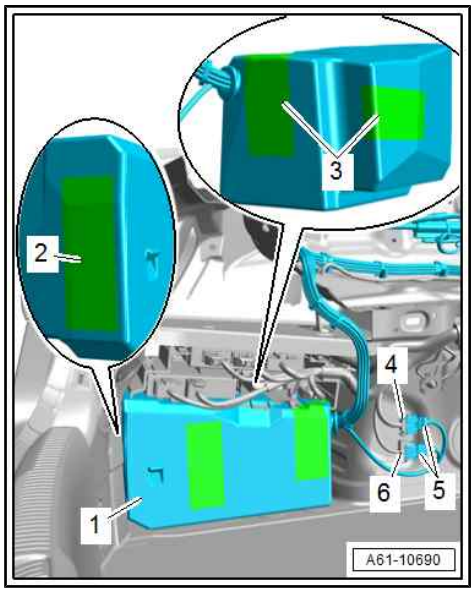
– Observe the rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 3 .

– Remove luggage compartment side trim (left-side) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim .



– Unplug electrical connectors -4, 6- and move connector -5- clear.

– Take hydraulic pump -1- out of side compartment and remove adhesive strips -2 and 3-.



– Detach noise insulation panel (top section) -2-.

– Take hydraulic pump -3- out of noise insulation (bottom section) -1-.

If reservoir with hydraulic pump is renewed:

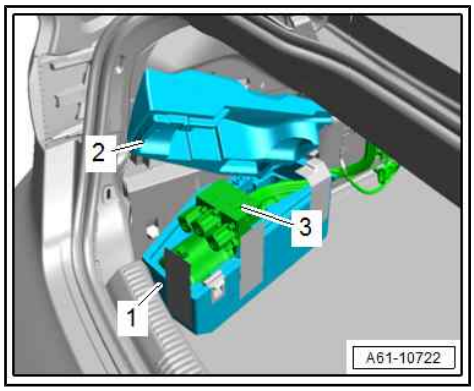
♦ Remove hydraulic line ⇒ page 175 .

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Install hydraulic line ⇒ page 175 .

– Fill and bleed hydraulic system ⇒ page 171 .



4.6 Removing and installing hydraulic pump motor

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 165 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Risk of injury due to pressurised hydraulic system.

♦ *The hydraulic pressure in the system must be released before working on the convertible roof system.*

Removing

– Remove hydraulic pump ⇒ page 167 .

Note

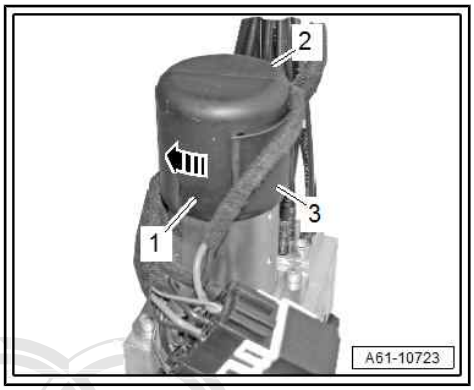
Before removing, put cleaning cloth or container underneath pump to catch any escaping hydraulic fluid.

– Unscrew filler plug once to equalise pressure and screw in again.

– Place pump with motor facing upwards in a vertical position for several minutes to let hydraulic fluid flow into reservoir.

– Open catch -3- and swivel lid -1- to the side -arrow-.

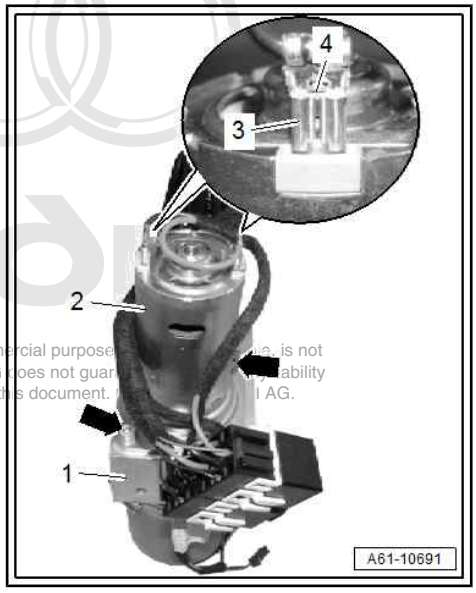
– Remove cover -2- from motor.



– Pull catch -4- and unplug electrical connector -3-.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Pull motor -2- off valve block -1- by moving it back and forth slightly.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Slide new seal -2- onto motor.

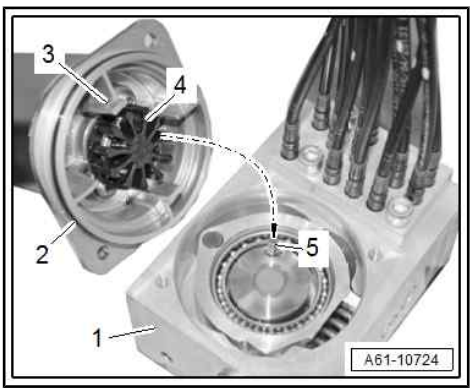
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Position motor -3- on valve block -1-.

• Shaft -5- must engage in recess in actuator -4-.

– Fit motor onto valve block, moving it back and forth slightly.

– Check hydraulic fluid level and top up if necessary ⇒ page 171 .



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “4.2 Exploded view - motor and fluid reservoir for hydraulic pump”, page 165

4.7 Removing and installing hydraulic fluid reservoir

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 165 .

Removing

– Remove hydraulic pump ⇒ page 167 .

Note

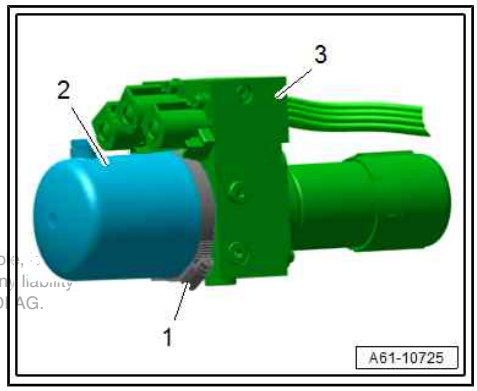
Before removing, put cleaning cloth or container underneath pump to catch any escaping hydraulic fluid.

– Empty reservoir.

– Position pump with reservoir upwards in vertical position.

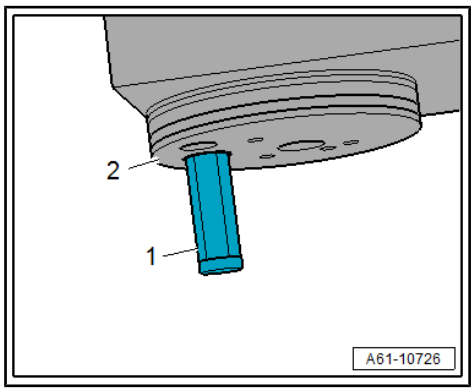
– Unfasten hose clip -1-.

– Pull reservoir -2- off valve block -3- by moving it back and forth slightly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Take care not to damage strainer -1- in valve block -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Secure all hose connections with standard hose clips; see ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Note installation position of fluid reservoir:

- If the reservoir is to be renewed, the filler plug must be exactly vertically and centrally aligned with valve block during the installation.
- Only then are the »MIN« and »MAX« markings in the correct positions.

– Fit reservoir onto valve block, moving it back and forth slightly.

– Install hydraulic pump ⇒ page 167 .

– Check hydraulic fluid level and top up if necessary ⇒ page 171 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “4.2 Exploded view - motor and fluid reservoir for hydraulic pump”, page 165

4.8 Checking fluid level in hydraulic system

Caution

Risk of irreparable damage.

- *Never fill the hydraulic fluid reservoir beyond the "MAX" mark, as the pressure in the system could otherwise become so great that damage might occur.*

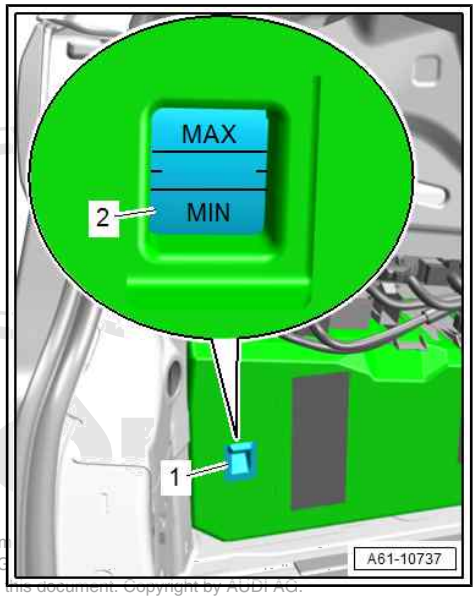
Procedure

– Remove luggage compartment side trim (left-side) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim .

– Open cover -1-.

– Check fluid level in reservoir -2- with convertible roof closed.

• Fluid level must be between "MIN" and "MAX" markings.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.9 Filling and bleeding the hydraulic system

Note

- *The electro-hydraulic convertible roof is actuated by a sealed hydraulic system. The system will normally only need filling if there has been a loss of fluid (accident, leak etc.).*
- *Before opening the hydraulic system, open filler plug on fluid reservoir to equalise the pressure and close it again with specified torque.*
- *Due to the stroke and displacement effect of the pistons in the hydraulic cylinders, the hydraulic system must be filled with the convertible roof closed.*

Caution

Risk of irreparable damage.

- *Never fill the hydraulic fluid reservoir beyond the "MAX" mark, as the pressure in the system could otherwise become so great that damage might occur.*

Filling

WARNING

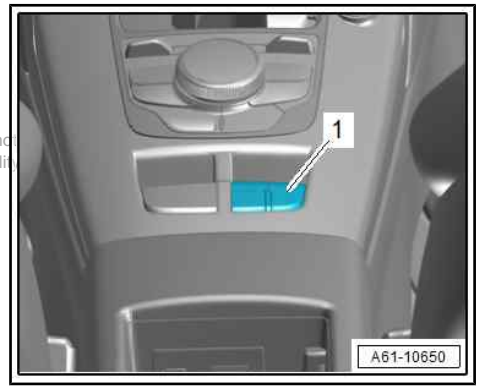
Risk of injury due to pressurised hydraulic system.

- *The hydraulic pressure in the system must be released before working on the convertible roof system.*

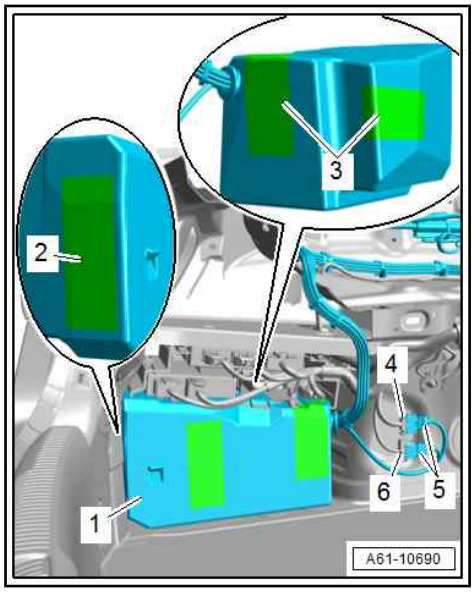
– With ignition switched off, press and hold convertible roof actuation button - E137- -item 1- for approx. 5 seconds.

• This releases the pressure in the hydraulic system.

– Remove luggage compartment side trim (left-side) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim .

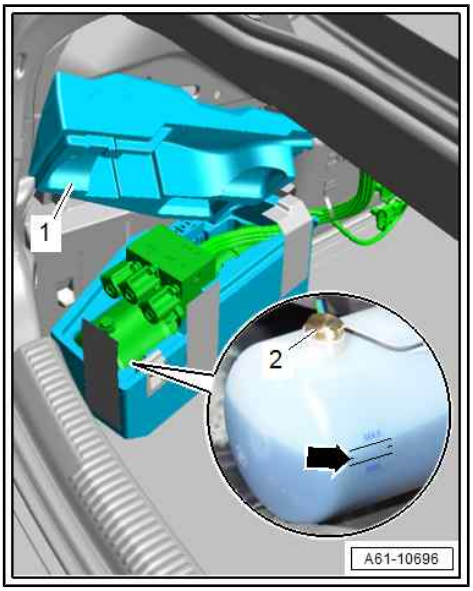


– Take hydraulic pump -1- out of side compartment and remove adhesive strips -2 and 3-.



Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Detach noise insulation panel (top section) -1-.
– Unscrew plug -2-.
– Fill with hydraulic fluid as far as centre line -arrow-. For hydraulic fluid refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .



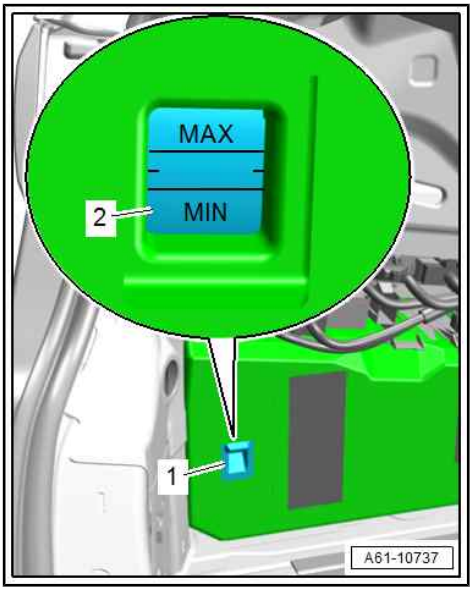
Bleeding

Note

The hydraulic system is self-bleeding. Opening and closing the convertible roof several times bleeds the system.

– Insert plug with old seal and tighten to specified torque.
– Start engine.
– Open and close convertible roof five times via electro-hydraulic actuator mechanism.
• Convertible roof must move evenly and smoothly.

– Check fluid level in reservoir -2- with convertible roof closed.
• Fluid level must be between “MIN” and “MAX” markings.

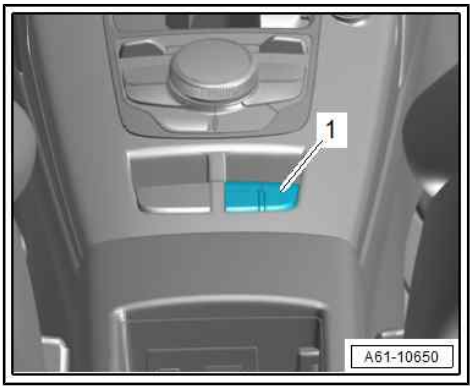


Note

The convertible roof hydraulic system must be bled by operating roof several times every time hydraulic fluid is topped up.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release hydraulic pressure; to do so, press and hold convertible roof actuation button - E137- -item 1- for approx. 5 seconds with ignition switched off.
• This releases the pressure in the hydraulic system.
– Remove plug and fit it again with new seal.



Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “4.2 Exploded view - motor and fluid reservoir for hydraulic pump”, page 165

4.10 Removing and installing power operated convertible roof valve -N272- / -N341- / -N342-

WARNING

Risk of injury due to pressurised hydraulic system.

- *The hydraulic pressure in the system must be released before working on the convertible roof system.*

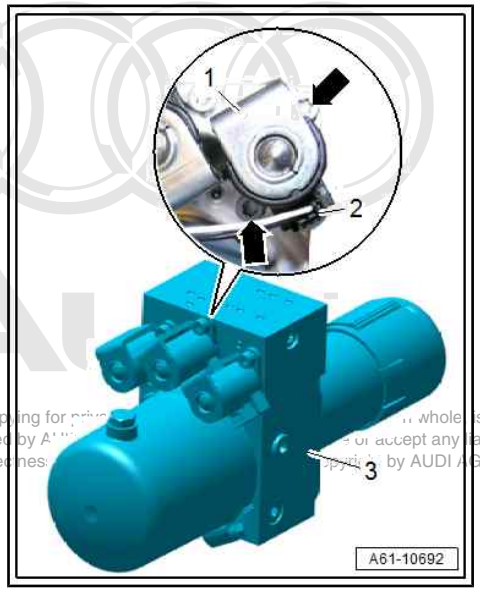
Removing

– Remove hydraulic pump ⇒ page 167 .

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Pull valve -1- out of valve block -3- by rotating it slightly.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Check that hole for valve is clean; clean it if necessary.

– Press replacement valve into hole and tighten bolts to torque.

– Install hydraulic pump ⇒ page 167 .

– Check hydraulic fluid level and top up if necessary ⇒ page 171 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private ... whole is not permitted unless authorised by A... or accept any liability with respect to the correctness ... by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “4.2 Exploded view - motor and fluid reservoir for hydraulic pump”, page 165

4.11 Removing and installing hydraulic line

⇒ “4.11.1 Removing and installing hydraulic line at cylinder”, page 174

⇒ “4.11.2 Removing and installing hydraulic line at valve block”, page 175

4.11.1 Removing and installing hydraulic line at cylinder

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 163 .

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury due to pressurised hydraulic system.

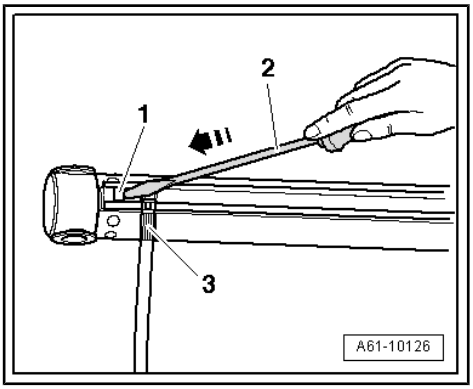
- *The hydraulic pressure in the system must be released before working on the convertible roof system.*

– Observe the rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 3 .

– Remove hydraulic cylinder if it is leaking ⇒ page 177 , ⇒ page 178 , ⇒ page 179 .

– Using a small screwdriver -2-, slide locking spring -1- in direction of -arrow- at connection piece for hydraulic line -3- and detach.

– Pull connection piece for hydraulic line out of cylinder.



Caution

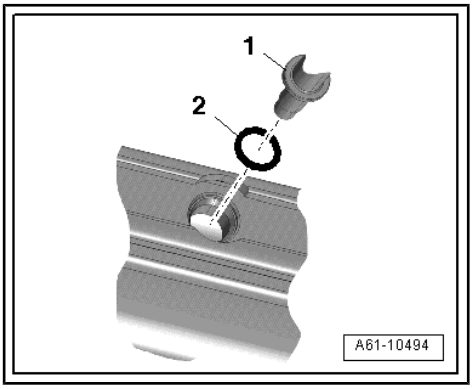
Risk of damage and leaks at hydraulic cylinder.

- *Make sure that the hole for the hydraulic line connection piece is not damaged.*
- *Damage to the hole could cause leaks.*

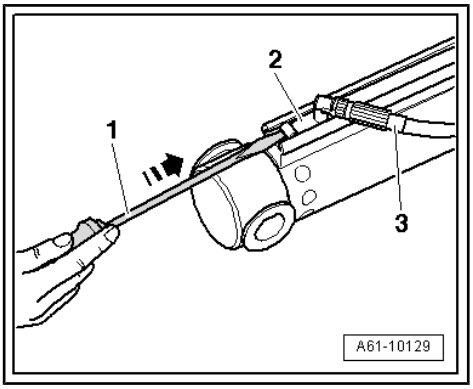
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Fit new O-ring -2- onto connection piece -1- for hydraulic line.



– Insert connection piece -3- vertically in hydraulic cylinder (there should be no noticeable resistance).



Caution

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Risk of damage and leaks at hydraulic cylinder.

- *Pushing in the hydraulic line with force will damage the O-ring.*

– Secure hydraulic line; to do so, use a small screwdriver -1- to slide locking spring -2- as far as possible in direction of -arrow-.

– Check hydraulic fluid level and top up if necessary ⇒ page 171 .

4.11.2 Removing and installing hydraulic line at valve block

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 165 .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to pressurised hydraulic system.

- *The hydraulic pressure in the system must be released before working on the convertible roof system.*

Removing

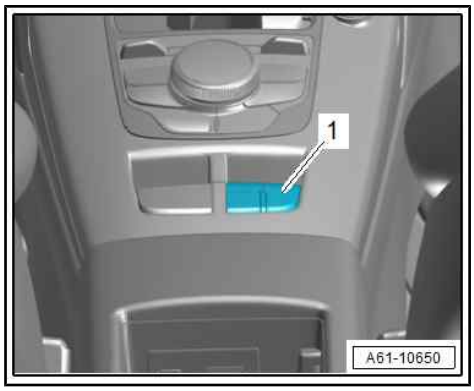
– Close convertible roof completely.

– With ignition switched off, press and hold convertible roof actuation button - E137- -item 1- for approx. 5 seconds.

• This releases the pressure in the hydraulic system.

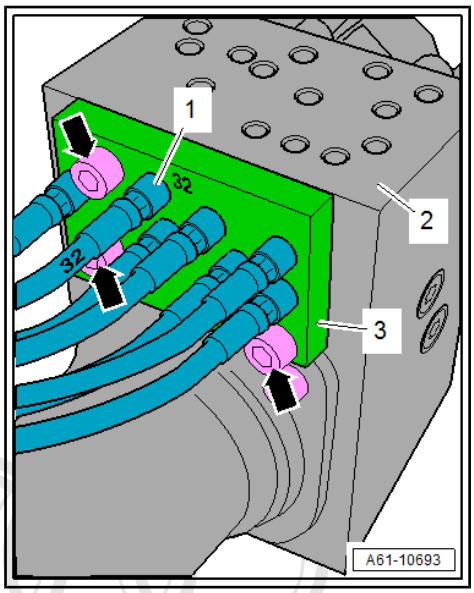
– Observe the rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 3 .

– Remove hydraulic pump ⇒ page 167 .



– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and press retaining plate -3- away from valve block -2-.

– Pull hydraulic lines -1- out of valve block.



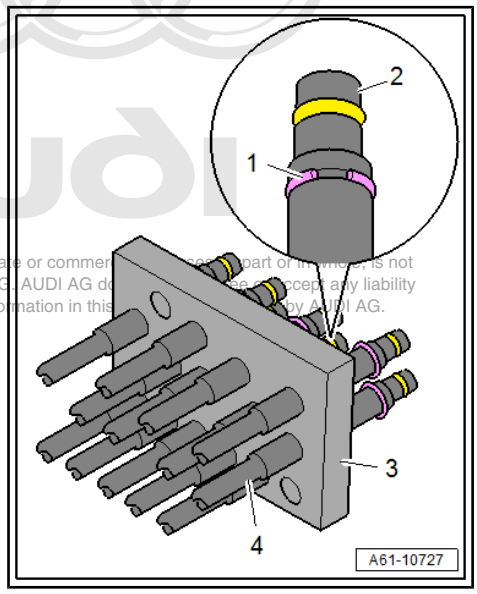
Caution

Risk of damage and leaks at valve block.

- *Make sure that the hole for the hydraulic line connection piece is not damaged.*
- *Damage to the hole could cause leaks.*

– Press retaining clip -1- off connection piece -2- of hydraulic line.

– Pull hydraulic line -4- out of retaining plate -3-.



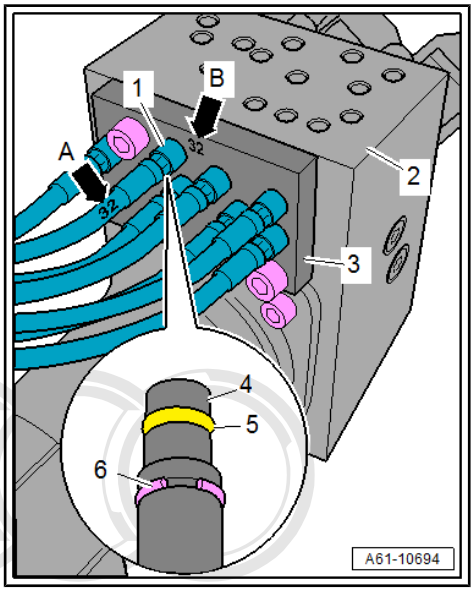
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Every hydraulic line is marked with a number -arrow A-, which must be positioned opposite the number -arrow B- on the valve block.



Caution

Risk of damage and leaks at valve block.

- ***Pushing in the hydraulic line with force will damage the O-ring.***

– Push hydraulic line -1- through mounting plate -3-.

– Fit new retaining clip -6- and new O-ring -5- onto connection piece -4- for hydraulic line.

– Insert connection piece for hydraulic line vertically in valve block -2- (there should be no noticeable resistance).

– Tighten bolts to specified torque.

– Install hydraulic pump ⇒ page 167 .

– Check hydraulic fluid level and top up if necessary ⇒ page 171 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “4.2 Exploded view - motor and fluid reservoir for hydraulic pump”, page 165

4.12 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinders

⇒ “4.12.1 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof drive unit”, page 177

⇒ “4.12.2 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinder for tensioner”, page 178

⇒ “4.12.3 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid”, page 179

4.12.1 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof drive unit

Removing

– Remove convertible roof ⇒ page 129 .

– Move convertible roof to “closed” position.

– Release retaining clip -4- and pull out retaining pin -3-.
– Detach hydraulic cylinder -2- from main mounting -1-.

If hydraulic cylinder is to be renewed:

♦ Remove hydraulic line ⇒ page 174 .

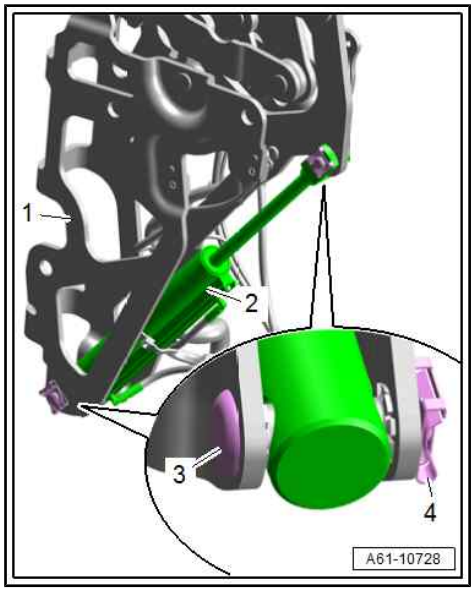
If hydraulic line is to be renewed:

♦ Remove hydraulic line at hydraulic cylinder ⇒ page 174 .
♦ Remove hydraulic line at valve block ⇒ page 175 .

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Fill and bleed hydraulic system ⇒ page 171 .



4.12.2 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinder for tensioner

WARNING

Risk of injury due to pressurised hydraulic system.

♦ *The hydraulic pressure in the system must be released before working on the convertible roof system.*

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .
– Lift retaining clip -1- slightly using a small screwdriver, and pull hydraulic cylinder -3- off ball stud -2-.
– Detach hydraulic cylinder.

If hydraulic cylinder is to be renewed:

♦ Remove hydraulic line ⇒ page 174 .
♦ Hydraulic cylinder (left-side): Move wiring harness clear and remove tensioning strut bottom switch - F517- ⇒ page 189 .

If hydraulic line is to be renewed:

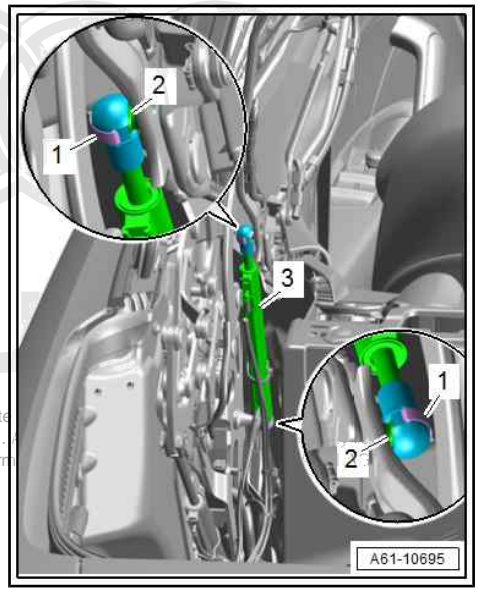
♦ Remove hydraulic line at hydraulic cylinder ⇒ page 174 .
♦ Remove hydraulic line at valve block ⇒ page 175 .

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
with respect to the correctness of inform

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press hydraulic cylinder onto ball stud and engage.
– Fill and bleed hydraulic system ⇒ page 171 .



4.12.3 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid

WARNING

Risk of injury due to pressurised hydraulic system.

- *The hydraulic pressure in the system must be released before working on the convertible roof system.*

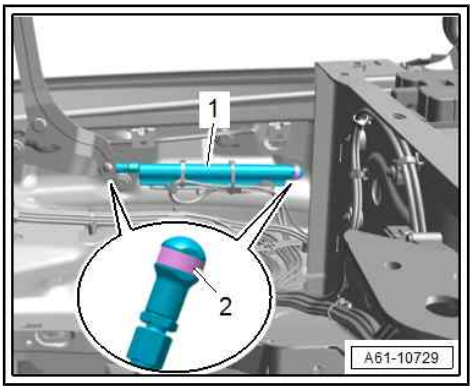
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .

– Lift retaining clip -2- slightly using a small screwdriver, and pull hydraulic cylinder -1- off ball stud.

– Detach hydraulic cylinder.



If hydraulic cylinder is to be renewed:

- Remove hydraulic line ⇒ page 174 .
- Hydraulic cylinder (left-side): Move wiring harness clear and remove convertible roof box lid open switch - F407- ⇒ page 189 .

If hydraulic line is to be renewed:

- Remove hydraulic line at hydraulic cylinder ⇒ page 174 .
- Remove hydraulic line at valve block ⇒ page 175 .

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Fill and bleed hydraulic system ⇒ page 171 .

5 Electrical and electronic components

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - convertible roof actuation button”, page 180

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing convertible roof actuation control unit J256 ”, page 183

⇒ “5.3 Removing and installing switches”, page 184

⇒ “5.4 Removing and installing permanent magnets”, page 191

5.1 Exploded view - convertible roof actuation button

⇒ “5.1.1 Exploded view - convertible roof actuation button, motors”, page 180

⇒ “5.1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof actuation button, convertible roof”, page 182

⇒ “5.1.3 Exploded view - convertible roof actuation button, hydraulic system”, page 183

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.1.1 Exploded view - convertible roof actuation button, motors

1 - Convertible roof lock motor - V223-

2 - Convertible roof latch open switch - F294-

- Integrated in convertible roof lock motor; cannot be renewed separately
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 136

3 - Locking element

- For convertible roof
- With permanent magnet

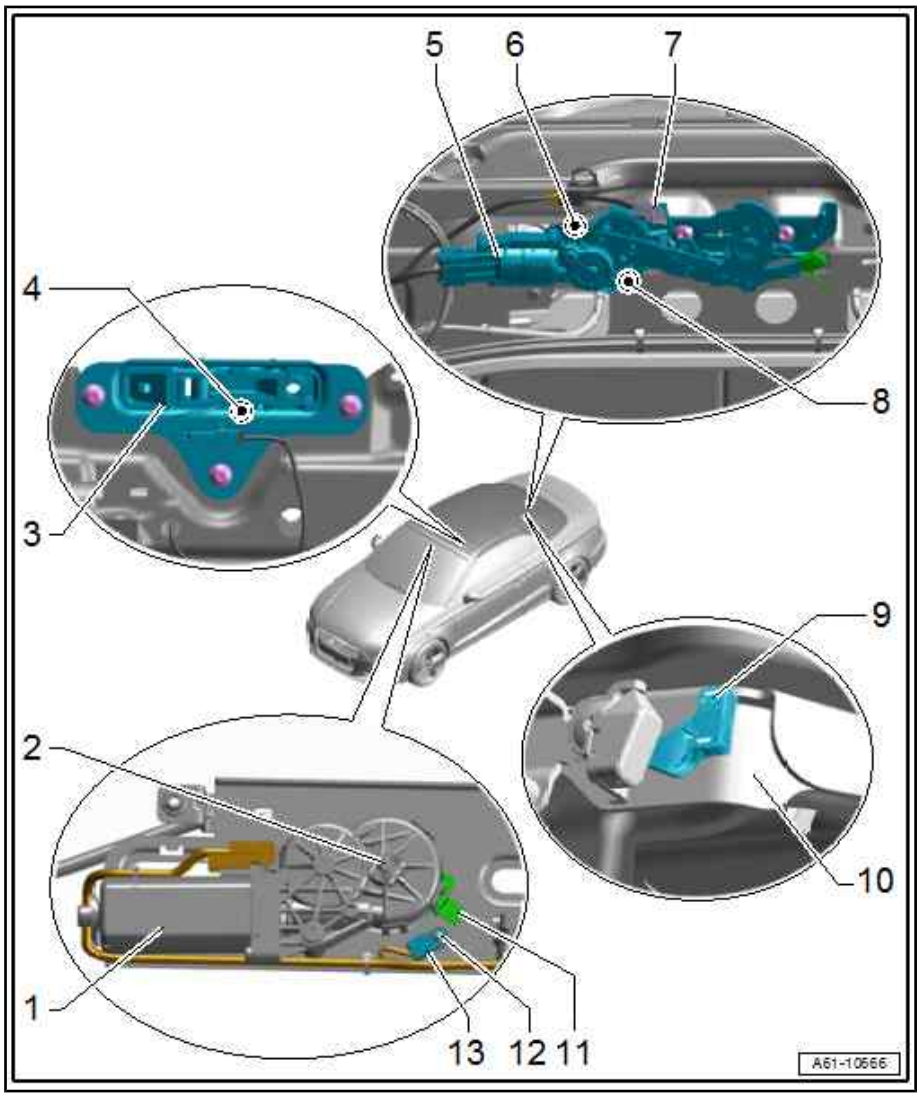
4 - Switch for convertible roof closed

- Left switch for convertible roof closed - F411- , right switch for convertible roof closed - F412-
- Integrated in locking element; cannot be renewed separately
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 187

5 - Convertible roof box lid lock motor - V222-

6 - Convertible roof box lid released switch - F293-

- Integrated in convertible roof box lid lock motor; cannot be renewed separately
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 70



7 - Convertible roof box lid closed switch - F519-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 189

8 - Convertible roof box lid locked switch - F404-

- ❑ Integrated in convertible roof box lid lock motor; cannot be renewed separately
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70

9 - Permanent magnet

- ❑ For convertible roof box lid closed switch - F519-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 193

10 - Bracket

- ❑ For striker plate

11 - Metal bracket

- ❑ For convertible roof latch closed switch - F295-

12 - Bolt

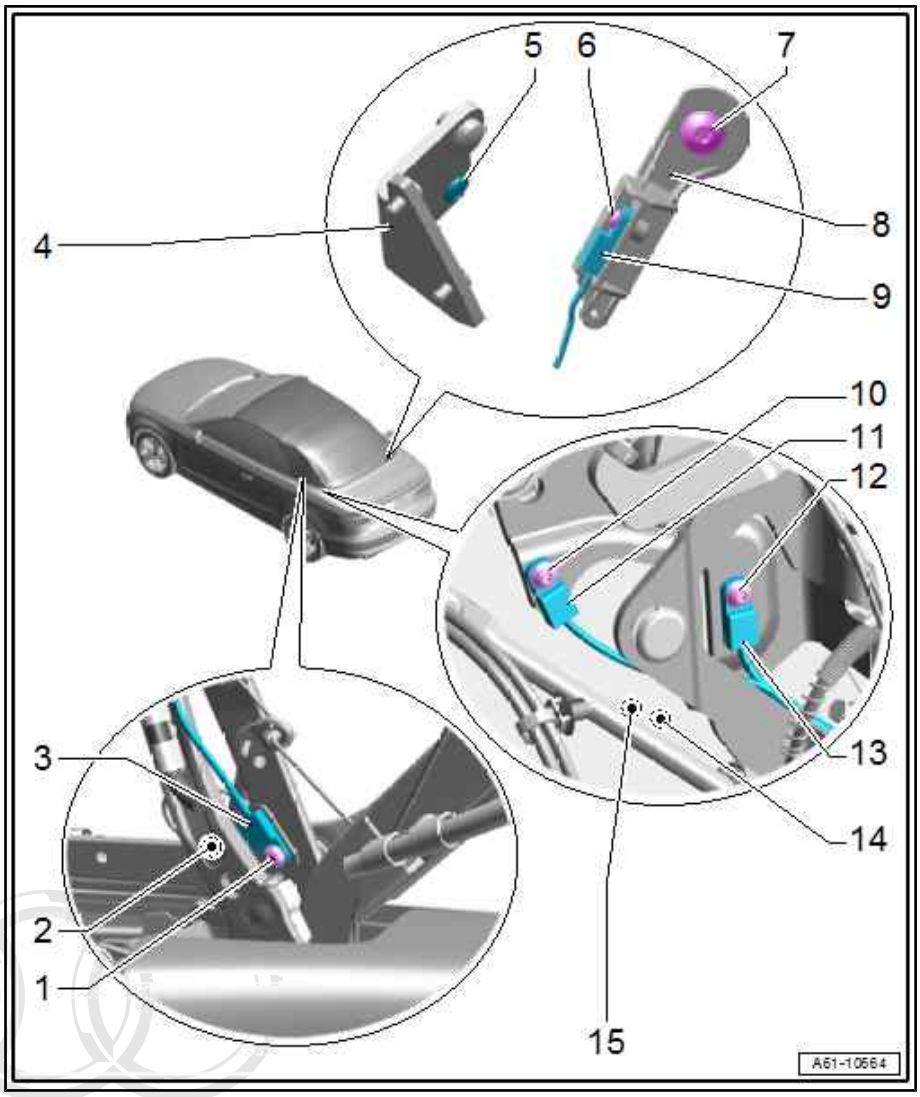
- ❑ 1 Nm

13 - Convertible roof latch closed switch - F295-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 187

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof actuation button, convertible roof



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

2 - Permanent magnet

- ❑ For tensioning strut top switch - F408-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 193

3 - Tensioning strut top switch - F408-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 187

4 - Magnetic bracket for convertible roof compartment

- ❑ With integrated permanent magnet for convertible roof box switch, bottom - F520-

5 - Permanent magnet

- ❑ For convertible roof box switch, bottom - F520-
- ❑ Permanent magnet is integrated in magnetic bracket and cannot be renewed separately. Removing and installing magnetic bracket ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Convertible roof compartment; Exploded view - convertible roof compartment

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm

8 - Mounting

- ❑ For convertible roof box switch, bottom - F520-

9 - Convertible roof box switch, bottom - F520-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 190

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Unauthorized copying may result in severe liability claims. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

11 - Convertible roof front switch - F202-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 184

12 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

13 - Convertible roof stowed switch - F171-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 185

14 - Permanent magnet

- ❑ For convertible roof stowed switch - F171-

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 191

15 - Permanent magnet

❑ For convertible roof front switch - F202-

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 192

5.1.3 Exploded view - convertible roof actuation button, hydraulic system

1 - Retaining frame

❑ For convertible roof actuation control unit - J256-

2 - Convertible roof actuation control unit - J256-

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 183

3 - Tensioning strut bottom switch - F517-

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 188

4 - Convertible roof box lid open switch - F407-

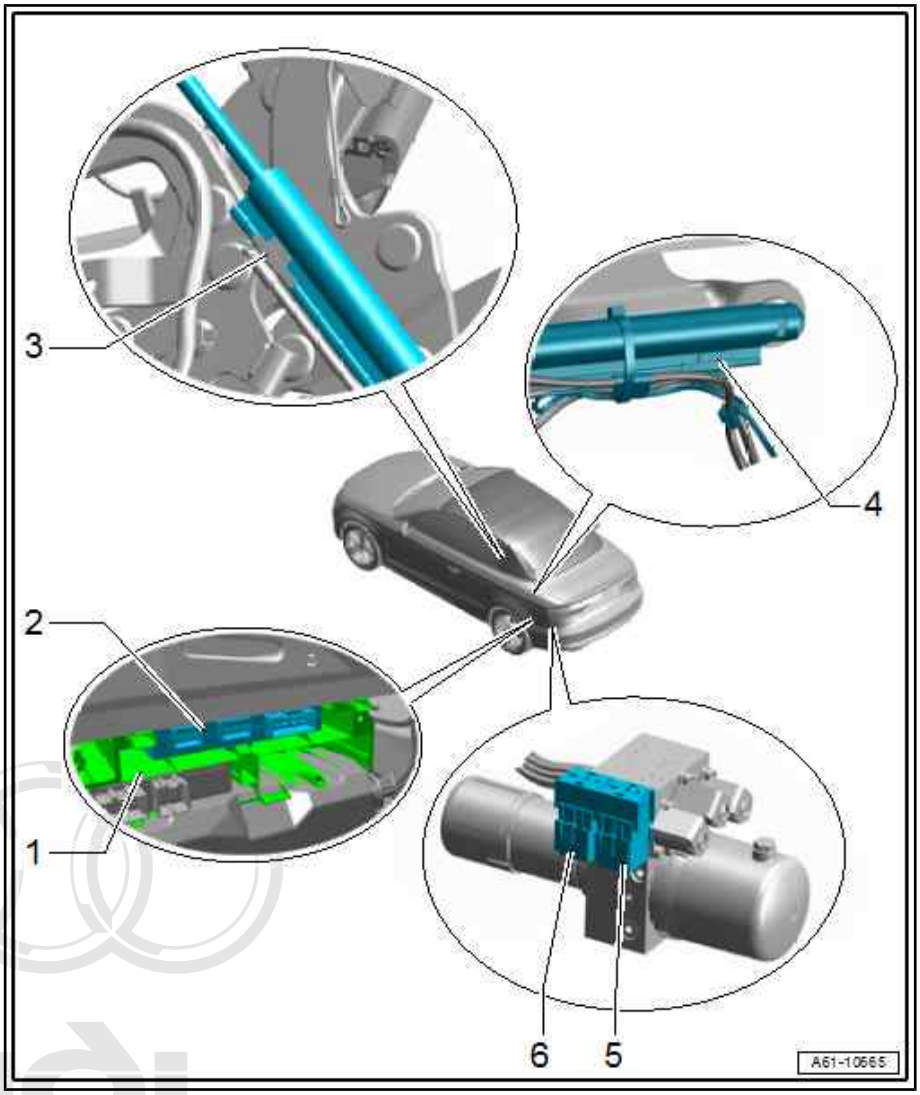
❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 189

5 - Convertible roof actuation hydraulic pump relay - J321-

❑ ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

6 - Hydraulic pump relay 2 for convertible roof - J588-

❑ ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations



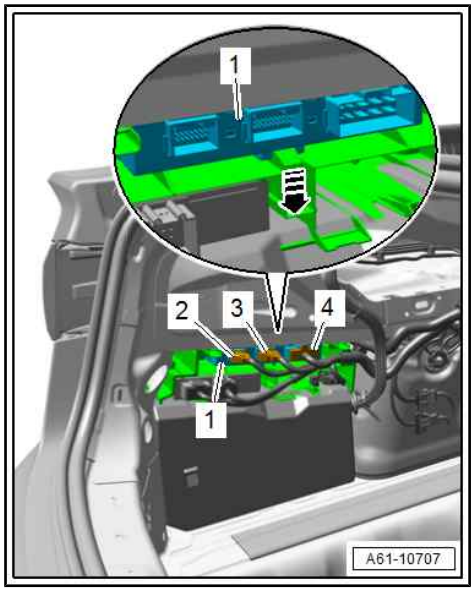
5.2 Removing and installing convertible roof actuation control unit - J256-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim (left-side) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim .

– Release fastener -arrow- and pull convertible roof actuation control unit - J256- -item 1- out slightly.
– Unplug electrical connectors -2, 3, 4-.
– Pull convertible roof actuation control unit - J256- out of mounting.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- If renewing the convertible roof actuation control unit - J256- , select the function “Replace control unit” for the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, Diagnosis.

5.3 Removing and installing switches

⇒ “5.3.1 Removing and installing convertible roof front switch F202 ”, page 184

⇒ “5.3.2 Removing and installing convertible roof stowed switch F171 ”, page 185

⇒ “5.3.3 Removing and installing convertible roof latch open switch F294 ”, page 187

⇒ “5.3.4 Removing and installing convertible roof closed switch F411 / F412 ”, page 187

⇒ “5.3.5 Removing and installing convertible roof latch closed switch F295 ”, page 187

⇒ “5.3.6 Removing and installing tensioning strut top switch F408 ”, page 187

⇒ “5.3.7 Removing and installing tensioning strut bottom switch F517 ”, page 188

⇒ “5.3.8 Removing and installing convertible roof box lid switch F293 / F404 ”, page 189

⇒ “5.3.9 Removing and installing convertible roof box lid open switch F407 ”, page 189

⇒ “5.3.10 Removing and installing convertible roof lid closed switch F519 ”, page 189

⇒ “5.3.11 Removing and installing convertible roof box switch, bottom F520 ”, page 190

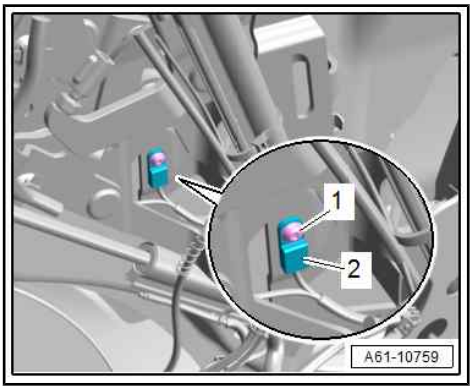
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. Audi does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3.1 Removing and installing convertible roof front switch - F202-

Removing

– Remove side trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim .
– Move convertible roof to “open” position.

– Unscrew bolt -1- and detach convertible roof front switch -2-.



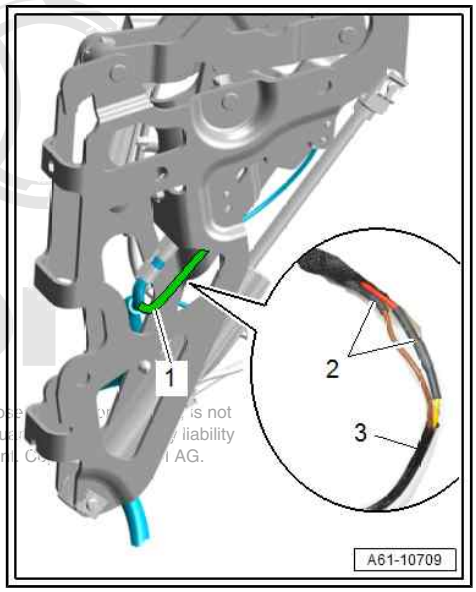
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

The new switch must be connected to the wiring harness.

– Carefully open sheathing -1- in marked area.
– Remove wiring harness -3- from sheathing.
– Disconnect electrical wiring -2- and connect with new electrical wiring ⇒ Electrical system; General information; Rep. gr. 97 ; Repairing wiring harnesses and connectors; Repairing wiring harnesses .

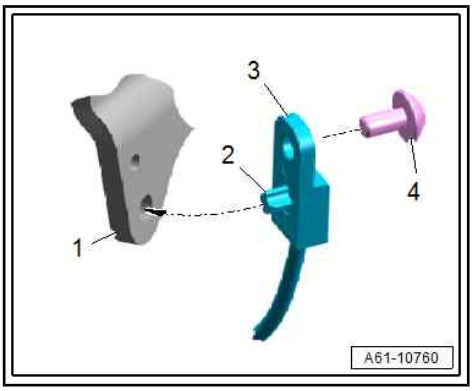


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– When inserting switch -3-, make sure that guide pin -2- is properly inserted in hole of mounting -1- -arrow-.
– Tighten bolt -4- to specified torque.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “5.1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof actuation button, convertible roof”, page 182 .

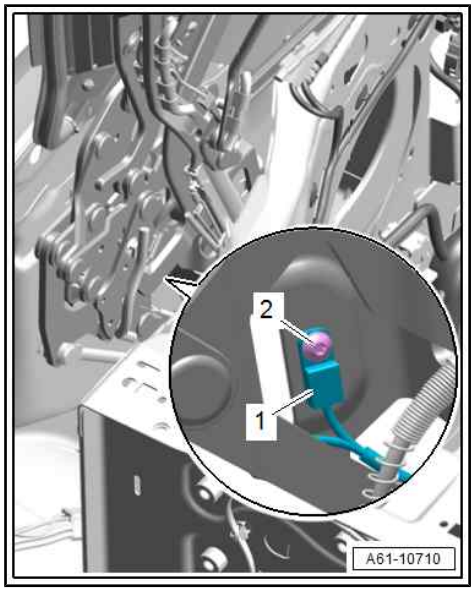


5.3.2 Removing and installing convertible roof stowed switch - F171-

Removing

– Remove side trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim .
– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .

– Working from convertible roof compartment, unscrew bolt -2- and detach convertible roof stowed switch -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

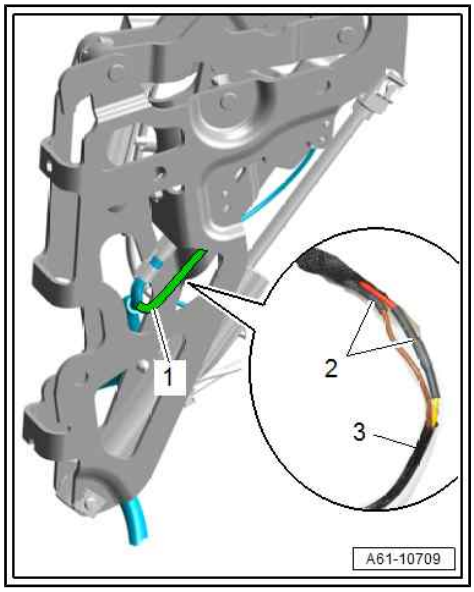
Note

The new switch must be connected to the wiring harness.

– Carefully open sheathing -1- in marked area.

– Remove wiring harness -3- from sheathing.

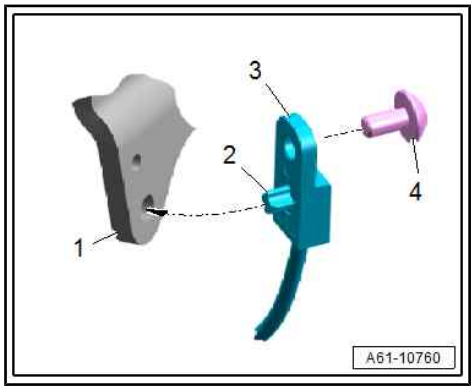
– Disconnect electrical wiring -2- and connect with new electrical wiring ⇒ Electrical system; General information; Rep. gr. 97 ; Repairing wiring harnesses and connectors; Repairing wiring harnesses .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– When inserting switch -3-, make sure that guide pin -2- is properly inserted in hole of mounting -1- -arrow-.

– Tighten bolt -4- to specified torque.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “5.1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof actuation button, convertible roof”, page 182 .

5.3.3 Removing and installing convertible roof latch open switch - F294-

Convertible roof latch open switch - F294- is integrated in convertible roof lock motor - V223- and cannot be renewed separately. Removing and installing convertible roof lock motor ⇒ page 136

5.3.4 Removing and installing convertible roof closed switch -F411- / -F412-

Left switch for convertible roof closed - F411- / right switch for convertible roof closed - F412- are integrated in locking element and cannot be renewed separately. Removing and installing locking element ⇒ page 135

5.3.5 Removing and installing convertible roof latch closed switch - F295-

Removing

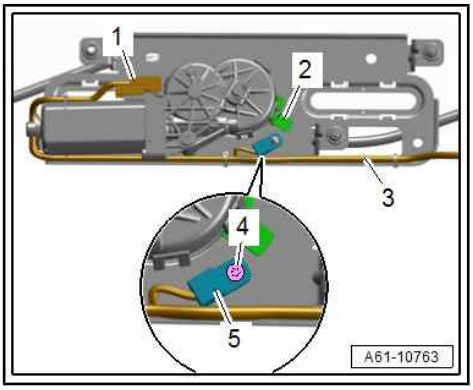
– Remove drive unit for convertible roof locking mechanism ⇒ page 136 .

– Move convertible roof locking mechanism to “open” position.

• Metal cover -2- must not be above switch.

– Unplug electrical connector -1- and move it clear.

– Unscrew bolt -4- and detach switch -5- with wiring harness -3-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “5.1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof actuation button, convertible roof”, page 182 .

5.3.6 Removing and installing tensioning strut top switch - F408-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 and allow tensioner to be set down.

– Reach between convertible roof headliner and tensioner from inside and unscrew bolt -1-.
– Detach tensioning strut top switch -2-.

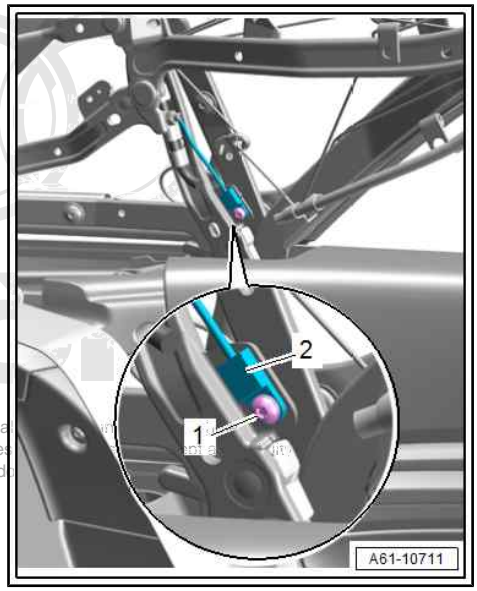
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

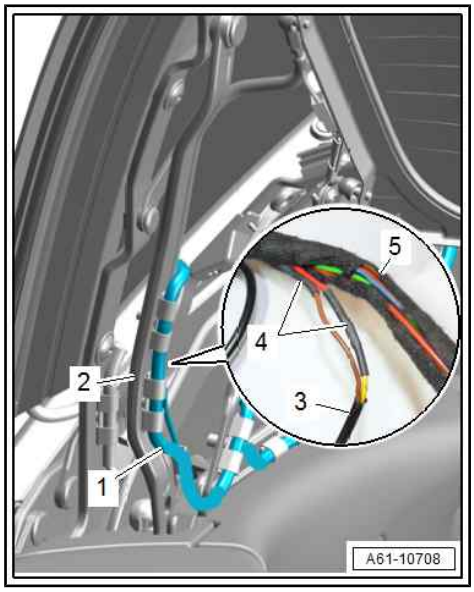
Note

The new switch must be connected to the wiring harness.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercia
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this d



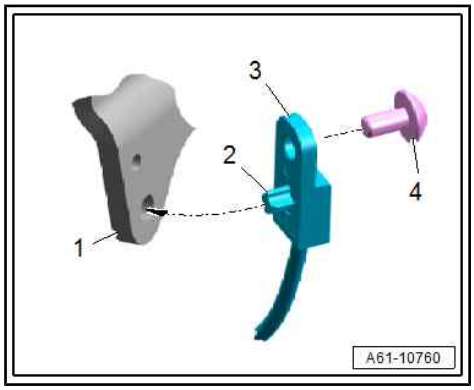
– Move electrical wiring harness -1- clear at operating lever -2- for tensioner.
– Carefully open sheathing -5- in area of wiring connection.
– Remove wiring harness -3- from sheathing.
– Disconnect electrical wiring -4- and connect with new electrical wiring ⇒ Electrical system; General information; Rep. gr. 97 ; Repairing wiring harnesses and connectors; Repairing wiring harnesses .



– When inserting switch -3-, make sure that guide pin -2- is properly inserted in hole of mounting -1- -arrow-.
– Tighten bolt -4- to specified torque.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “5.1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof actuation button, convertible roof”, page 182 .



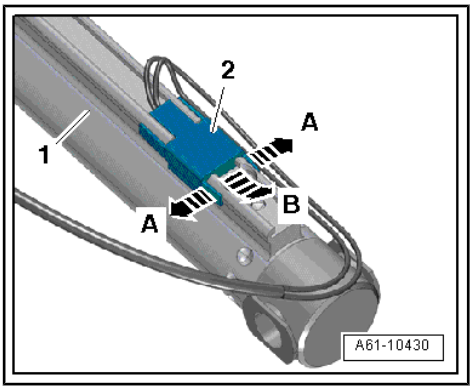
5.3.7 Removing and installing tensioning strut bottom switch - F517-

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .
– Detach hydraulic cylinder for tensioner ⇒ page 178 .

– Press hydraulic line to side.

– Release retaining tabs -arrows A- and swivel tensioning strut bottom switch -2- upwards out of hydraulic cylinder -1- -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

If tensioning strut bottom switch is renewed:

- Move wiring harness clear and unplug electrical connector.
- Remove convertible roof box lid open switch ⇒ page 189 .

5.3.8 Removing and installing convertible roof box lid switch -F293- / -F404-

Convertible roof box lid released switch - F293- / convertible roof box lid locked switch - F404- are integrated in convertible roof box lid lock motor - V222- and cannot be renewed separately. Removing and installing convertible roof box lid lock motor ⇒ page 70

5.3.9 Removing and installing convertible roof box lid open switch - F407-

Removing

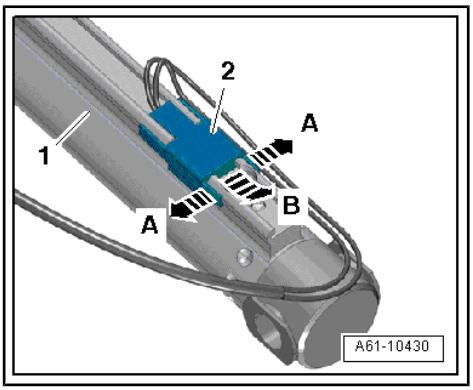
– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .

– Detach hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid ⇒ page 179 .

Copyright © AUDI AG. Reproduction of this publication or part thereof in any form or part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Press hydraulic line to side.

– Release retaining tabs -arrows A- and swivel convertible roof box lid open switch -2- upwards out of hydraulic cylinder -1- -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

If convertible roof box lid open switch is renewed:

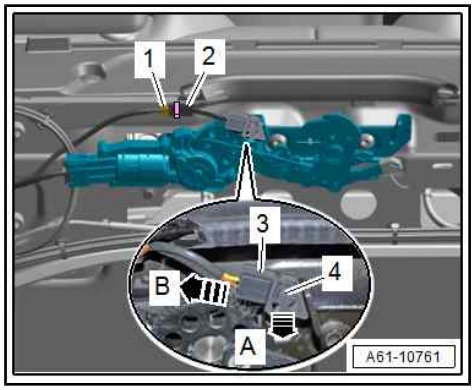
- Move wiring harness clear and unplug electrical connector.
- Remove tensioning strut bottom switch ⇒ page 188 .

5.3.10 Removing and installing convertible roof lid closed switch - F519-

Removing

– Remove rear section of back panel trim (left-side) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels .

– Using a narrow-bladed screwdriver, release catch -4- -arrow A- and pull convertible roof lid closed switch -3- out of mounting -arrow B-.
– Unplug electrical connector -1- and move plug -2- clear.



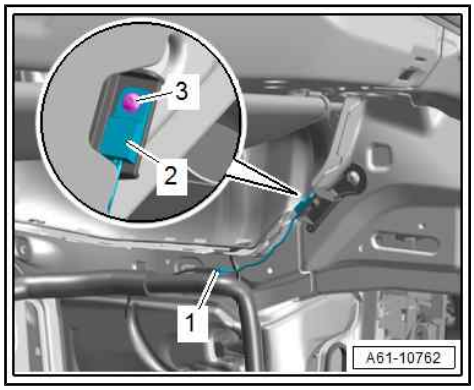
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

5.3.11 Removing and installing convertible roof box switch, bottom - F520-

Removing

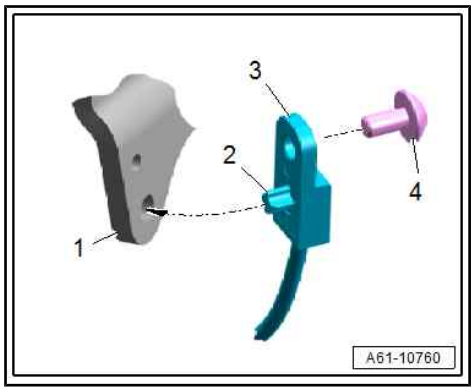
– Remove luggage compartment side trim (right-side) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim .
– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .
– Push convertible roof well upwards.
– Remove bolt -3-.
– Detach convertible roof box switch, bottom -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– When inserting switch -3-, make sure that guide pin -2- is properly inserted in hole of mounting -1- -arrow-.
– Tighten bolt -4- to specified torque.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “5.1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof actuation button, convertible roof”, page 182 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.4 Removing and installing permanent magnets

⇒ “5.4.1 Removing and installing permanent magnet for convertible roof stowed switch F171 ”, page 191

⇒ “5.4.2 Removing and installing permanent magnet for convertible roof front switch F202 ”, page 192

⇒ “5.4.3 Removing and installing permanent magnet for tensioning strut top switch F408 ”, page 193

⇒ “5.4.4 Removing and installing permanent magnet for convertible roof lid closed switch F519 ”, page 193

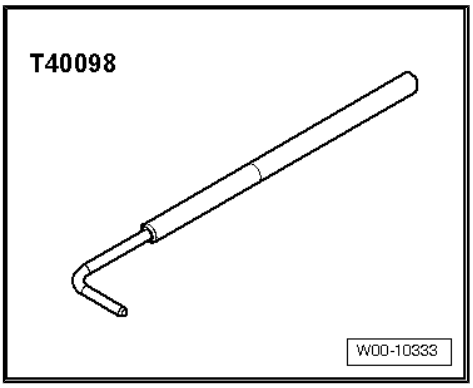
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.4.1 Removing and installing permanent magnet for convertible roof stowed switch - F171-

- Two further mechanics are required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 191).

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Locking tool - T40098-



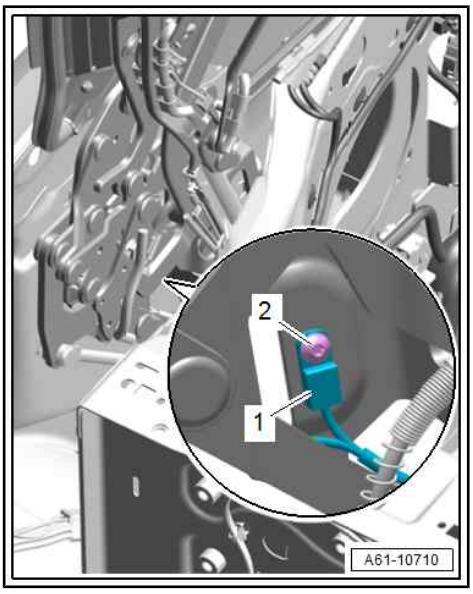
Removing

– Remove side trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim .

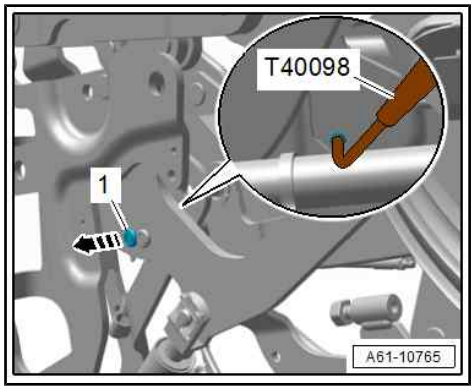
– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .

– Working from convertible roof compartment, unscrew bolt -2- and detach convertible roof stowed switch -1-.

– Move convertible roof to “open” position together with a second mechanic, taking care not to damage switch.



– Lift convertible roof to such an extent that permanent magnet becomes accessible.
– Using locking tool - T40098- on reverse side, press permanent magnet -1- out of mounting -arrow-.



Note

If the permanent magnet cannot be removed as described, the convertible roof must be removed ⇒ page 129 .

Installing

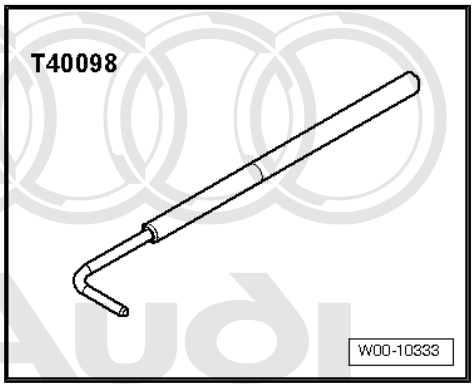
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Permanent magnet must be pressed into mounting as far as stop.
– Install convertible roof stowed switch ⇒ page 185 .

5.4.2 Removing and installing permanent magnet for convertible roof front switch - F202-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

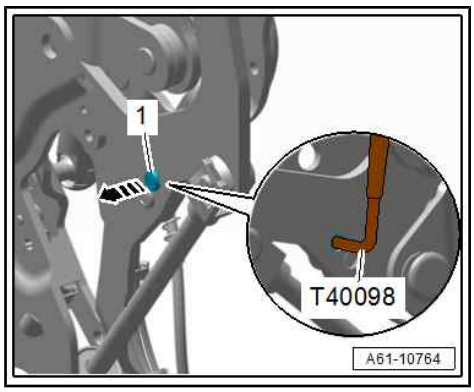
♦ Locking tool - T40098-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove side trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim .
– Move convertible roof to “open” position.
– Using locking tool - T40098- on reverse side, press permanent magnet -1- out of mounting -arrow-.



Note

If the permanent magnet cannot be removed as described, the convertible roof must be removed ⇒ page 129 .

Installing

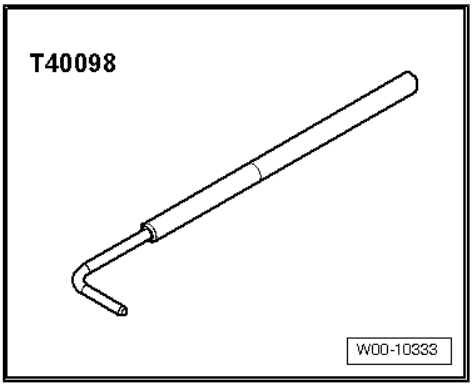
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Permanent magnet must be pressed into mounting as far as stop.

5.4.3 Removing and installing permanent magnet for tensioning strut top switch - F408-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

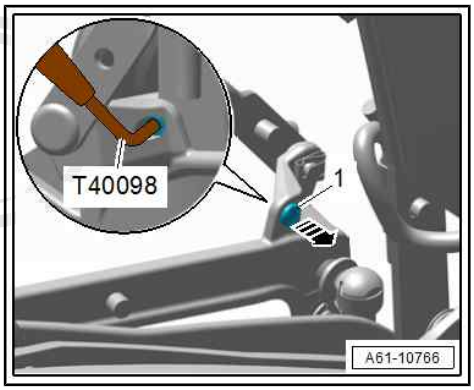
- Locking tool - T40098-



Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .

– Using locking tool - T40098- on reverse side, press permanent magnet -1- out of mounting -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Permanent magnet must be pressed into mounting as far as stop.

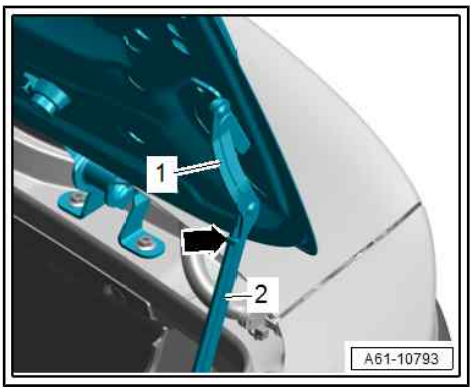
Audi
Reproduction of this document or parts thereof for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.4.4 Removing and installing permanent magnet for convertible roof lid closed switch - F519-

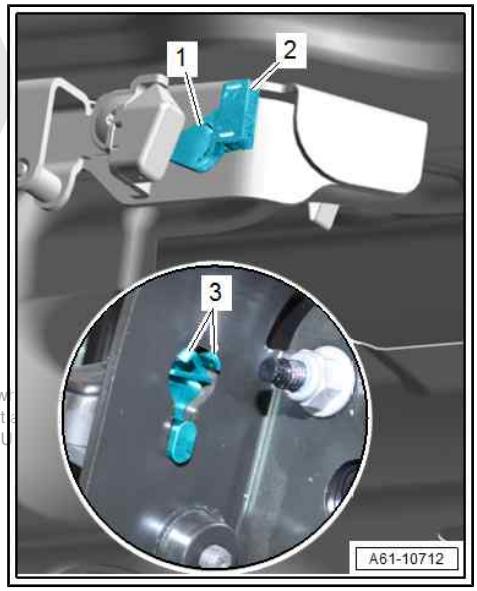
Removing

– Move convertible roof to "open" position until convertible roof compartment lid reaches position shown in illustration.

– Secure convertible roof compartment lid in “open” position to make sure it is not closed unintentionally; to do so, press against resistance of hinge at upper stop -1- towards brace -2- -arrow-.



– Release fasteners -3-.
– Pull permanent magnet -2- out of mounting -1- in direction of -arrow-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in w
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

63 – Bumpers

1 Bumper (front)

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 195

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - impact bar”, page 201

⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing bumper cover”, page 202

⇒ “1.4 Adjusting bumper cover”, page 205

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting”, page 207

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing impact bar”, page 207

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing attachments”, page 210

1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover

⇒ “1.1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover, A3 (basic version) up to model year 2016”, page 195

⇒ “1.1.2 Exploded view - bumper cover, A3 (basic version) from model year 2017 onwards”, page 197

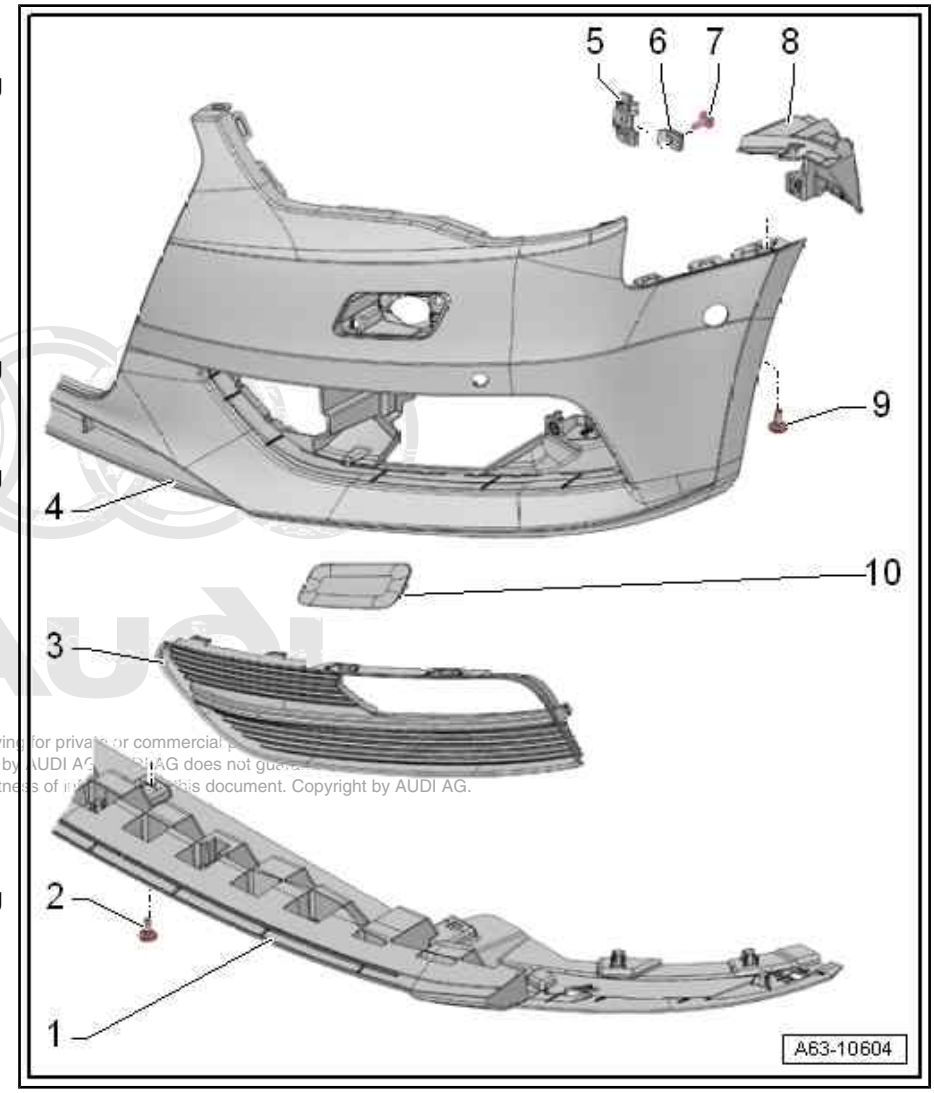
⇒ “1.1.3 Exploded view - bumper cover, A3 S line up to model year 2016”, page 198

⇒ “1.1.4 Exploded view - bumper cover, S3 up to model year 2016”, page 199

⇒ “1.1.5 Exploded view - bumper cover, A3 S line and S3 from model year 2017 onwards”, page 200

1.1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover, A3 (basic version) up to model year 2016

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Closure plate for bumper cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 210

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm

3 - Air intake grille

- ❑ Different versions ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 212

4 - Bumper cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 202

5 - Mounting

- ❑ For speed nut

6 - Speed nut

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

8 - Mounting

- ❑ For fog light
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 218

9 - Bolt

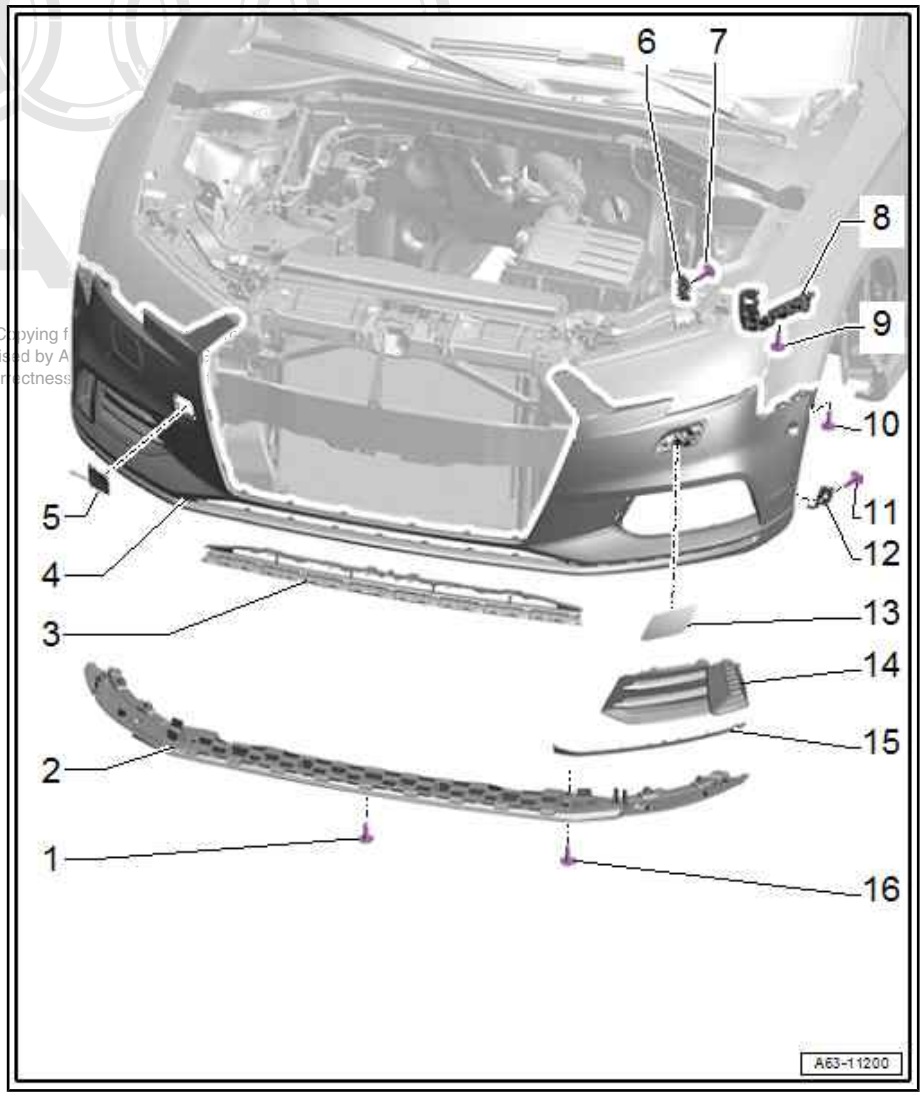
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

10 - Cover for washer jet

- ❑ For headlight washer system
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 218

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1.2 Exploded view - bumper cover, A3 (basic version) from model year 2017 onwards



1 - Bolt
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

2 - Closure plate for bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 211

3 - Air intake grille (centre)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 216

4 - Bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 202

5 - Cover for towing eye

6 - Mounting

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 4 Nm

8 - Mounting
- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ For securing headlight
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 16

9 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 16

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

11 - Bolt
- ❑ 2 Nm

12 - Intermediate piece
- ❑ For securing wheel housing liner

13 - Cover for washer jet
- ❑ For headlight washer system
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 218

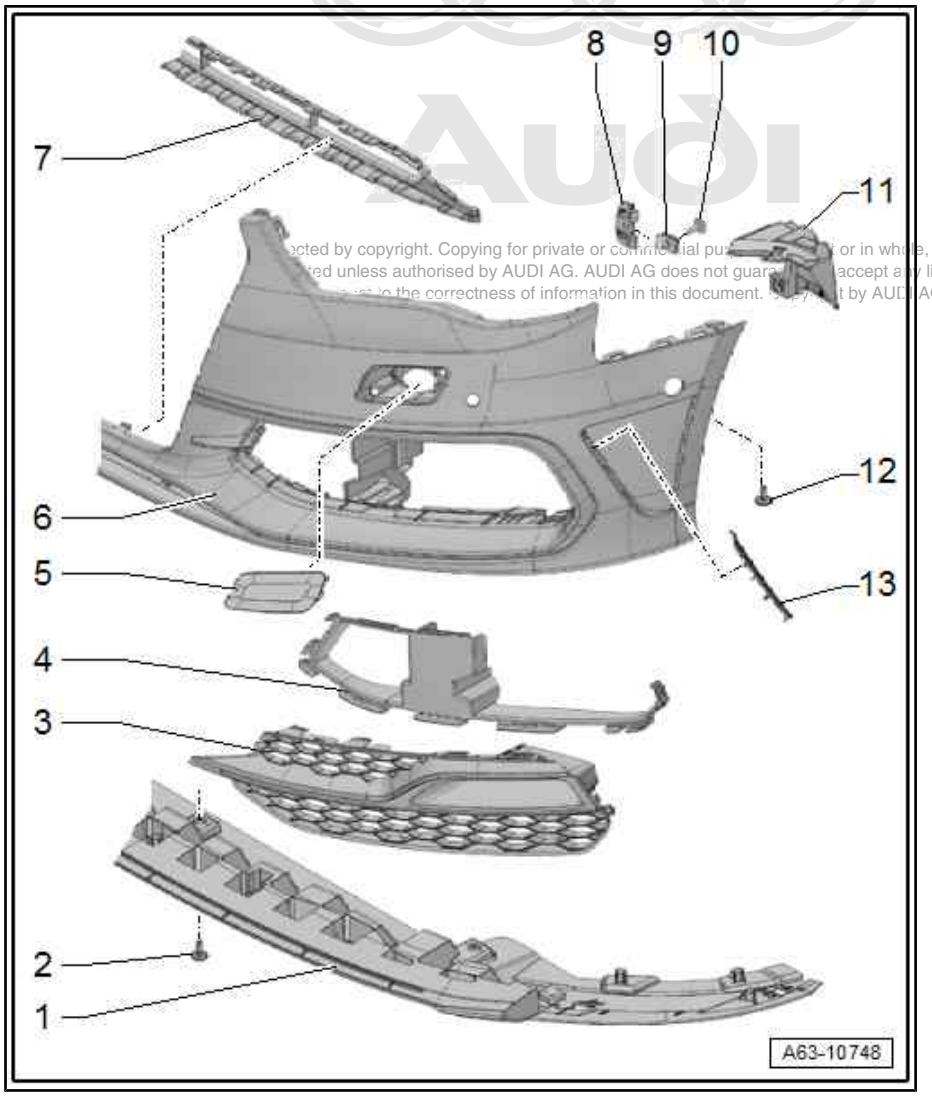
14 - Air intake grille
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214

15 - Trim strip
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214

16 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying f
permitted unless authorised by A
with respect to the correctness

1.1.3 Exploded view - bumper cover, A3 S line up to model year 2016



1 - Closure plate for bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 210

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

3 - Air intake grille
- ❑ Different versions ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 213

4 - Cover
- ❑ For air intake grille

5 - Cover for washer jet
- ❑ For headlight washer system
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 218

6 - Bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 202

7 - Air intake grille (centre)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 216

8 - Mounting
- ❑ For speed nut

9 - Speed nut

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 4 Nm

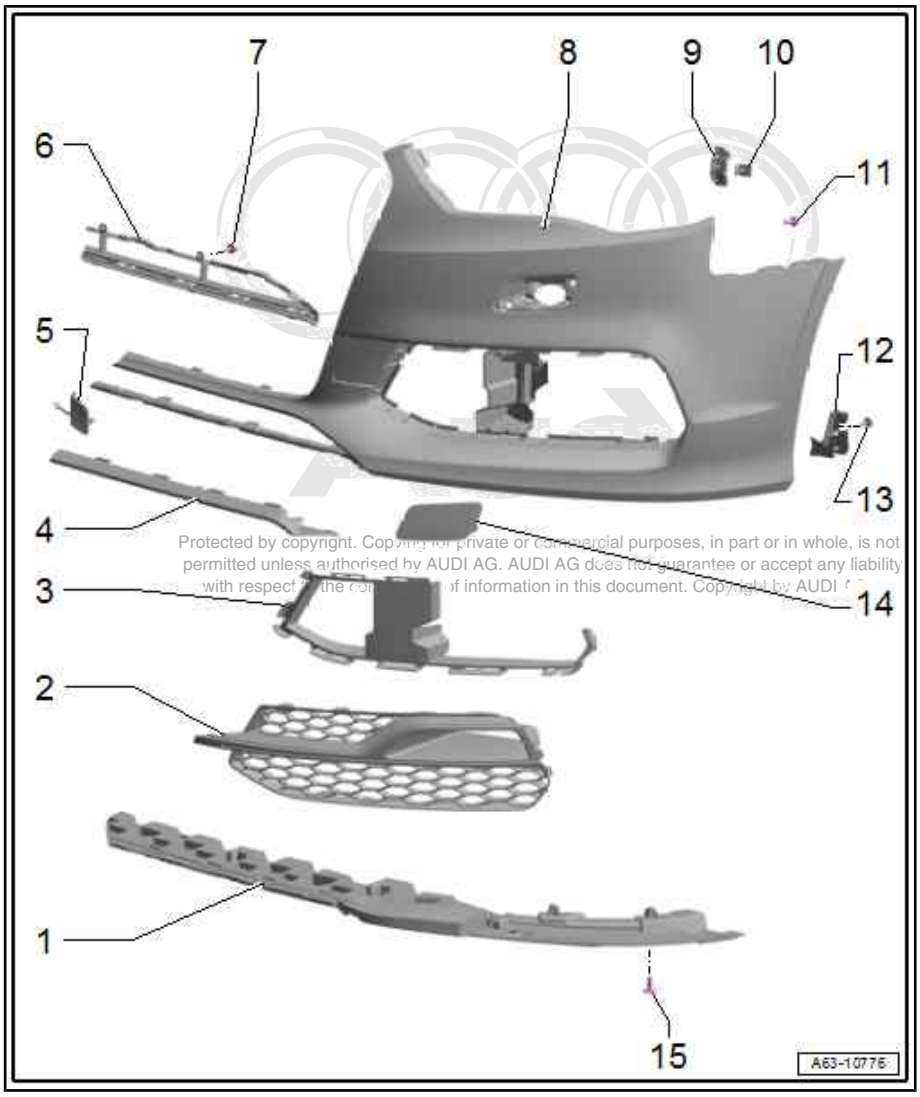
11 - Mounting
- ❑ For fog light
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 218

12 - Bolt
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

13 - Air intake grille side trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 217

...ected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu... or in whole, is not ...ed unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guar... accept a... liability ... to the correctness of information in this document. ... by AUDI AG.

1.1.4 Exploded view - bumper cover, S3 up to model year 2016



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

1 - Closure plate for bumper cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 210

2 - Air intake grille

- ❑ Different versions ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 213

3 - Cover

- ❑ For air intake grille

4 - Spoiler (bottom section)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 219

5 - Cover for towing eye

6 - Reinforcement strut (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 212

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2 Nm

8 - Bumper cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 202

9 - Mounting

- ❑ For speed nut

10 - Speed nut

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

12 - Intermediate piece

- ❑ For securing wheel housing liner

13 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

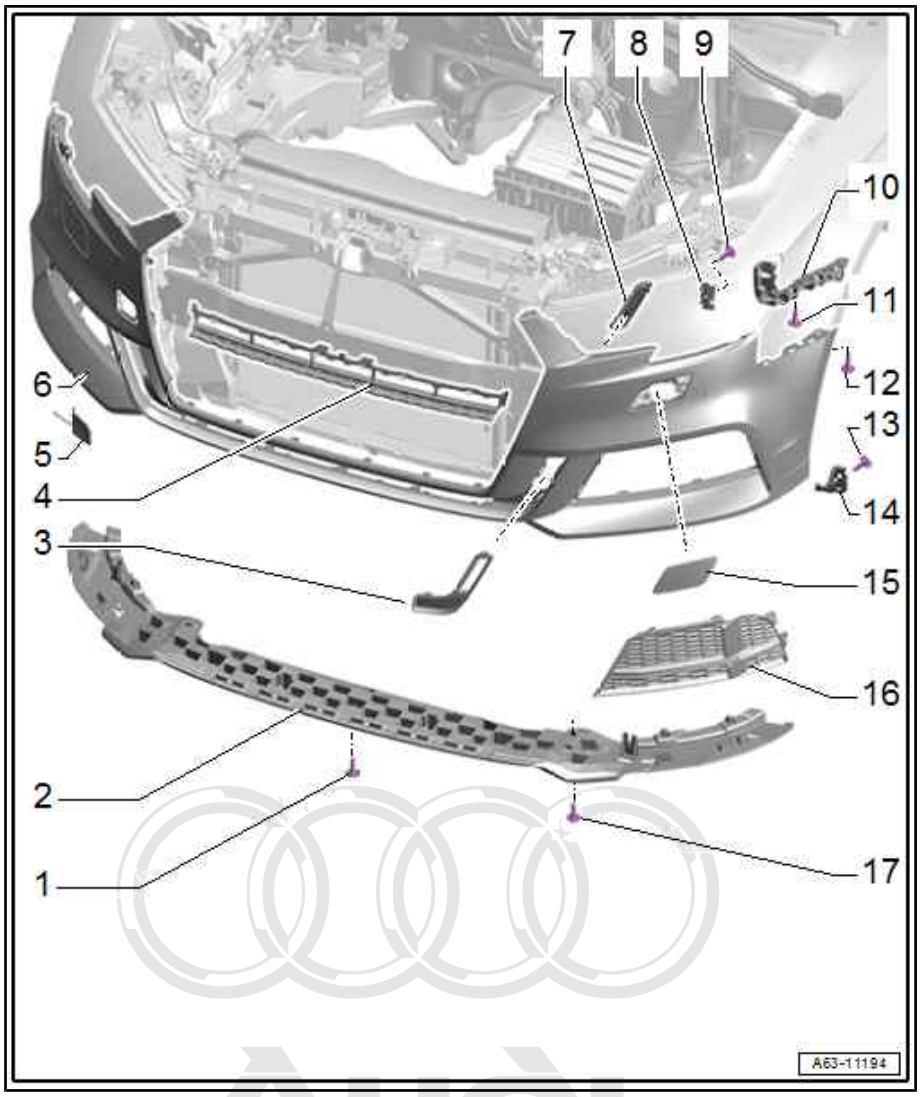
14 - Cover for washer jet

- ❑ For headlight washer system
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 218

15 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm

1.1.5 Exploded view - bumper cover, A3 S line and S3 from model year 2017 onwards



1 - Bolt
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

2 - Closure plate for bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 211

3 - Trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 215

4 - Air intake grille (centre)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 217

5 - Cover for towing eye

6 - Bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 202

7 - Cover
- ❑ For trim

8 - Mounting

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 4 Nm

10 - Mounting
- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ For securing headlight
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 16

11 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 16

12 - Bolt
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

13 - Bolt
- ❑ 2 Nm

14 - Intermediate piece
- ❑ For securing wheel housing liner

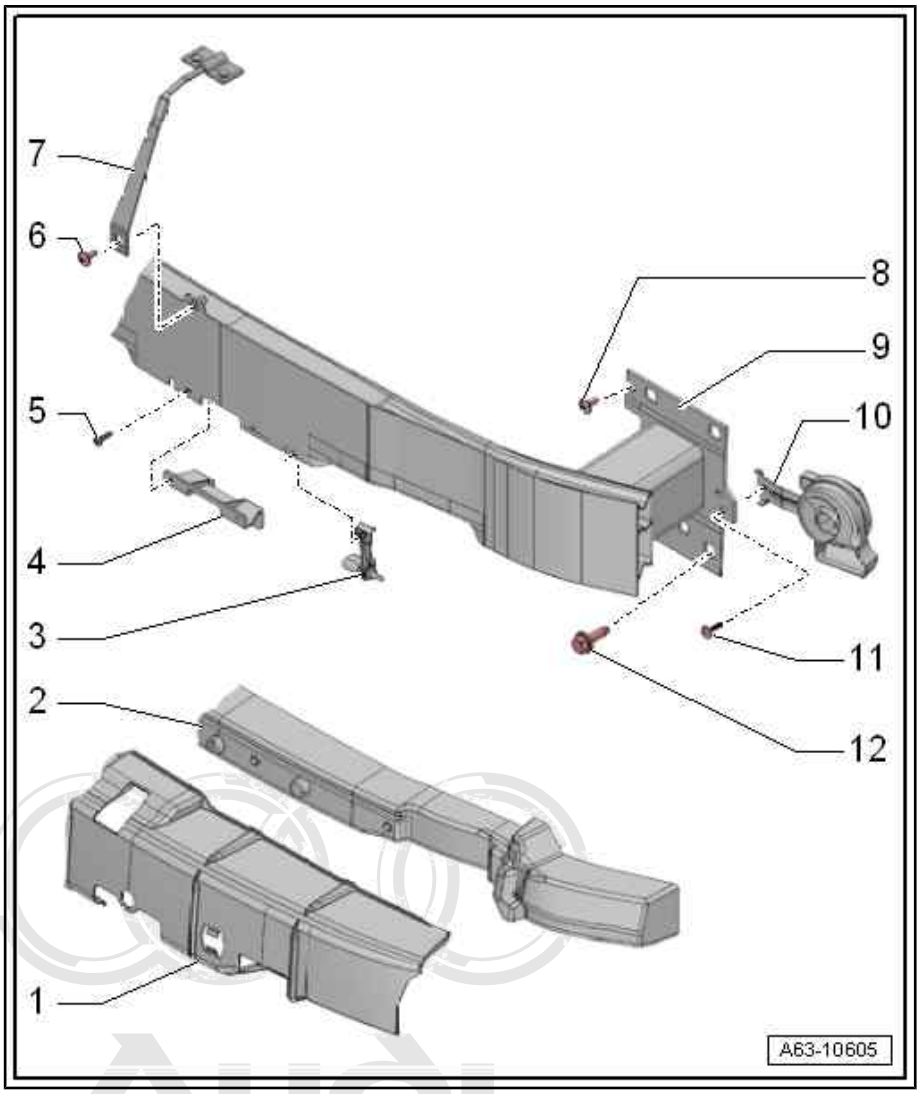
15 - Cover for washer jet
- ❑ For headlight washer system
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 218

16 - Air intake grille
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214

17 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2 Exploded view - impact bar



1 - Cover

- For impact bar
- Different versions ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Moulded foam insert

- Different versions
- Country-specific version
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 220

3 - Bracket

- For ambient temperature sensor - G17-
- Depending on equipment version
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 219

4 - Bracket

- For adaptive cruise control unit - J428-

5 - Bolt

- Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Adaptive cruise control system; Overview of fitting locations - adaptive cruise control

6 - Bolt

- 3x
- Tightening torque ⇒ Item 6 (page 27)

7 - Retaining bracket

- For bonnet release lever

8 - Bolt

- 4.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Impact bar

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 207

10 - Bracket

- For horn
- Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Horn; Exploded view - horn

11 - Bolt

- Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Horn; Exploded view - horn

12 - Bolt

- 4x
- 50 Nm

1.3 Removing and installing bumper cover

⇒ “1.3.1 Removing and installing bumper cover - vehicles without auxiliary side radiator”, page 202

⇒ “1.3.2 Removing and installing bumper cover - vehicles with auxiliary side radiator”, page 203

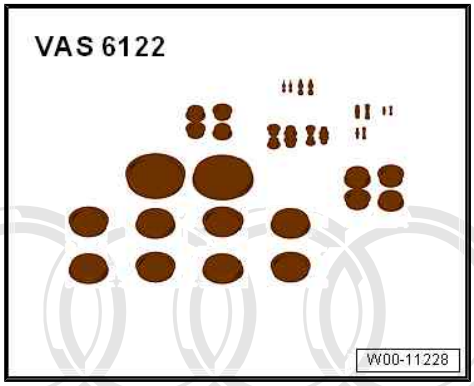
1.3.1 Removing and installing bumper cover - vehicles without auxiliary side radiator

Vehicles from model year 2017 onwards: Bumper cover, crash sensors for pedestrian protection and airbag control unit - J234- are different for the basic and S line equipment versions. It is not permitted to interchange components. For assignment of bumper cover, crash sensors for pedestrian protection and airbag control unit - J234- , refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 203).

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine bung set - VAS 6122-



Removing

– Turn front wheels to full lock and unfasten wheel housing liner in area of bumper cover (front).

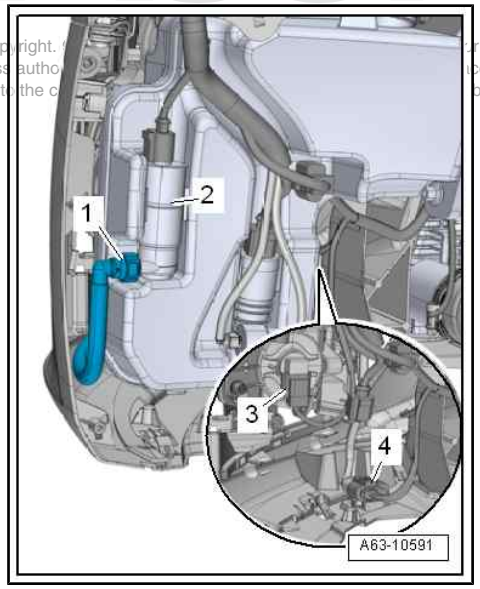
– Place drip tray underneath connection point for fluid hose.

– If fitted, press release button and disconnect fluid hose -1- from headlight washer system pump -2-.

– Seal hose connection with clean plug from engine bung set - VAS 6122- .

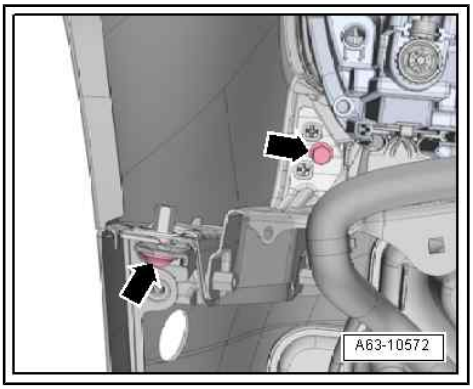
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector -3- at fog light.

– Unplug main connectors -4-.



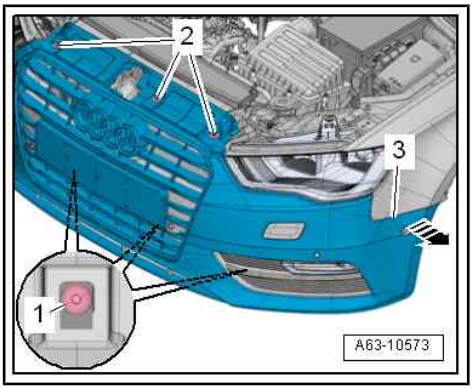
Protected by copyright. ... in whole, is not permitted unless autho... ...ccept any liability ... respect to the c... ...by AUDI AG.

– Press unfastened wheel housing liner to side and remove bolts -arrows-.



– Remove bolts -1 and 2-.

– Detach side section -3- from side panel (front) -arrow- and detach bumper cover towards front with the help of a second mechanic.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 205 .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 195 .

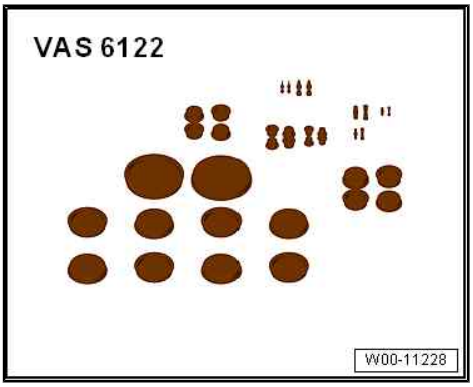
1.3.2 Removing and installing bumper cover - vehicles with auxiliary side radiator

Vehicles from model year 2017 onwards: Bumper cover, crash sensors for pedestrian protection and airbag control unit - J234- are different for the basic and S line equipment versions. It is not permitted to interchange components. For assignment of bumper cover, crash sensors for pedestrian protection and airbag control unit - J234- , refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 204).

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Engine bung set - VAS 6122-



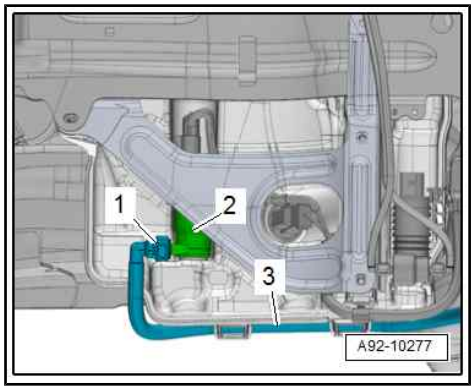
Removing

– Left side: Turn front wheels to full lock and unfasten wheel housing liner in area of bumper cover (front).

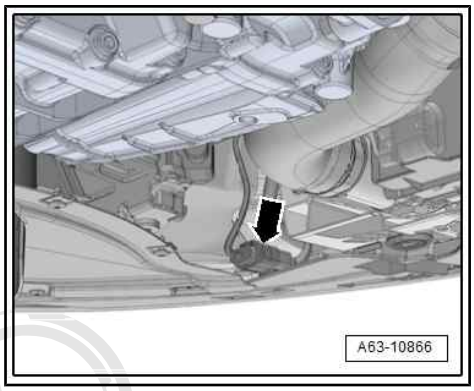
– Right side: Remove wheel housing liner (front right) ⇒ page 303 .

– Place drip tray underneath connection point for fluid hose.

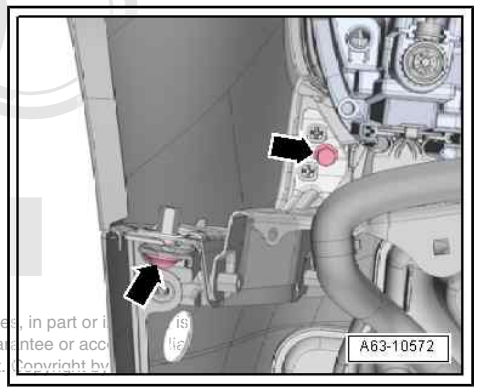
– Press release button and disconnect fluid hose -1- from headlight washer system pump -2-.
– Seal hose connection with clean plug from engine bung set - VAS 6122- .
– Move fluid hose -3- clear.



– Unplug central connector -arrow-.



– Press unfastened wheel housing liner to side and remove bolts -arrows-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -1 and 2-.
– Detach side section -3- from side panel (front) -arrow- and detach bumper cover towards front with the help of a second mechanic.

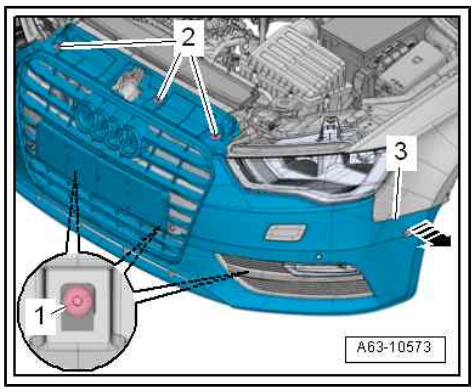
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 205 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 195 .



1.4 Adjusting bumper cover

⇒ “1.4.1 Adjustment dimensions”, page 205

⇒ “1.4.2 Lateral and longitudinal adjustment”, page 206

1.4.1 Adjustment dimensions

Adjustment dimensions - vehicles up to model year 2016
⇒ page 205

Adjustment dimensions - vehicles from model year 2017 onwards
⇒ page 205

Adjustment dimensions - vehicles up to model year 2016

A - Radiator grille/bumper cover to bonnet

- Gap width = 4.5 mm

B - Bumper cover to bonnet

- Gap width = 4.5 mm

C - Bumper cover (side section) to wing panel

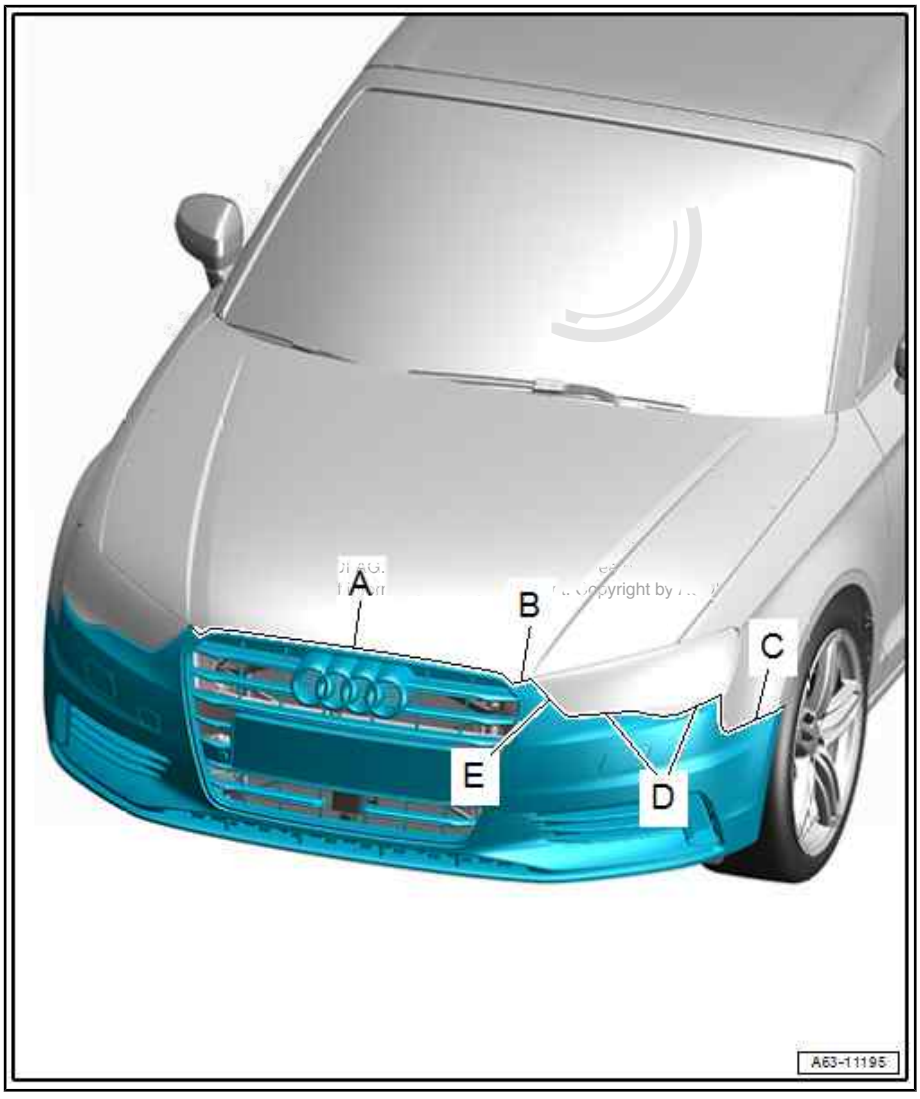
- Gap width = 0 mm

D - Bumper cover to headlight

- Gap width = 1.5 mm

E - Bumper cover to headlight

- Gap width = 2.5 mm



Adjustment dimensions - vehicles from model year 2017 onwards

A - Radiator grille/bumper cover to bonnet

- Gap width = 4.5 mm

B - Bumper cover to bonnet

- Gap width = 4.6 mm

C - Bumper cover (side section) to wing panel

- Gap width = 0 mm

D - Bumper cover to headlight

- Gap width = 1.94 mm

E - Bumper cover to headlight

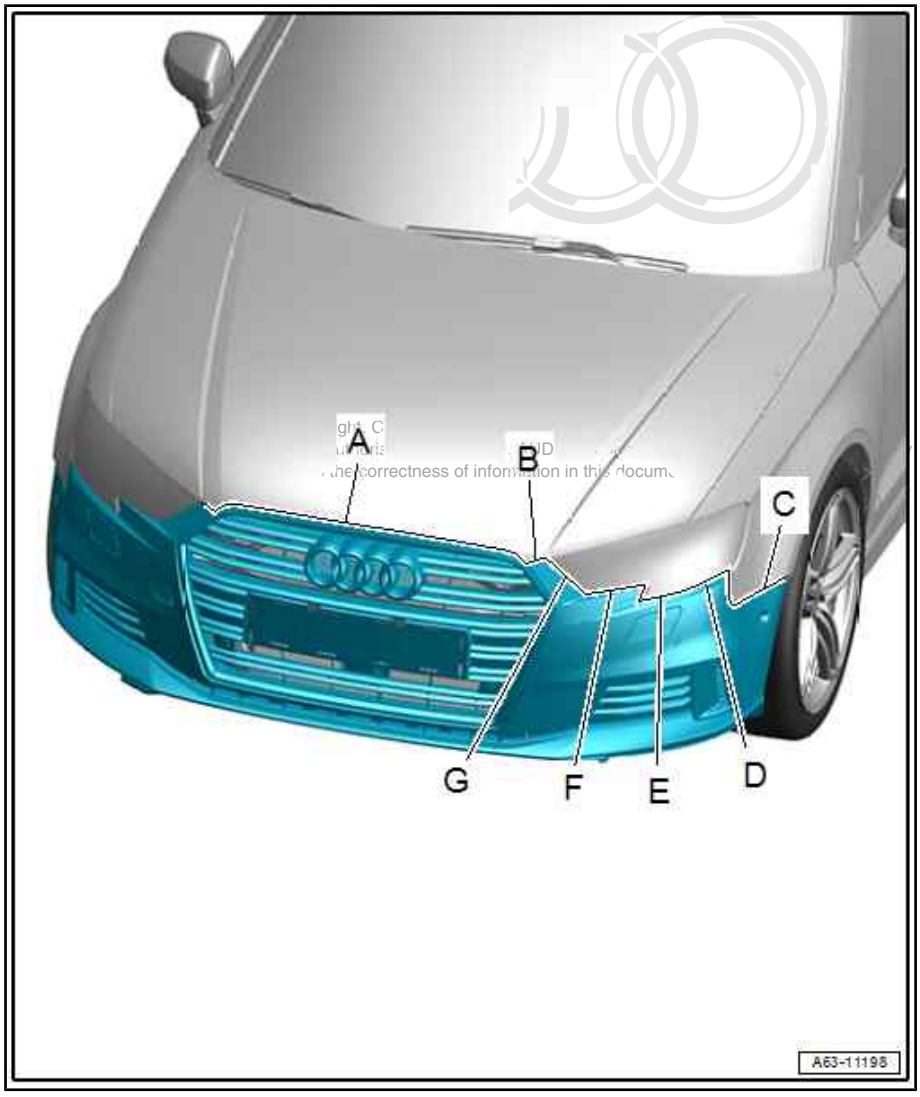
- Gap width = 1.84 mm

F - Bumper cover to headlight

- Gap width = 1.49 mm

G - Bumper cover to headlight

- Gap width = 2.0 mm



1.4.2 Lateral and longitudinal adjustment

- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 205 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



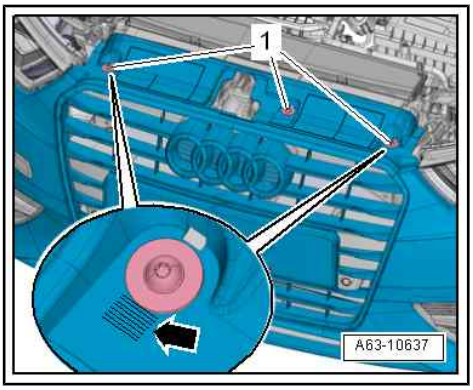
Procedure

– Loosen bolts -1-.

– Align bumper cover (front) longitudinally according to markings -arrow-.

– Tighten bolts.

– Check that gap width is even and repeat adjustment if necessary.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - radiator grille”, page 264 .

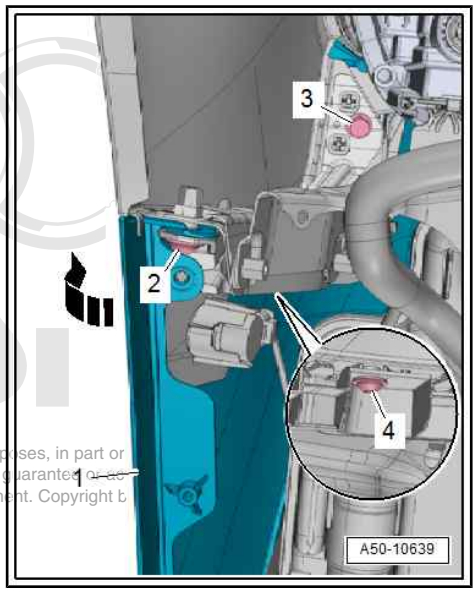
1.5 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting

Removing

– Remove wheel housing liner (front) ⇒ page 303 .

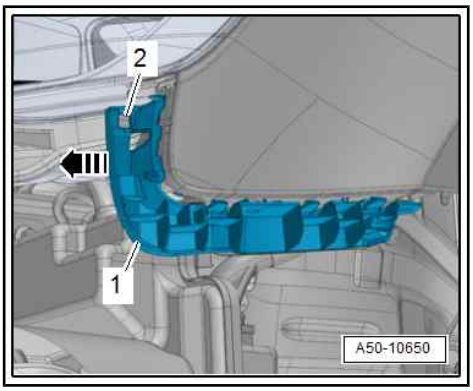
– Remove bolts -2, 3, 4-.

– Disengage side section -1- at side panel (front) -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ass with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright b

– Detach mounting -1- towards front -arrow-, taking care not to damage guide -2- for headlight.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Slide mounting onto guide on headlight.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - wing”, page 16

1.6 Removing and installing impact bar

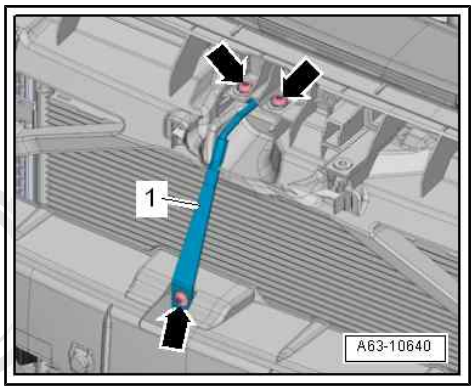
• Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary ⇒ page 209 .

Removing

– Remove headlight ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Headlights; Removing and installing headlights .

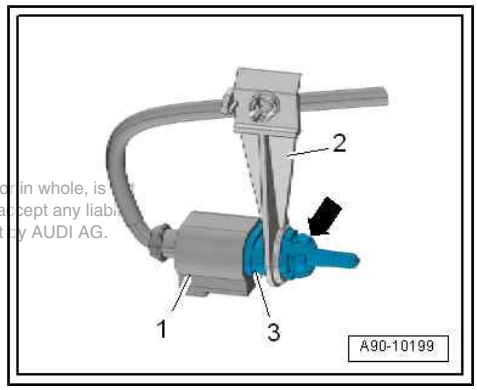
– Remove air duct for radiator ⇒ page 14 .

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach retainer -1-.



– Unplug electrical connector -1- at ambient temperature sensor - G17- -item 3-.

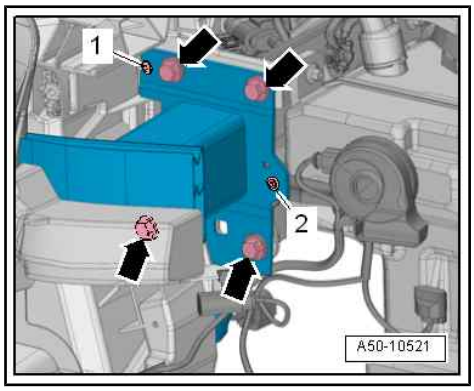
– Move electrical wiring harness clear at lock carrier.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew bolt -2- and detach horn with bracket.

– Unscrew bolts -1- and -arrows-.



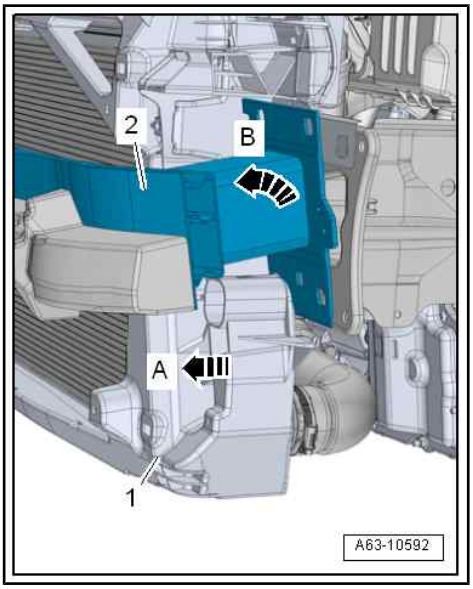
– Pull lock carrier -1- forwards slightly -arrow A-, swivel top of impact bar -2- down towards front -arrow B- and detach from lock carrier.

– If impact bar is to be renewed, also remove the following components:

♦ Moulded foam insert ⇒ page 220

♦ Bracket for ambient temperature sensor ⇒ page 219

♦ Bracket for adaptive cruise control unit ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Adaptive cruise control; Overview of fitting locations - adaptive cruise control

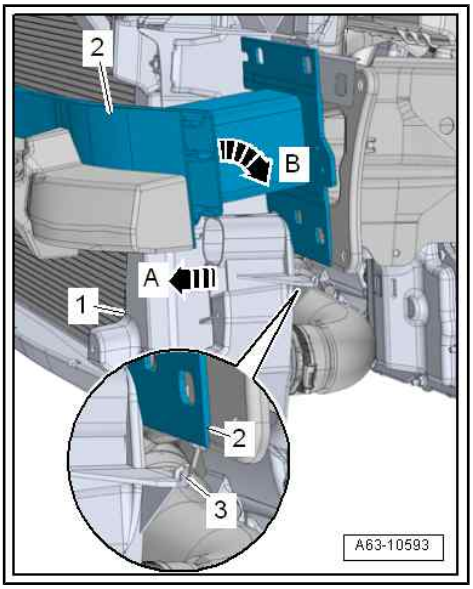


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Pull lock carrier -1- forwards slightly -arrow A-, insert impact bar -2- -arrow B- and move to installation position.

• Impact bar must be inserted behind guide -3- on lock carrier.



Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary:

– Calibrate adaptive cruise control ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 44 ; Adaptive cruise control; Adjusting adaptive cruise control .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ "1.2 Exploded view - impact bar", page 201

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7 Removing and installing attachments

⇒ “1.7.1 Removing and installing closure plate for bumper cover (front) - vehicles up to model year 2016”, page 210

⇒ “1.7.2 Removing and installing closure plate for bumper cover (front) - vehicles from model year 2017 onwards”, page 211

⇒ “1.7.3 Removing and installing reinforcement strut (bottom) - S3 up to model year 2016”, page 212

⇒ “1.7.4 Removing and installing air intake grille - vehicles without auxiliary side radiator up to model year 2016”, page 212

⇒ “1.7.5 Removing and installing air intake grille - vehicles with auxiliary side radiator”, page 213

⇒ “1.7.6 Removing and installing air intake grille - vehicles from model year 2017 onwards”, page 214

⇒ “1.7.7 Removing and installing trim strip”, page 214

⇒ “1.7.8 Removing and installing trim - A3 S line from model year 2017 onwards”, page 215

⇒ “1.7.9 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre) - A3 (basic version) from model year 2017 onwards”, page 216

⇒ “1.7.10 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre) - A3 S line up to model year 2016”, page 216

⇒ “1.7.11 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre) - A3 S line from model year 2017 onwards”, page 217

⇒ “1.7.12 Removing and installing air intake grille trim (side) - A3 S line and S3 up to model year 2016”, page 217

⇒ “1.7.13 Removing and installing cover for headlight washer jet”, page 218

⇒ “1.7.14 Removing and installing mounting for fog light”, page 218

⇒ “1.7.15 Removing and installing spoiler (bottom section) - S3”, page 219

⇒ “1.7.16 Removing and installing bracket for ambient temperature sensor G17 ”, page 219

⇒ “1.7.17 Removing and installing moulded foam insert”, page 220

1.7.1 Removing and installing closure plate for bumper cover (front) - vehicles up to model year 2016

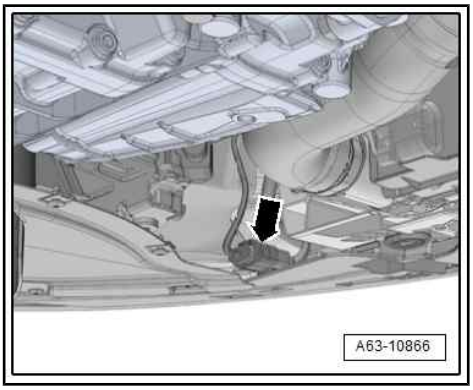
Removing

– Remove noise insulation (front) ⇒ page 291 .

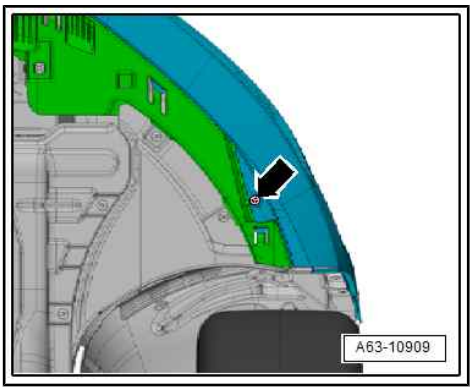
– Unfasten wheel housing liner at front and push to side.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

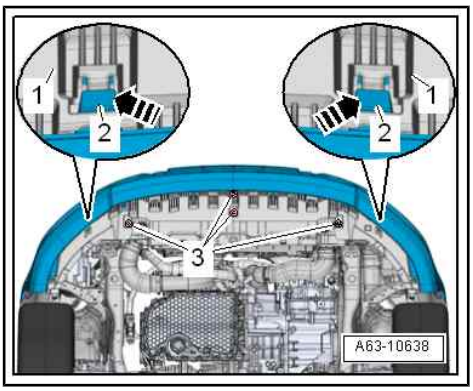
– Move central connector -arrow- clear at retainer.



– If fitted, unscrew bolt -arrow-.



– Remove bolts -3-.
– Release catch -2- at closure plate -1- -arrow-.
– Detach closure plate for bumper cover (front) towards rear (as seen in direction of travel).
– If fitted, move headlight washer fluid line clear.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 195 .
- ⇒ “6.1 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front)”, page 301.

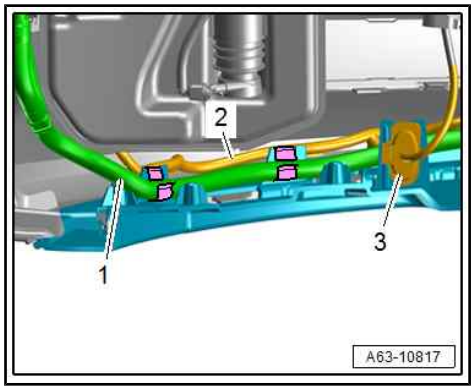
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7.2 Removing and installing closure plate for bumper cover (front) - vehicles from model year 2017 onwards

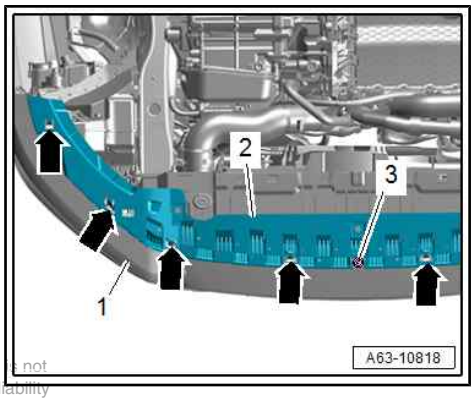
Removing

– Remove noise insulation (front) ⇒ page 291 .
– Remove wheel housing liners ⇒ page 303 .

– Unplug electrical connector -3- and move central connector clear at retainer.
– Move fluid line -1- and electrical wiring harness -2- clear on both sides.



– Remove bolt -3-.
– Release fasteners -arrows-; at the same time, detach closure plate -2- for bumper cover (front) -1- towards rear (as seen in direction of travel) and remove.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

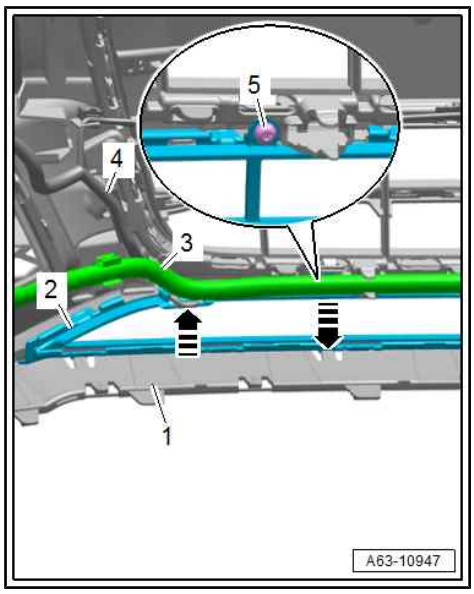
◆ ⇒ “1.1.5 Exploded view - bumper cover, A3 S line and S3 from model year 2017 onwards”, page 200 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7.3 Removing and installing reinforcement strut (bottom) - S3 up to model year 2016

Removing

– Remove spoiler (bottom section) ⇒ page 219 .
– Move fluid line -3- and electrical wiring harness -4- clear.
– Remove bolts -5-.
– Release fasteners -arrows- and pull reinforcement strut -2- off bumper cover -1- towards rear.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

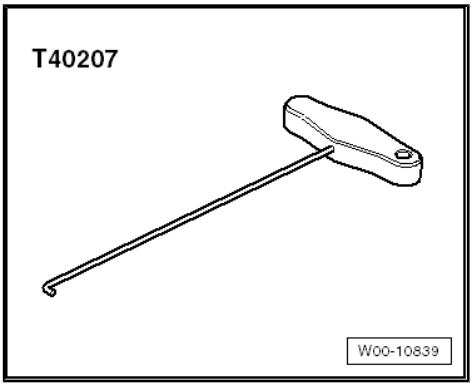
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1.4 Exploded view - bumper cover, S3 up to model year 2016”, page 199 .

1.7.4 Removing and installing air intake grille - vehicles without auxiliary side radiator up to model year 2016

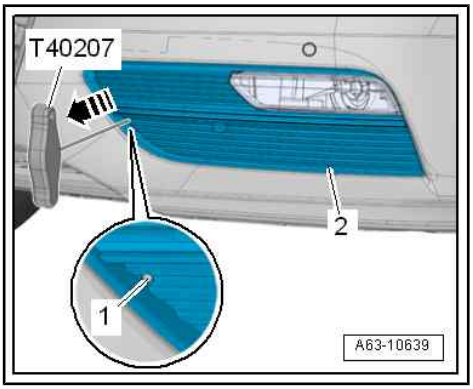
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hook - T40207-



Removing

– Insert hook - T40207- in opening -1- and pull air intake grille (bottom) -2- out of bumper cover -arrow-.



Note

The front bumper must be removed on vehicles without fog lights. Remove bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 202 .

Installing

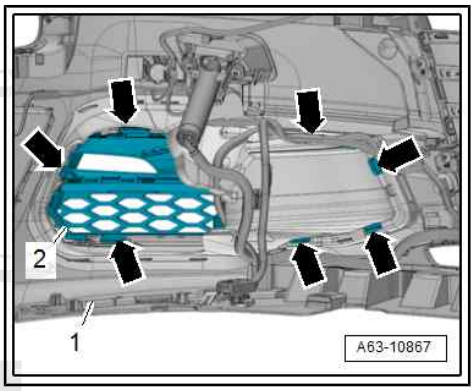
Install in reverse order of removal.

1.7.5 Removing and installing air intake grille - vehicles with auxiliary side radiator

Removing

– Remove bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 202 .

– Release fasteners -arrows- and pull air intake grille -2- off bumper cover -1-.

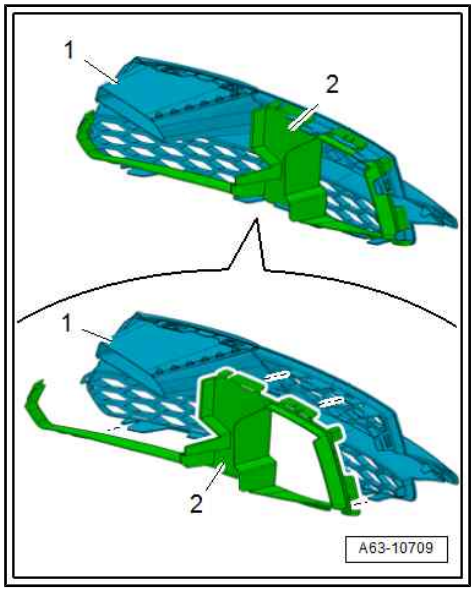


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Before installing air intake grille, position cover -2- on air intake grille -1-.
– Insert air intake grille in bumper cover and press it on so that all retaining tabs engage properly in bumper cover.



1.7.6 Removing and installing air intake grille - vehicles from model year 2017 on-wards

Removing

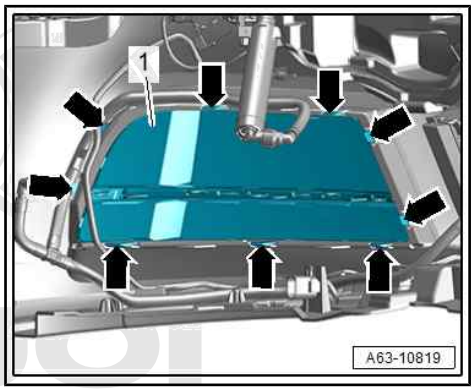
– Remove bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 202 .
– Release fasteners -arrows-.
– Remove air intake grille -1- towards front.

Note

Illustration shows S line vehicle.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



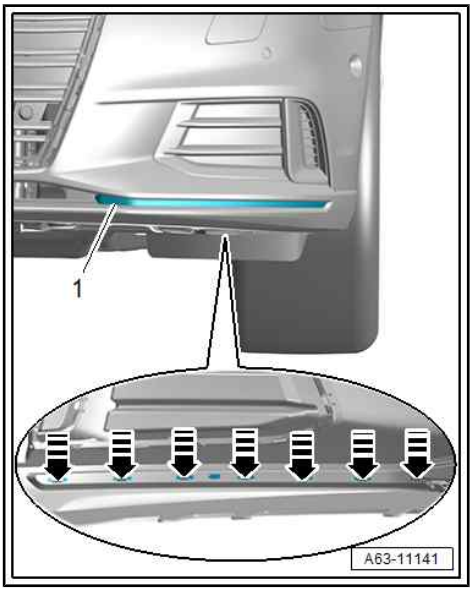
1.7.7 Removing and installing trim strip

Audi AG. Reproduction or copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Unfasten wheel housing liner at front and push to side ⇒ page 303 .

– Release fasteners -arrows-.
– Detach trim strip -1- towards front.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

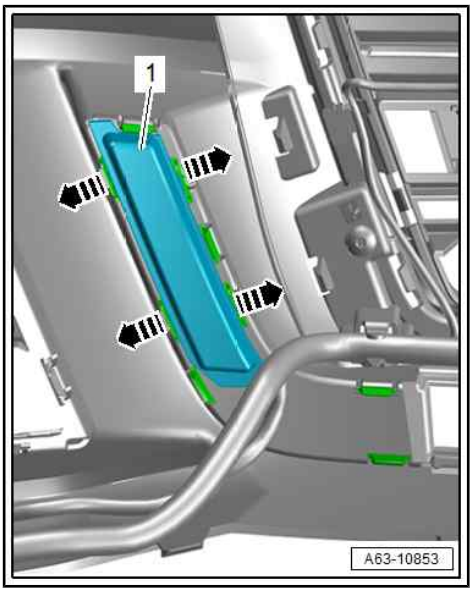
– Press trim strip on until it engages audibly.

1.7.8 Removing and installing trim - A3 S line from model year 2017 onwards

Removing

– Remove closure plate for bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 211 .
– Release fasteners -arrows-.
– Detach cover -1- towards rear.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

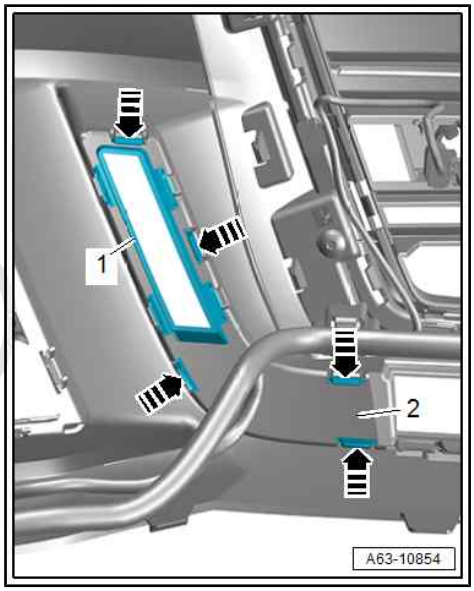


– Release fasteners -arrows-.
– Detach trim -1- from bumper cover -2- towards front.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press cover and bumper cover on until they engage audibly.



Copyright AUDI AG. This document, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7.9 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre) - A3 (basic version) from model year 2017 onwards

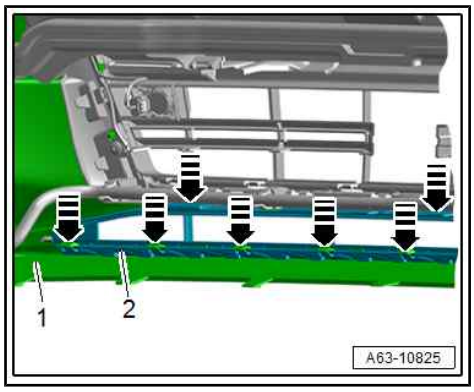
Removing

– Remove closure plate for bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 211 .
– If fitted, move headlight washer fluid hose clear.
– Release fasteners -arrows-.
– Detach air intake grille -2- from bumper cover -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert air intake grille in bumper cover and press it on so that all retaining tabs engage properly in bumper cover.

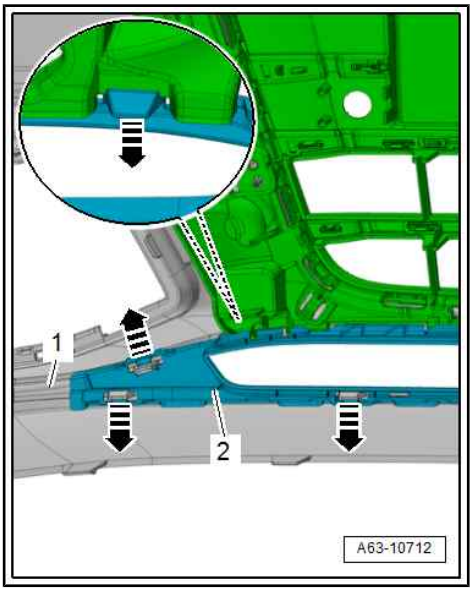


1.7.10 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre) - A3 S line up to model year 2016

Removing

– Remove closure plate for bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 210 .

– Release fasteners -arrows-.
– Detach air intake grille -2- from bumper cover -1-.



Installing

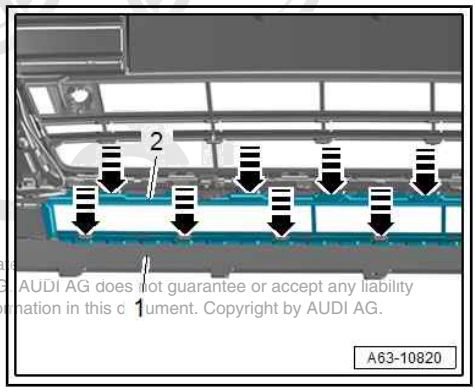
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert air intake grille in bumper cover and press it on so that all retaining tabs engage properly in bumper cover.

1.7.11 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre) - A3 S line from model year 2017 onwards

Removing

– Remove closure plate for bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 211 .
– If fitted, move headlight washer fluid hose clear.
– Release fasteners -arrows-.
– Detach air intake grille -2- from bumper cover -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert air intake grille in bumper cover and press it on so that all retaining tabs engage properly in bumper cover.

Protected by copyright. Copying for privat
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7.12 Removing and installing air intake grille trim (side) - A3 S line and S3 up to model year 2016

Removing

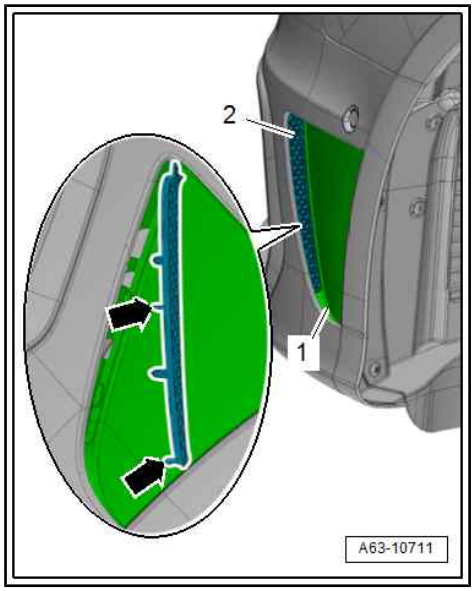
– Unfasten wheel housing liner at front and push to side ⇒ page 303 .

– Reach behind bumper cover to fasteners -arrows- and press trim -2- out of bumper cover -1-.
– Remove air intake grille side trim.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert air intake grille trim in bumper cover and press it on so that all retaining tabs engage properly in bumper cover.



1.7.13 Removing and installing cover for headlight washer jet

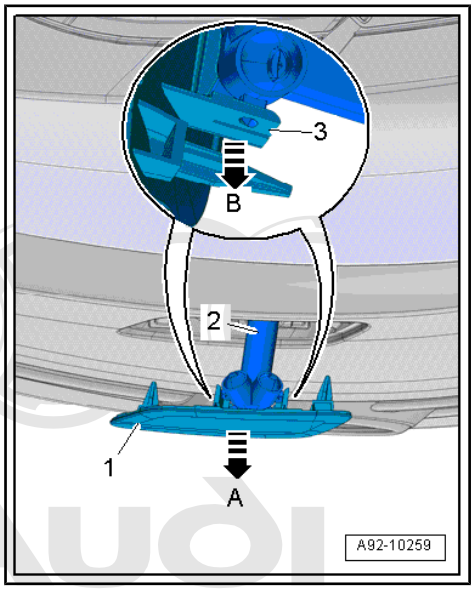
Removing

– Pull telescopic section -2- of washer jet as far as possible out of bumper cover -arrow A-.
• Hold telescopic section in this position (pulled out).
– Press apart side sections -3- of washer jet cover -1- -arrow B-, carefully disengage cover from retaining pin and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press on washer jet cover until it engages audibly.



1.7.14 Removing and installing mounting for fog light

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

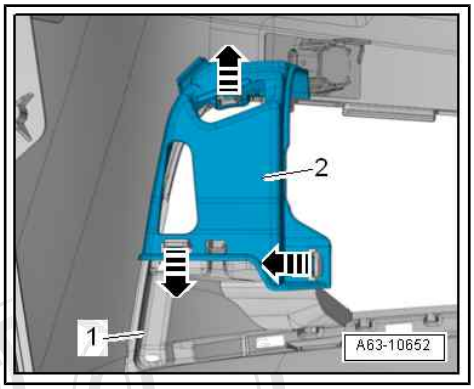
Removing

– Remove bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 202 .
– Remove air intake grille ⇒ page 212 .
– Remove fog light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Fog lights; Removing and installing fog lights .

– Release fasteners -arrows-.
– Pull mounting -2- off bumper cover -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



1.7.15 Removing and installing spoiler (bottom section) - S3

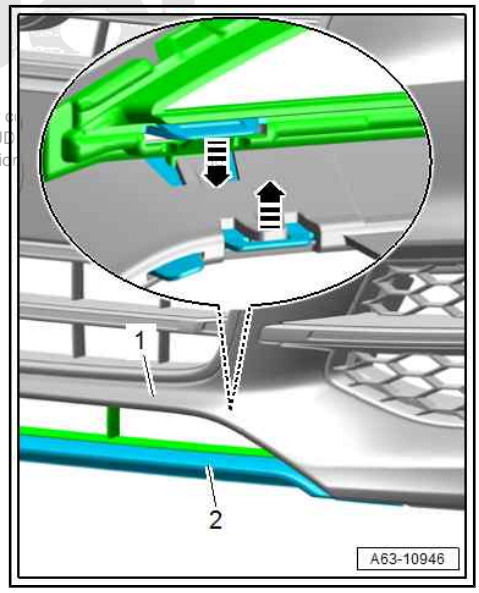
Removing

– Remove closure plate for bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 210 .
– Release fasteners -arrows- and pull spoiler (bottom section) -2- towards front off bumper cover -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUD
with respect to the correctness of informatio



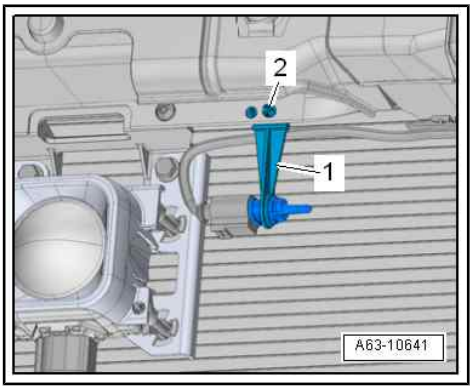
1.7.16 Removing and installing bracket for ambient temperature sensor - G17-

Removing

– Remove closure plate for bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 210 .
– Remove ambient temperature sensor ⇒ Rep. gr. 87 ; Further control components .
– Press out spreader pin -2- and detach bracket -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



1.7.17 Removing and installing moulded foam insert

- Observe safety precautions ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 00 ; Safety precautions; Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components .

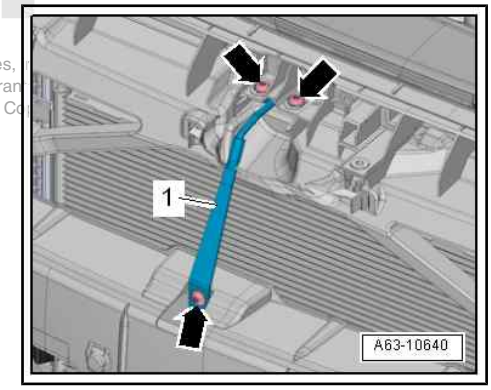
Removing

– Remove bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 202 .

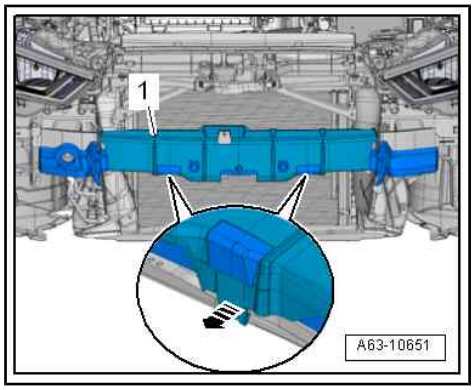
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach retainer -1-.

– If fitted, cut through cable tie at bracket for crash sensor for pedestrian protection.

Copyright by AUDI AG. This document is for private purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

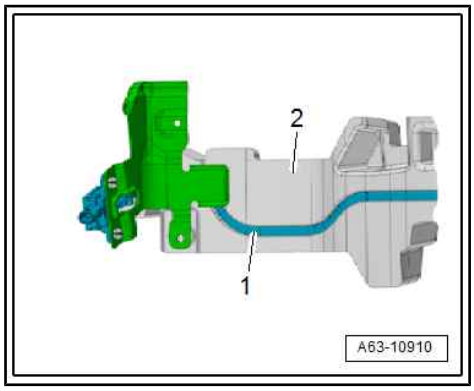


– Release retaining tabs -1- -arrow- and disengage moulded foam insert -2- from impact bar.



– Vehicles up to model year 2016: If fitted, move vacuum line -1- clear at moulded foam insert -2-.

– Detach moulded foam insert.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Vehicles up to model year 2016:

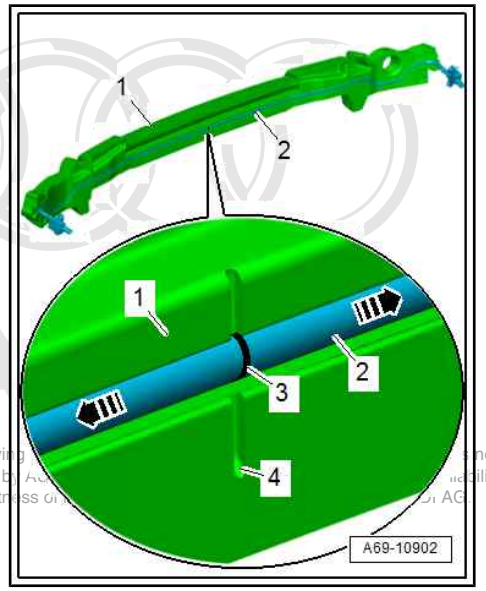
– Insert pressure hose -2- centrally in recess in moulded foam insert -1-, ensuring that coloured marking -3- is aligned with marking -4- on moulded foam insert.

– Insert pressure hose into recess in moulded foam insert evenly in both directions -arrows-.

WARNING

Risk of damage to pressure hose (may become deformed)

- ***Never kink or stretch pressure hose.***

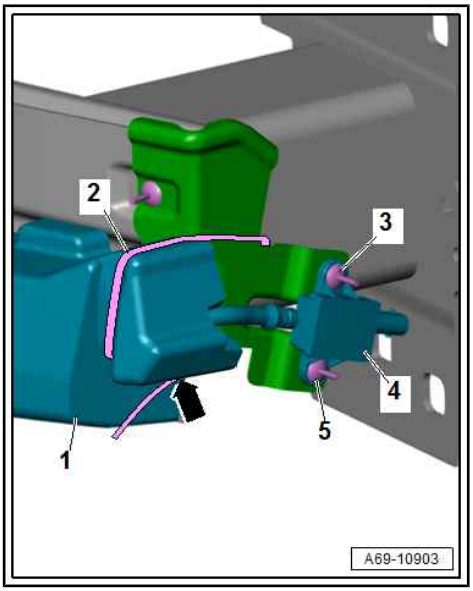


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

– Secure moulded foam insert -1- to bracket on both sides with cable ties -2-; cable tie fastener -arrow- must be located at bottom of moulded foam insert.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ Item 6 (page 27) .



2 Bumper (rear)

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 222

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - impact bar”, page 227

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing bumper cover”, page 228

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing impact bar”, page 230

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing attachments”, page 232

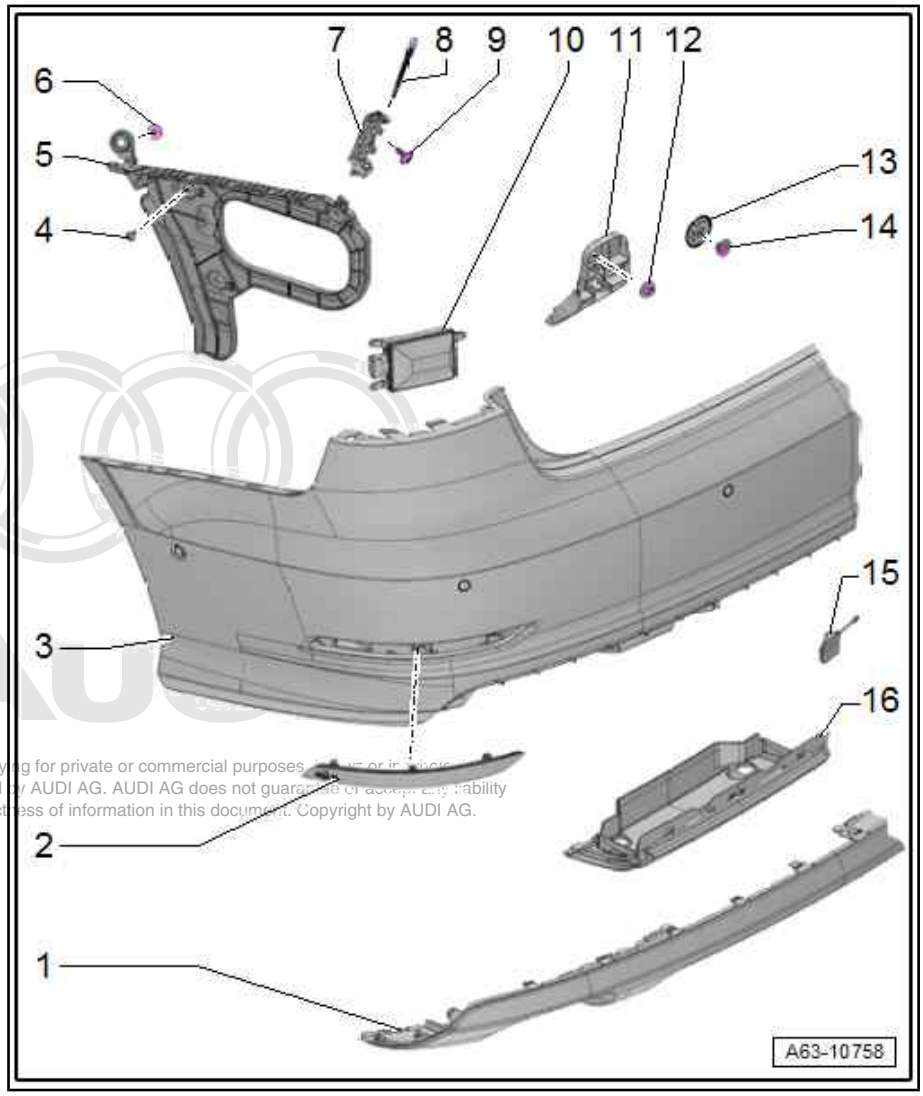
2.1 Exploded view - bumper cover

⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover, A3 (basic version) up to model year 2016”, page 222

⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - bumper cover, A3 S line and S3 up to model year 2016”, page 224

⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - bumper cover, vehicles from model year 2017 onwards”, page 225

2.1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover, A3 (basic version) up to model year 2016



1 - Bumper cover (bottom section)

- ❑ Different versions ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 233

2 - Reflector

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 228

3 - Bumper cover (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 228

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 223

5 - Mounting (side)

- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 233

6 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 223

7 - Guide (top)

- ❑ For securing bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 232

8 - Locking mechanism

- ❑ For securing bumper cover (rear) to guide (top)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 223

10 - Lane change assist control unit

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

11 - Mounting

- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 234

12 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

13 - Cover

- ❑ 2x

14 - Nut

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 5 Nm

15 - Cover

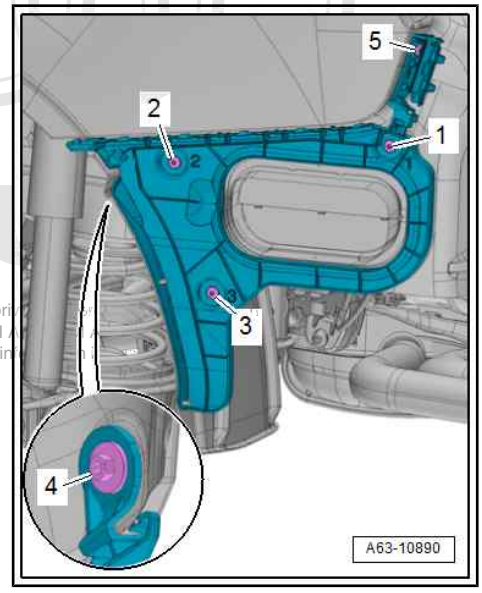
- ❑ For towing eye

16 - Cover

- ❑ At towing bracket
- ❑ Depending on equipment version

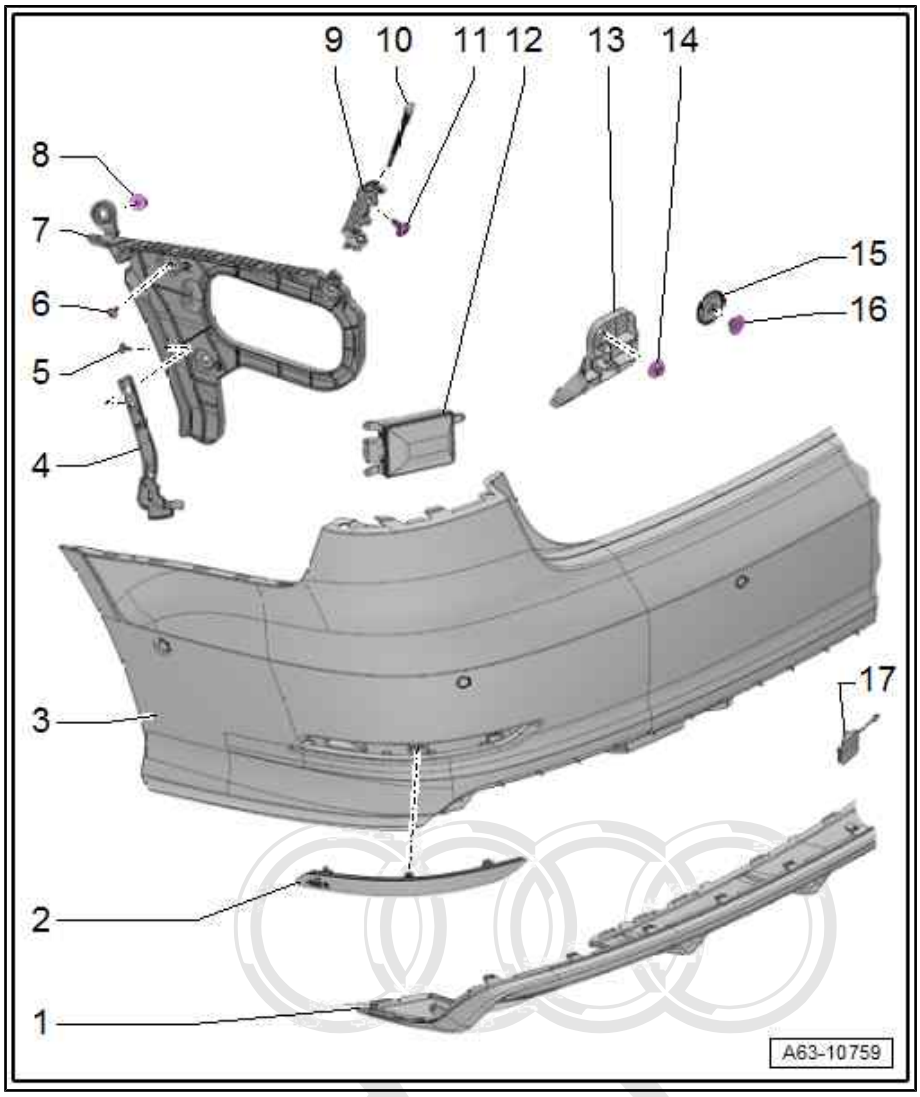
Bumper cover mounting (side) - tightening torque and sequence

- ♦ Tighten bolts -1, 2, 3, 5- to 3 Nm.
- ♦ Tighten nut -4- to 2.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for pri
permitted unless authorised by AUDI
with respect to the correctness of in

2.1.2 Exploded view - bumper cover, A3 S line and S3 up to model year 2016



1 - Bumper cover (bottom section)
- ❑ Different versions ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 233

2 - Reflector
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 228

3 - Bumper cover (rear)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 228

4 - Cover

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 2 Nm

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 223

7 - Mounting (side)
- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 233

8 - Nut
- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 223

9 - Guide (top)
- ❑ For securing bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 232

10 - Locking mechanism
- ❑ For securing bumper cover (rear) to mounting (top)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 223

12 - Lane change assist control unit
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

13 - Mounting
- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 234

14 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

15 - Cover
- ❑ 2x

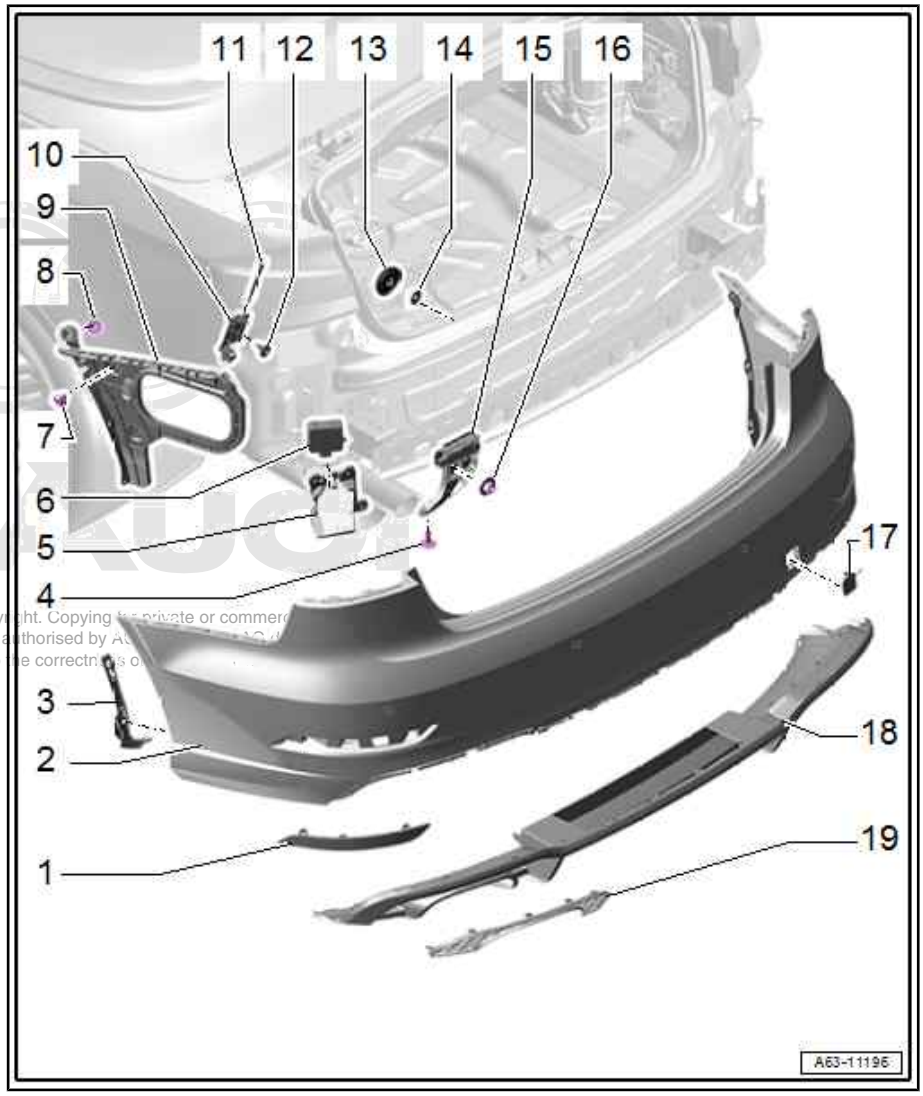
16 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5 Nm

17 - Cover

- ❑ For towing eye

2.1.3 Exploded view - bumper cover, vehicles from model year 2017 onwards



1 - Reflector

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 228

2 - Bumper cover (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 228

3 - Cover

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - Mounting

- ❑ For lane change assist control unit

6 - Lane change assist control unit

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 223

8 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 223

9 - Mounting (side)

- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 233

10 - Guide (top)

- ❑ For securing bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 232

11 - Locking mechanism

- ❑ For securing bumper cover (rear) to mounting (top)

12 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 223

13 - Cover

- ❑ 2x

14 - Nut

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 5 Nm

15 - Mounting

- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 234

16 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

17 - Cover

- ❑ For towing eye

18 - Bumper cover (bottom section)

- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 233

19 - Trim

- ❑ S line version only
- ❑ For bumper cover (bottom section)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 234

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Exploded view - impact bar

1 - Nut
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing

2 - Impact bar
- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ For vehicles with towing bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 230

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 75 Nm

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 23 Nm

5 - Impact bar
- ❑ For vehicles without towing bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 230

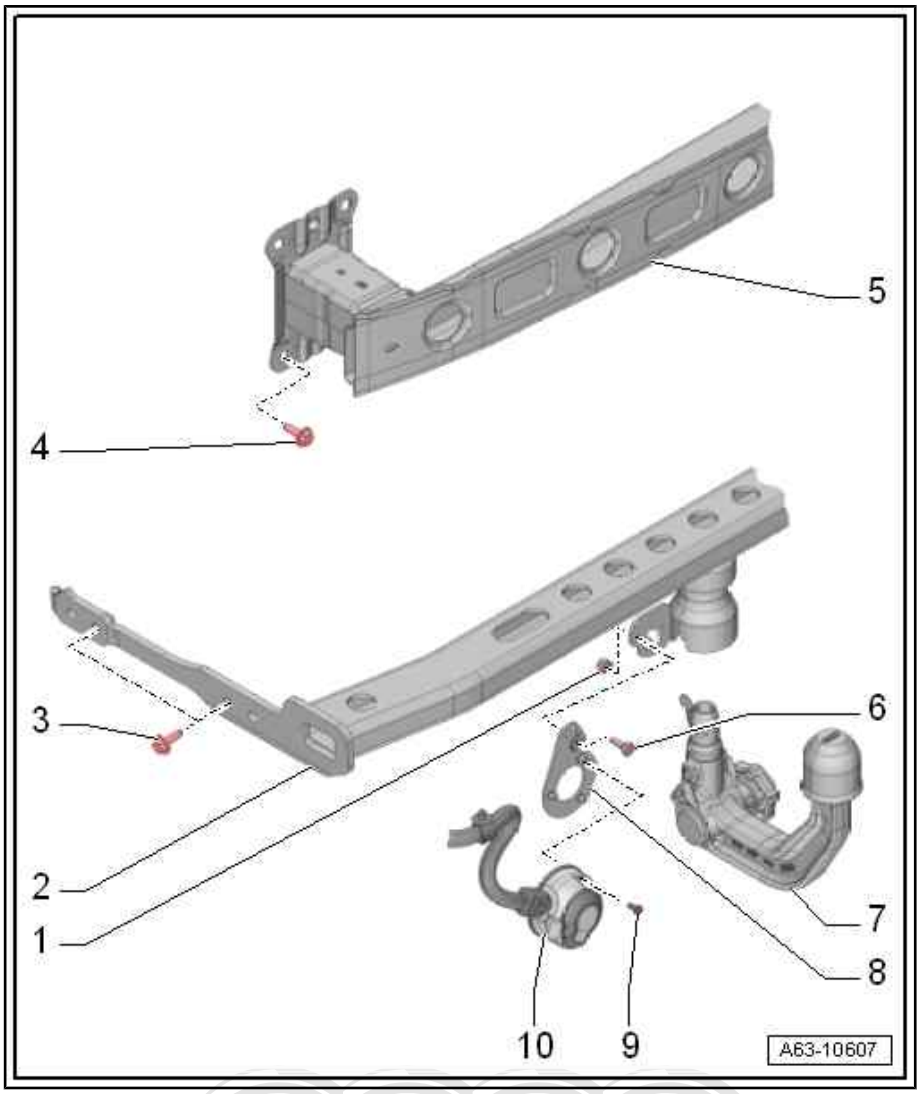
6 - Bolt

7 - Towing bracket

8 - Mounting
- ❑ For socket

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

10 - Socket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Towing bracket; Overview - trailer socket, trailer detector control unit
- ❑ Pin assignment ⇒ Electrical system; General information; Rep. gr. 96 ; Towing bracket



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Removing and installing bumper cover

⇒ “2.3.1 Removing and installing reflector”, page 228

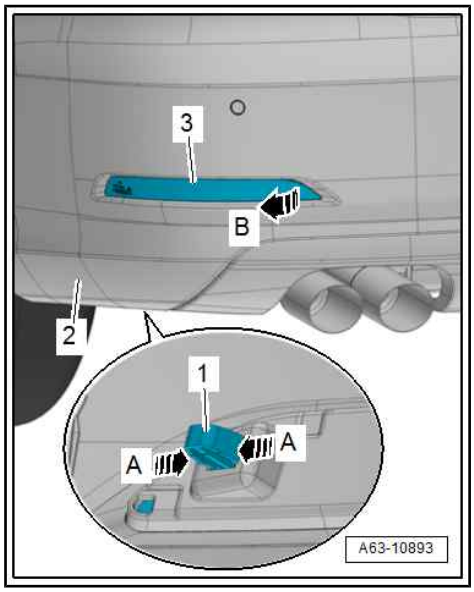
⇒ “2.3.2 Removing and installing bumper cover”, page 228

2.3.1 Removing and installing reflector

Removing

– Release fasteners -1- -arrows A-.

– Disengage reflector -3- from bumper cover -2- in direction of -arrow B-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

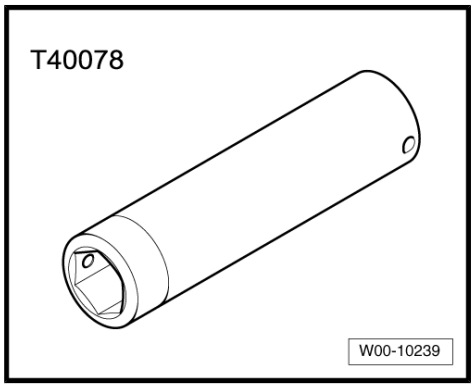
2.3.2 Removing and installing bumper cover

• Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary ⇒ page 230 .

Copyright by AUDI AG. Distribution to third parties and reproduction of this part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Socket - T40078-

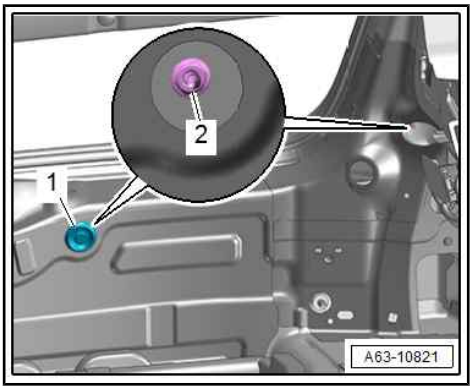


Removing

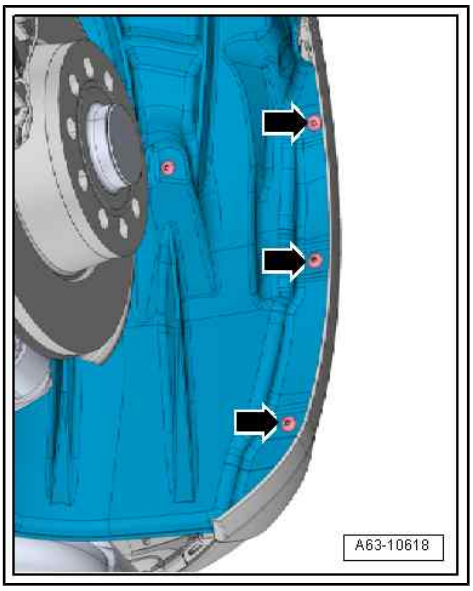
– Remove tail lights ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Tail light cluster; Removing and installing tail light cluster .

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels .

– Pull off cover -1-.
– Unscrew nut -2- using socket - T40078- .

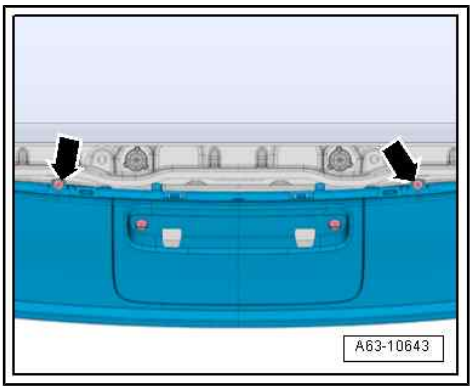


– Remove bolts -arrows-.

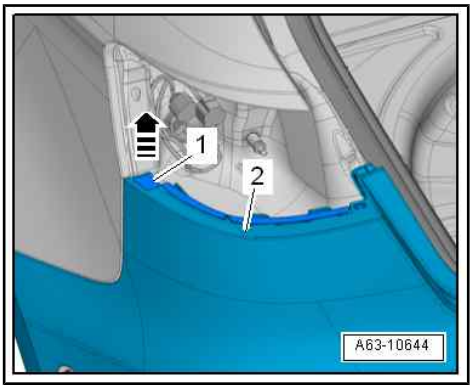


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

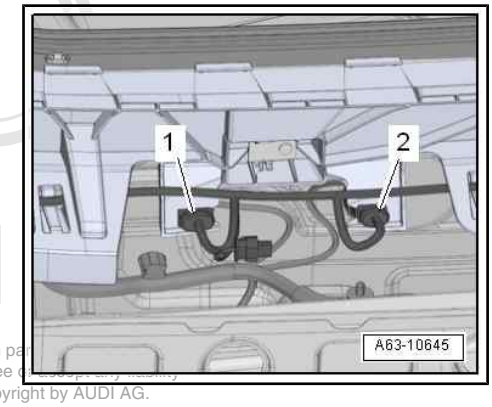


– Pull up locking mechanism -1- -arrow-.
– Move electrical wiring harness clear.
– Detach side section outwards from side panel and pull bumper cover -2- off slightly.



– Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 2-.

– Set down bumper cover on a soft surface.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary:

– Calibrate lane change assist ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Calibrating lane change assist .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 222 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with regard to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4 Removing and installing impact bar

⇒ “2.4.1 Removing and installing impact bar - vehicles without towing bracket”, page 230

⇒ “2.4.2 Removing and installing impact bar - vehicles with manual towing bracket”, page 230

⇒ “2.4.3 Removing and installing impact bar - vehicles with electric towing bracket”, page 231

2.4.1 Removing and installing impact bar - vehicles without towing bracket

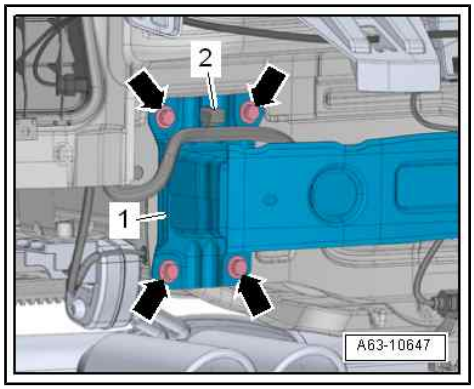
Removing

– Remove bumper cover (rear) ⇒ page 228 .

– Move electrical wiring harness -2- clear.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach impact bar -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - impact bar”, page 227 .

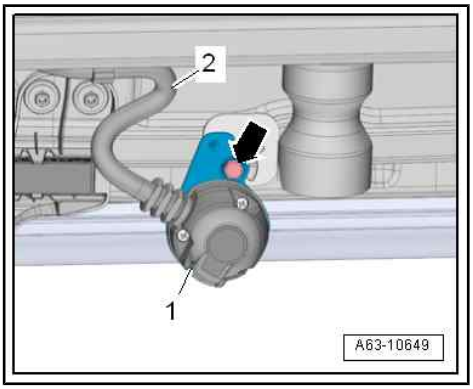
2.4.2 Removing and installing impact bar - vehicles with manual towing bracket

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 227 .
- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 231).

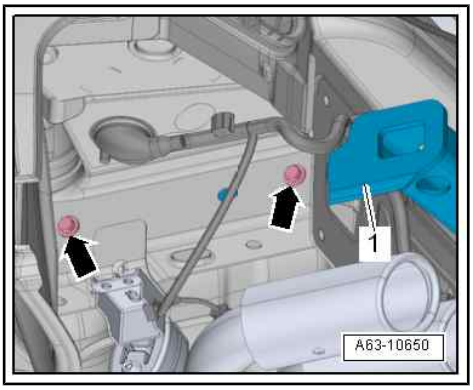
Removing

– Remove bumper cover (rear) ⇒ page 228 .

– Move electrical wiring harness -2- clear.
– Loosen bolted connection -arrow- at socket mounting -1-.



– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Pull out impact bar -1- with the help of a second mechanic.

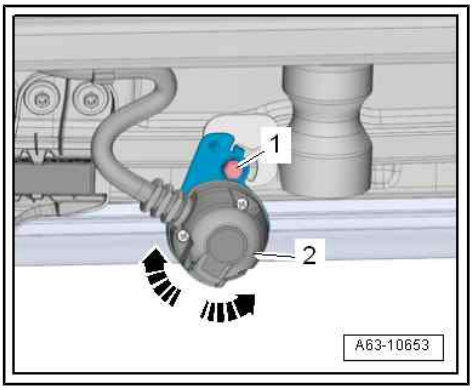


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Fit socket mounting -2- on impact bar and tighten bolted connection -1-.

- Socket mounting must be fitted so it can still just be turned -arrows- but is not loose.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - impact bar”, page 227 .
◆ ⇒ “6.1 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front)”, page 301 .

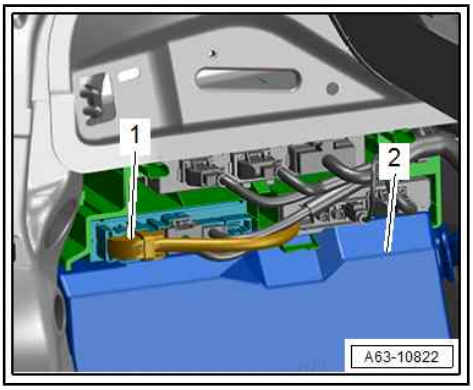
2.4.3 Removing and installing impact bar - vehicles with electric towing bracket

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 232).

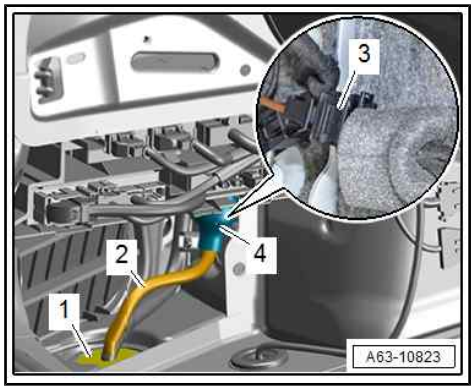
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

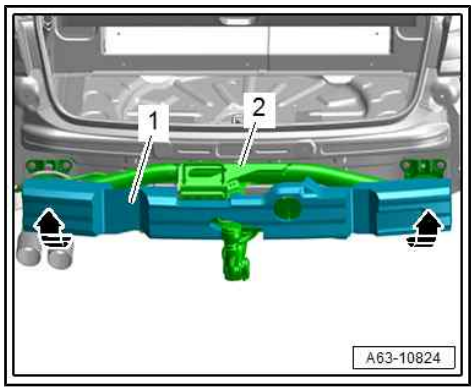
– Remove bumper cover (rear) ⇒ page 228 .
– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Remove hydraulic pump -2- and move it to one side.



– Slide protective foam element -4- back and unplug electrical connector -3-.
– Push grommet -1- through to other side and guide out wiring harness -2-.



– Release towing bracket using button and extend it.
– Remove moulded foam insert -1- by pivoting it upwards -arrows- off impact bar -2-.
– Move wiring harness clear.



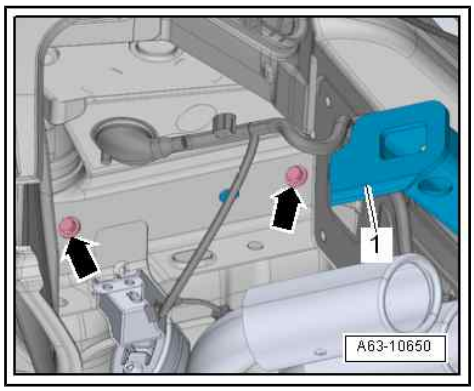
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Pull out impact bar -1- with the help of a second mechanic.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - impact bar”, page 227 .



2.5 Removing and installing attachments

⇒ “2.5.1 Removing and installing guide (top)”, page 232

⇒ “2.5.2 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting (side)”, page 233

⇒ “2.5.3 Removing and installing bumper cover (bottom section)”, page 233

⇒ “2.5.4 Removing and installing trim for bumper cover (bottom section) - S line from model year 2017 onwards”, page 234

⇒ “2.5.5 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting”, page 234

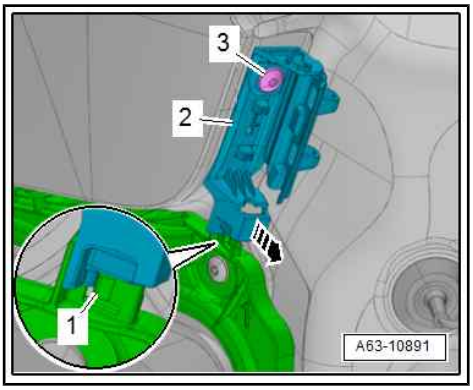
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5.1 Removing and installing guide (top)

Removing

– Remove bumper cover (rear) ⇒ page 228 .

– Remove bolt -3-.
– Release catch -1- and detach guide (top) -2- towards rear -arrow-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

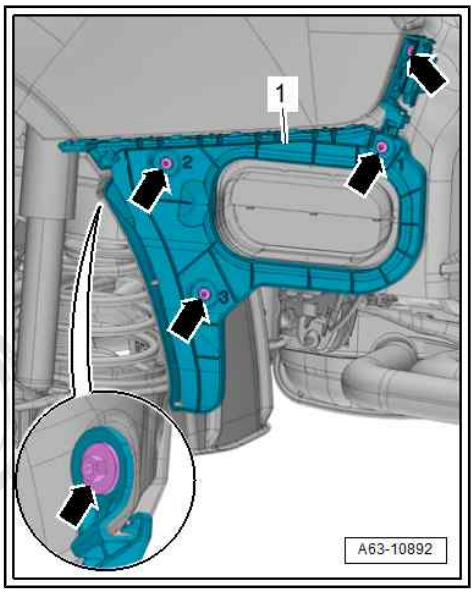
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ Fig. ""Bumper cover mounting (side) - tightening torque and sequence"" , page 223 .

2.5.2 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting (side)

Removing

– Remove bumper cover (rear) ⇒ page 228 .
– Unscrew bolts and nut -arrows-.
– Remove bumper cover mounting (side) -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

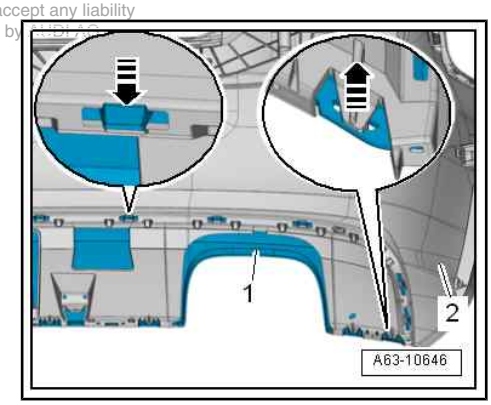
◆ ⇒ Fig. ""Bumper cover mounting (side) - tightening torque and sequence"" , page 223 .

2.5.3 Removing and installing bumper cover (bottom section)

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release fasteners -arrows- and pull bumper cover (bottom section) -1- off bumper cover -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

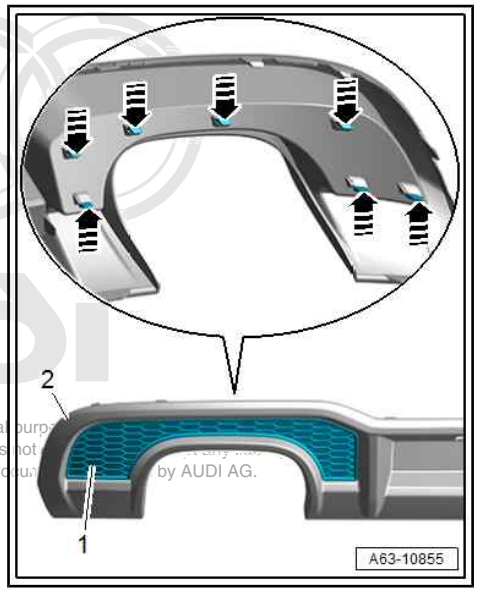
– Press bumper cover (bottom section) into bumper cover until it engages audibly.

2.5.4 Removing and installing trim for bumper cover (bottom section) - S line from model year 2017 onwards

Removing

– Remove bottom section of bumper cover ⇒ page 233 .

– Release fasteners -arrows- and pull trim -1- off bumper cover (bottom section) -2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

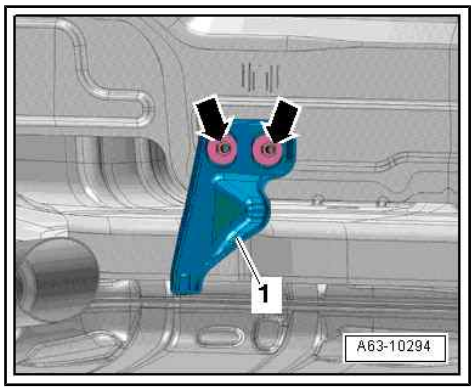
2.5.5 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting

Removing

– Remove bumper cover (rear) ⇒ page 228 .

– Unscrew nuts -arrows-.

– Remove bumper cover mounting -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 222 .

64 – Glazing

1 Notes on repairs

⇒ “1.1 Minimum drying times for flush-bonded windows”, page 235

⇒ “1.2 Repairing windows”, page 235

⇒ “1.3 Notes on installing flush-bonded windows”, page 236

⇒ “1.4 Preparing undamaged windows for installation”, page 239

⇒ “1.5 Preparing new windows for installation”, page 239

⇒ “1.6 Preparing body flange for installation”, page 241

⇒ “1.7 Cleaning off adhesive sealant”, page 241

1.1 Minimum drying times for flush-bonded windows

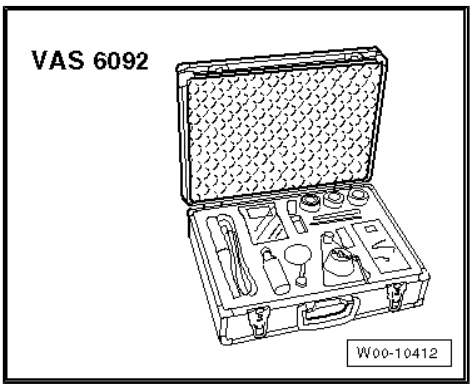
- For safety reasons, use only non-conductive 2-component adhesive with the designations listed below when installing the windscreen or rear window.
- You must NOT drive the vehicle until the minimum drying time has elapsed, as the vehicle is otherwise not safe to drive.
- During the minimum drying time the vehicle must be left standing on a level surface at room temperature (at least 15 °C).

Window	Vehicle	Adhesive sealant	Minimum drying time (in hours)
Windscreen	With airbag	2-component window adhesive - D 004 660 M2-	2
Rear window		2-component window adhesive - D 004 660 M2-	2
Side windows		1-component window adhesive - DH 009 100 03-	3

1.2 Repairing windows

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Windscreen repair kit - VAS 1993- or -VAS 6092-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

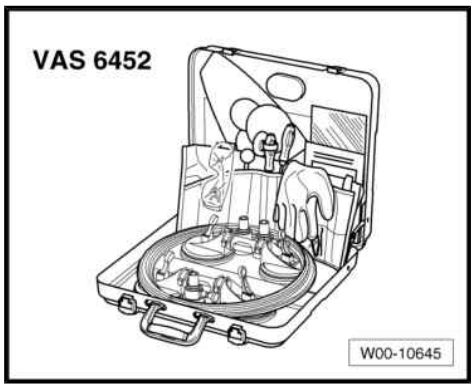
- *Windscreens damaged by stone chipping can be repaired using windscreen repair kit - VAS 6092- and resin, Talon - VAS 1993/2- .*
- *The damaged areas must not exceed a certain size and area, and must not be within the main field of vision.*
- *For detailed information, refer to the instructions supplied with each kit.*

1.3 Notes on installing flush-bonded windows

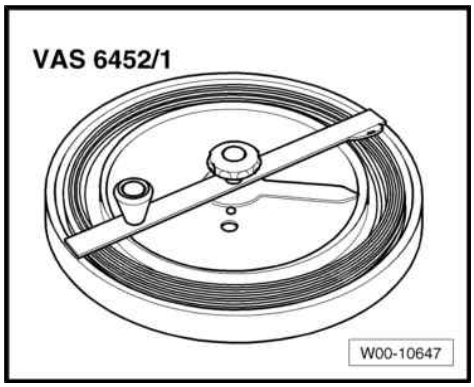
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

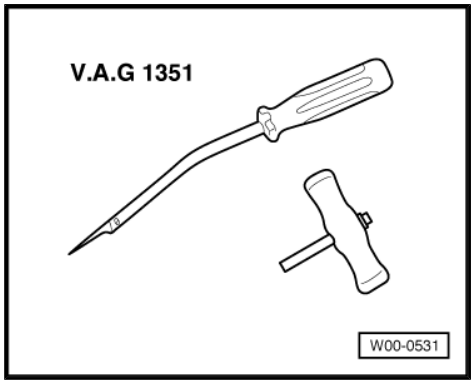
- Removal kit for flush bonded windows - VAS 6452-



- Wire reel - VAS 6452/1-

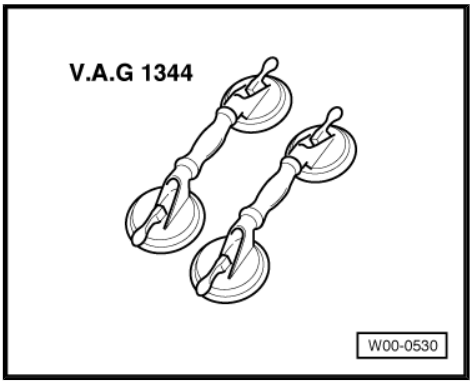


- Wire for removal kit - VAS 6452/2-
- Cutting tool - V.A.G 1351-

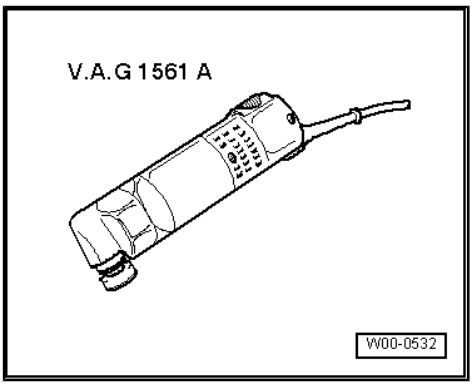


- Pull handle - V.A.G 1351/1-

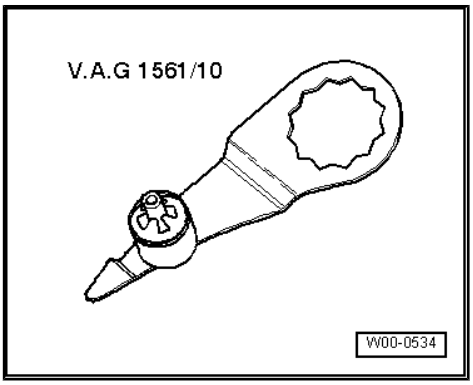
- Suction lifter - V.A.G 1344-



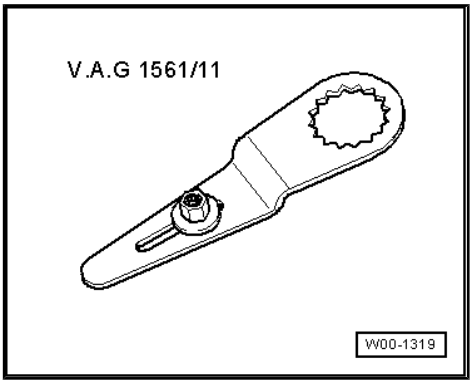
- Electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A-



- Blade, offset - V.A.G 1561/10-

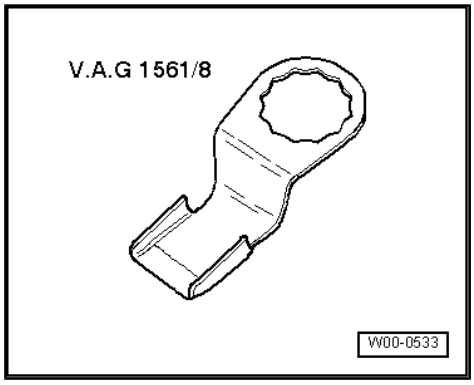


- Universal blade - V.A.G 1561/11-

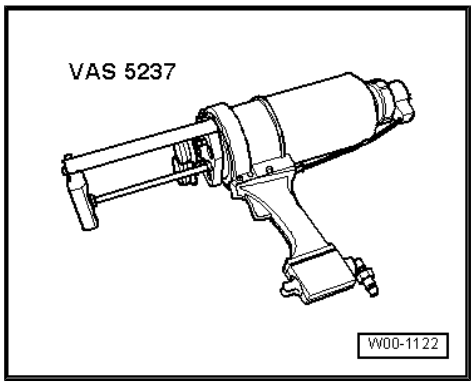


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

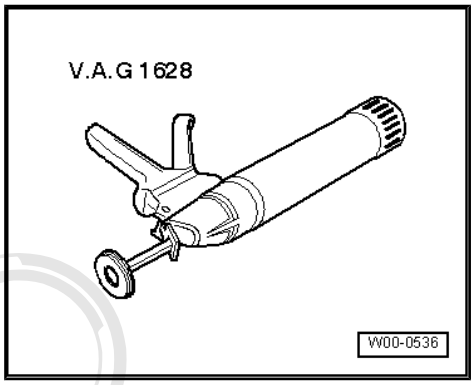
- Scraper, 15 and 25 mm - V.A.G 1561/7+8-



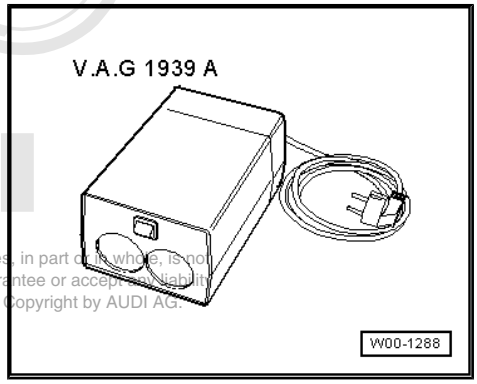
- Double cartridge gun - VAS 5237-



- Hand-cartridge gun - V.A.G 1628-



- Cartridge heater - V.A.G 1939A-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Materials

- 2-component window adhesive - D 004 660 M2- [1)]
- 1-component window adhesive - DH 009 100 A2- [4)]
- Glass/paint primer - D 009 200 02-

- Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-
- Applicator - D 009 500 25-
- Adhesive remover - D 002 000 10-
- Cutting wire - 6452/2- / cutting cord - 357 853 999-

1) Note minimum drying time ⇒ page 235 .

2) To process this material use double cartridge gun - VAS 5237- .

3) Heat using cartridge heater - V.A.G 1939A- according to manufacturer's instructions.

4) Small 180 ml cartridge for sealing and/or for use when the 400 ml double cartridge is not sufficient.

1.4 Preparing undamaged windows for installation

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Electric cutter - V.A.G 1561 A-
- Scraper (25 mm) - V.A.G 1561/8-

- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- Do not cut back bonding surface until shortly before installation.
- Do not apply primer to bonding surface and do not use cleaning solution.

– Just before re-installing an undamaged window, use electric cutter - V.A.G 1561 A- and scraper (25 mm) - V.A.G 1561/8- to cut back the remaining adhesive sealant on the window and flange to give a smooth surface, but do NOT remove completely.

Note

The remaining sealant is required as a base for better adhesion of the new adhesive sealant.

Applying adhesive ⇒ page 240

1.5 Preparing new windows for installation

– Clean all around bonding surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Wipe clean surface with a dry, lint-free paper towel.

- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- The glass must always be primed before applying adhesive sealant.
- The glass/paint primer is conductive and must not come into contact with the bus bar, e.g. of the rear window heating.
- The glass must be fitted within 15 minutes after applying the adhesive sealant.

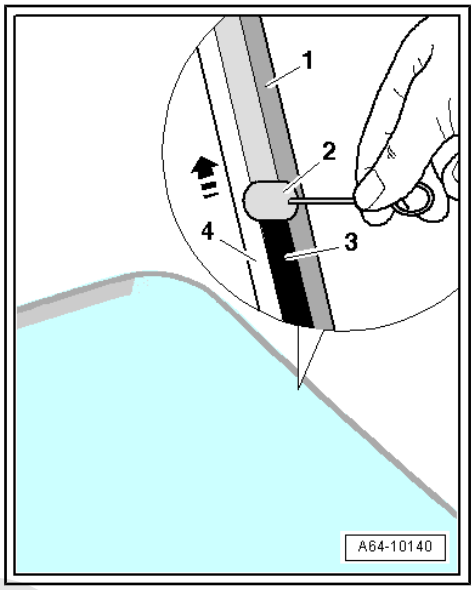
– Apply glass/paint primer - D 009 200 02- as described below.

Applying primer:

– Use applicator -2- to apply glass/paint primer -3- evenly and in one movement onto window -4- beside moulding -1-.

– Start application with fully soaked felt.

- Primer width approx. 20 mm
- Apply glass/paint primer centrally in relation to adhesive bead.
- Flash-off time: 10 minutes



Applying adhesive:

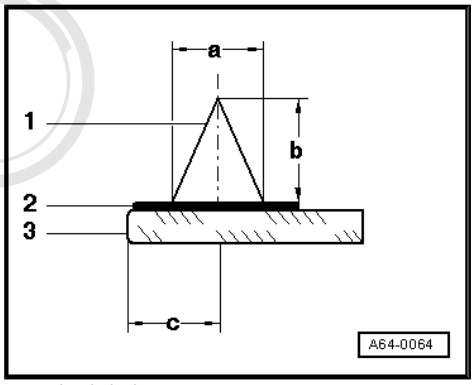
Dimensions for applying adhesive:

1 - Adhesive bead

2 - Glass/paint primer

3 - Window

- Dimension -a- = 8 ± 2.0 mm
- Dimension -b- = 13.5 ± 1.5 mm
- Dimension -c-: note different distances from edge of window ⇒ Item 3 (page 242) .



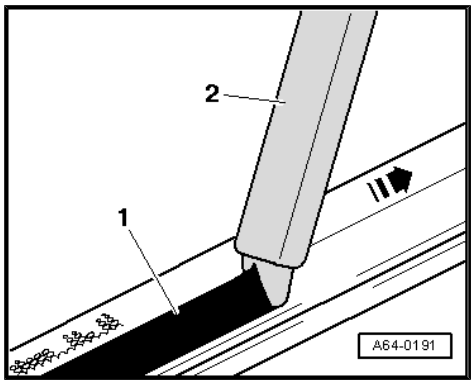
Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

The cross-section of the adhesive bead is determined by the nozzle opening and the rate of application.

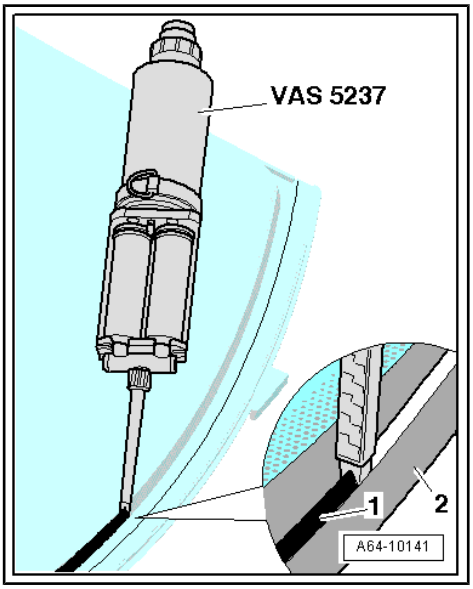
– Apply full surface of nozzle -2- to window.

- Direction of application -arrow- for adhesive bead -1-.



– Apply adhesive sealant -1- all around window -2-, as shown.

– Windscreen or rear window glass must be installed in opening using two suction lifters.



1.6 Preparing body flange for installation

- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- Do not cut back bonding surface until shortly before installation.

– Shortly before installing the window, cut back the remaining adhesive sealant on the body flange with a carpet knife, but do not remove it completely.

Note

The remaining sealant is required as a base for better adhesion of the new adhesive sealant.

– If window flange has been damaged, repaired or renewed, paintwork structure must be repaired and, if necessary, anti-corrosion measures must be taken ⇒ Audi Paintwork Guideline .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Clean repaired area using cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and then apply glass/paint primer - D 009 200 02- .

1.7 Cleaning off adhesive sealant

We recommend using adhesive remover - D 002 000 10- for cleaning. Always follow the safety instructions.

- When cleaning from inside the vehicle passenger compartment, make sure you do not exert outward pressure on the window you have just fitted.

Cleaning painted surfaces

– First clean painted surface with a dry cloth. Then clean off remaining adhesive sealant with adhesive remover - D 002 000 10- .

Cleaning plastic trim panels

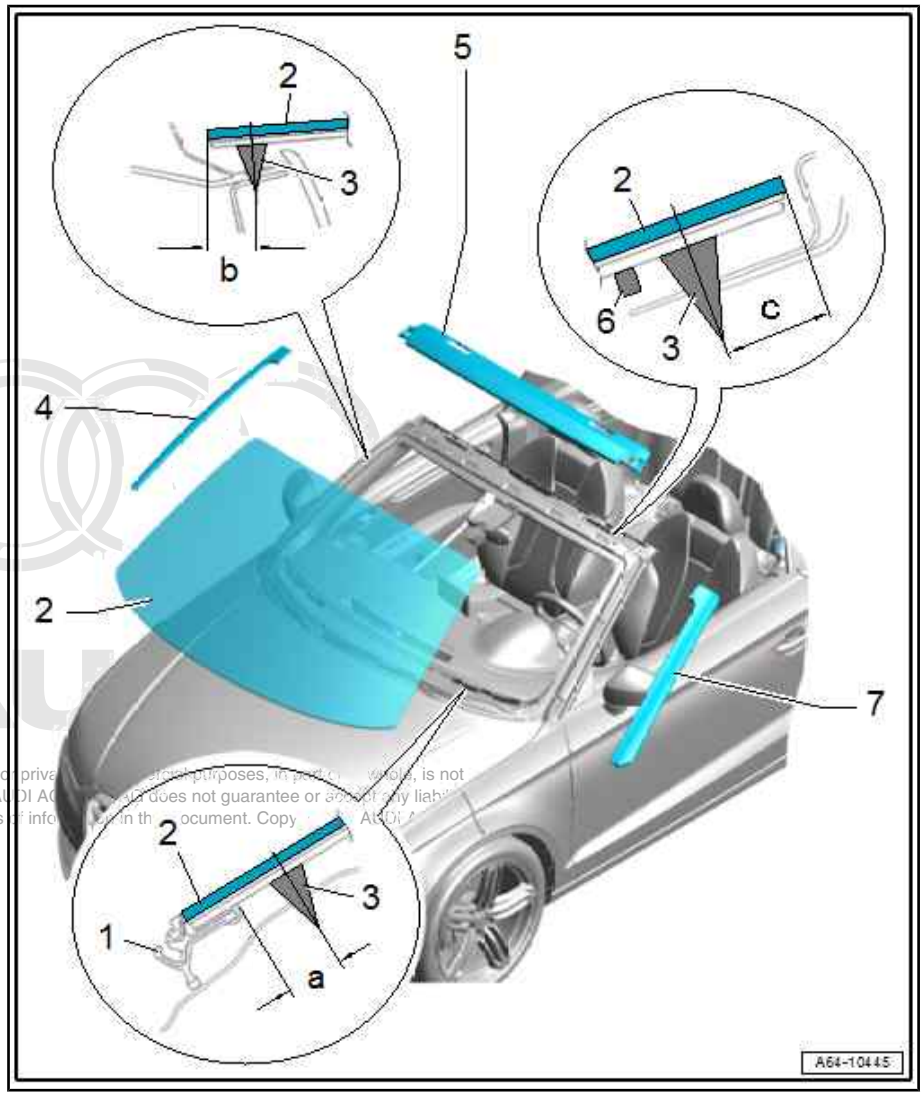
– Allow adhesive sealant to dry (approx. 1 hour) and then pull off.

2 Windscreen

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - windscreen”, page 242

⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing windscreen”, page 243

2.1 Exploded view - windscreen



1 - Retaining frame for cowl panel trim

- ❑ Fixed component of windscreen
- ❑ Not available as a separate replacement part
- ❑ With a new windscreen, protective beading must be pulled out before fitting cowl panel trim

2 - Windscreen

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 243
- ❑ Distance to windscreen frame (top) ⇒ page 243
- ❑ Align centrally between A-pillars

3 - Window adhesive

- ❑ Note minimum drying time ⇒ page 235
- ❑ Note different distances from edge of windscreen:

◆ Dimension -a- = 10.9 ± 2 mm

◆ Dimension -b- = 8.9 ± 2 mm

◆ Dimension -c- = 9.2 ± 2 mm

4 - Trim for windscreen frame (right-side)

- ❑ Do not install until window adhesive has dried
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 278

5 - Trim for windscreen frame

6 - Spacer

7 - Trim for windscreen frame (left-side)

- ❑ Do not install until window adhesive has dried
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 278

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

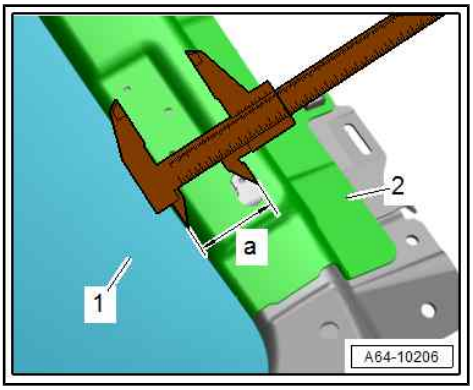
Adjusting height of windscreen

– When installing, align windscreen -1- centrally and adjust dimension -a-.

• Dimension -a- = 40 mm

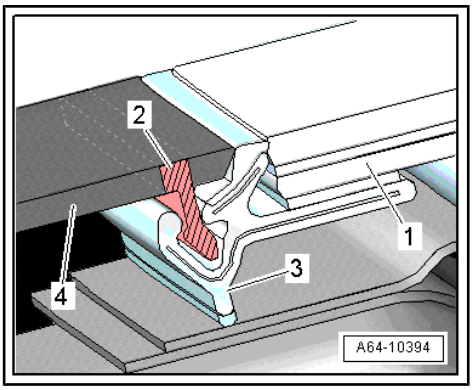
– Prevent windscreen from sliding down with an adjusting wedge at bottom of windscreen.

– Secure windscreen to top of windscreen frame with adhesive tape.



Removing protective beading

– Before fitting plenum chamber cover -4- when new windscreen -1- is installed, protective beading -2- must be removed from surround -3-.



2.2 Removing and installing windscreen

• Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary ⇒ page 247 .

Removing

– Remove wiper arms ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen wiper system; Removing and installing wiper arms .

– Remove plenum chamber cover ⇒ page 23 .

– Remove trim for windscreen frame ⇒ page 279 .

– Remove interior mirror ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Interior mirror; Exploded view - interior mirror .

WARNING

Risk of injury to hands and eyes due to glass splinters.

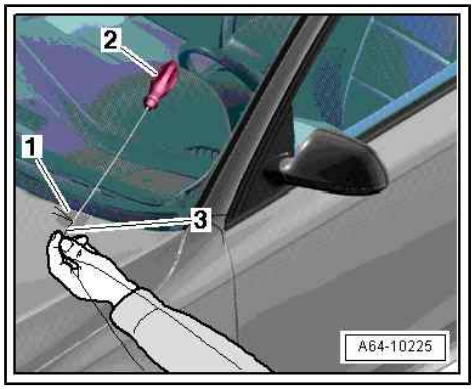
Danger of cutting yourself.

- ***Wear safety goggles.***
- ***Wear protective gloves.***

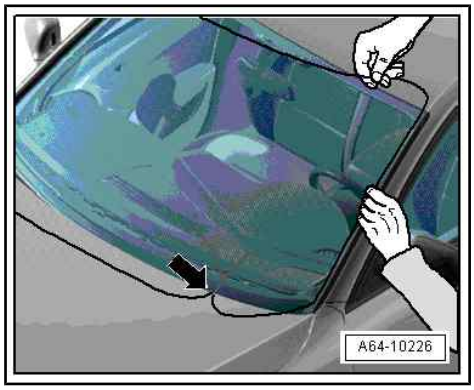
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Use wire reel - VAS 6452/1- to reel off about 6.50 metres of cutting wire (corresponding to 6 turns) and cut off.

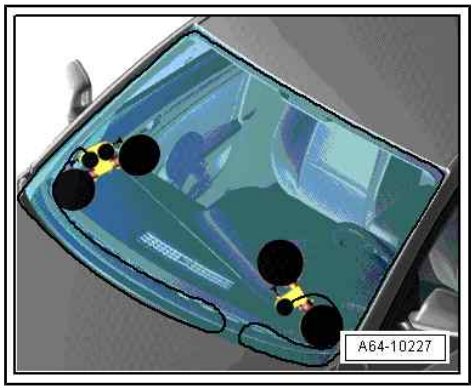
– Mask over body flange with adhesive tape -1- to avoid damage where awl is pushed through at the bottom.
– Pierce adhesive bead in this area with awl from inside to outside, as shown.
– Thread both ends of cutting wire -3- into awl -2- and pull through to the inside.



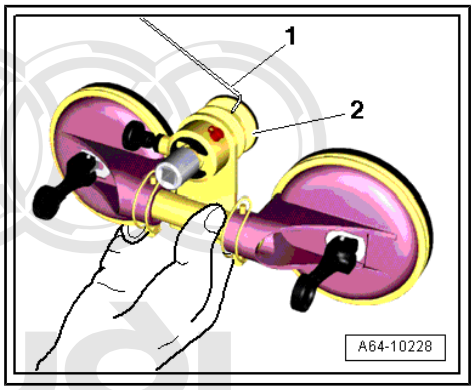
– Position cutting wire under glass all around windscreen, as shown.
• The wire ends must not be twisted at the point where they pass through the adhesive bead -arrow-.



– Attach both reels to inside of windscreen, as shown.

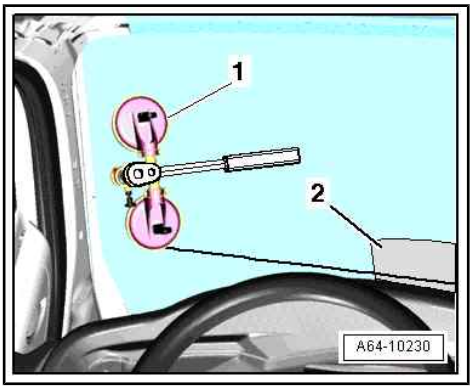


– Insert end of cutting wire -1- into reel -2-.

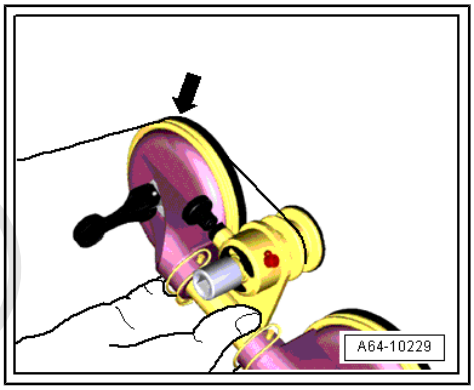


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Tension cutting wire and insert protective film -2- between dash panel and wire.

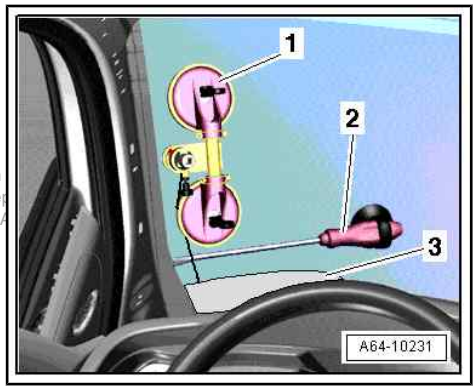


– Cut clear the first area. While doing so, wire is guided into integrated idler pulley -arrow- on reel.

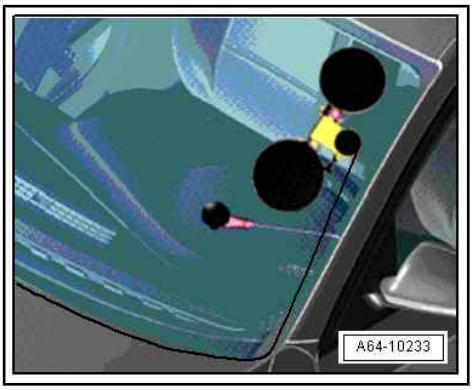


– Additionally insert guide awl -2- into adhesive bead, as shown, and attach it to windscreen using suction pad so that wire runs along windscreen as close to the glass as possible.
– Adjust protective film -3- as necessary with length of wire and continue cutting clear using reel -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accep
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by A



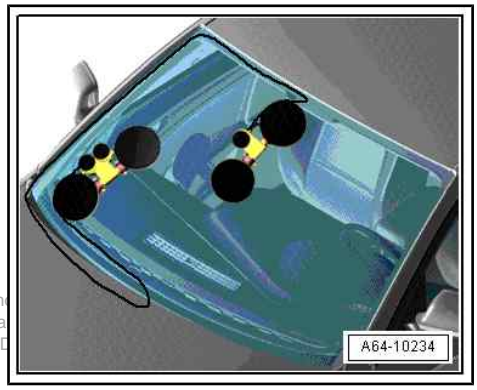
– Adjust reel and guide awl as shown, and cut clear area at A-pillar.
– Adjust reel and guide awl to approx. centre of windscreen, as shown.



– Cut windscreen clear approx. to centre.

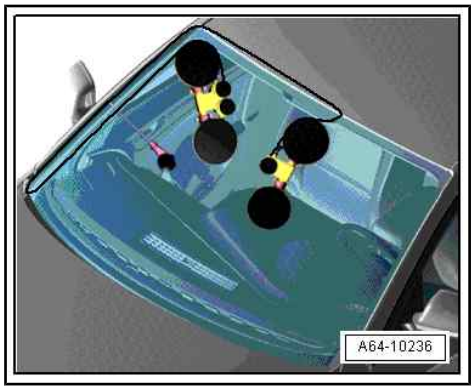


– Use second reel to cut clear bottom area of windscreen.

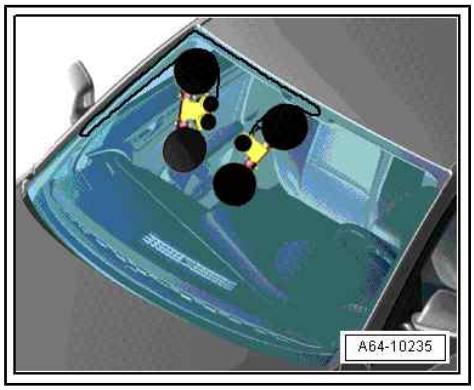


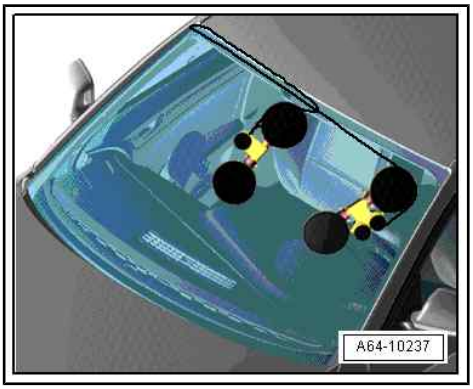
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in wh
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUD

– Move reel up and insert guide awl, as shown.



– Cut windscreen clear upwards along A-pillar.





– Adjust reel over centre of windscreen and adjust first reel as shown and cut windscreen fully clear at top.

– Lift windscreen out of vehicle using two suction lifters.

Installing

– Notes on installing ⇒ page 236

– Preparing undamaged windscreen for installation ⇒ page 239

– Preparing new windscreen for installation ⇒ page 239

– Preparing body flange for installation ⇒ page 241

– Using suction lifters, insert windscreen in opening and align centrally.

• Distance from edge of windscreen to roof frame ⇒ page 242

• Secure windscreen to roof at top with adhesive tape.

– Pull protective strip -2- out of windscreen surround before fitting plenum chamber cover ⇒ page 243 .

– Note minimum drying time ⇒ page 235 .

Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary:

– Calibrate front camera for driver assist systems ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 44 ; Front camera for driver assist systems .

Copyright by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Side windows

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - rear side window”, page 248

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing rear side window ”, page 248

⇒ “3.3 Adjusting rear side window ”, page 249

3.1 Exploded view - rear side window

1 - Window regulator

2 - Stop

- ❑ For rear side window
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 249

3 - Retaining bracket

- ❑ For side window

4 - Spacer sleeve

- ❑ 3x

5 - Side window

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 248
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 249

6 - Spacer

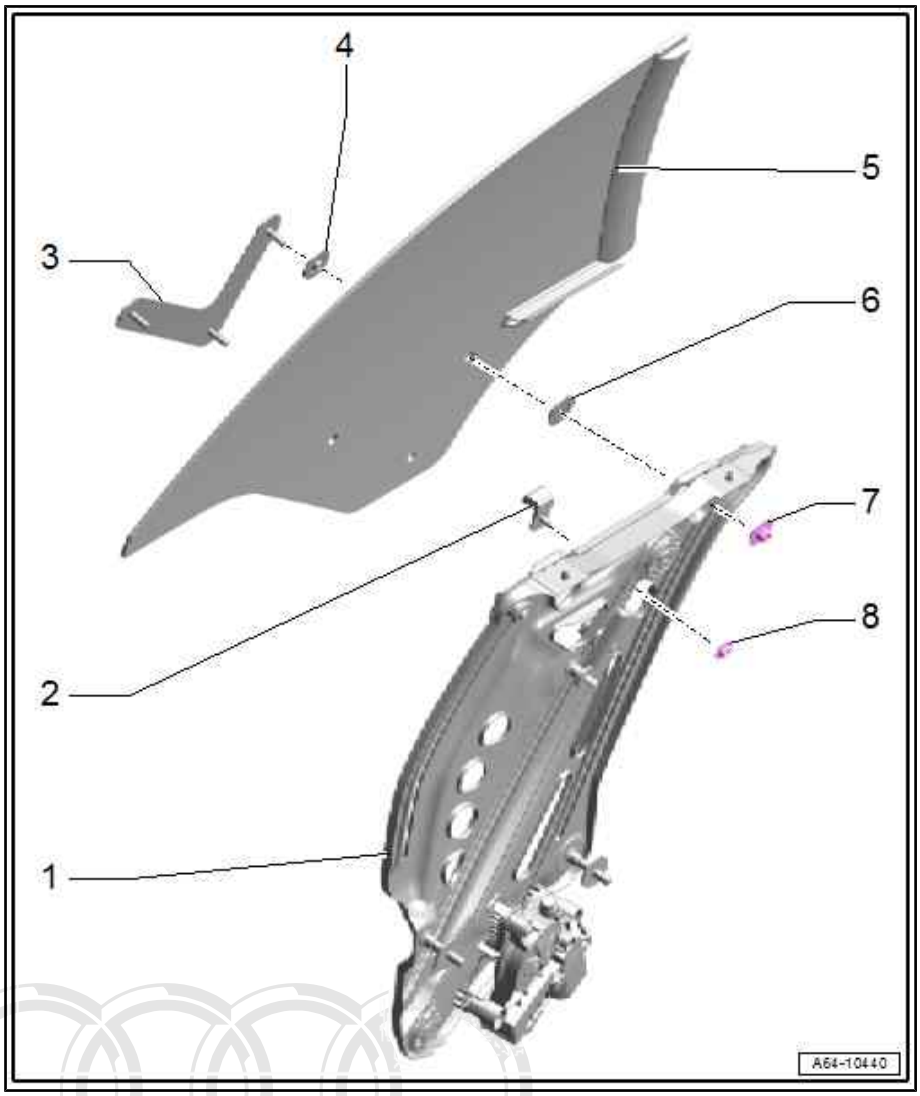
- ❑ 3x

7 - Nut

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

8 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 6 Nm



3.2 Removing and installing rear side window

⇒ “3.2.1 Removing and installing rear side window”, page 248

⇒ “3.2.2 Removing and installing stop for rear side window”, page 249

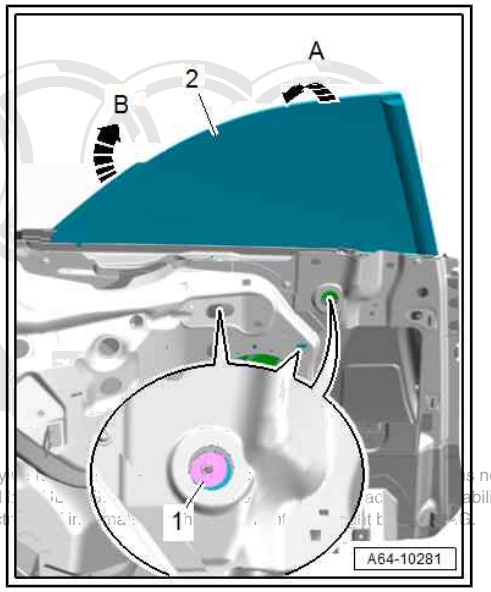
3.2.1 Removing and installing rear side window

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Move side window to “closed” position.

– Remove mounting for side window ⇒ page 120 .
– Remove nuts -1-.
– Tilt side window -2- towards interior of vehicle -arrow A- until threaded pins of retaining bracket for side window become disengaged from window regulator.
– Swivel side window towards top and rear out of body opening -arrow B-.



Note

If necessary, screw in adjuster screw for window regulator until side window can be disengaged.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Adjust side window ⇒ page 249 .

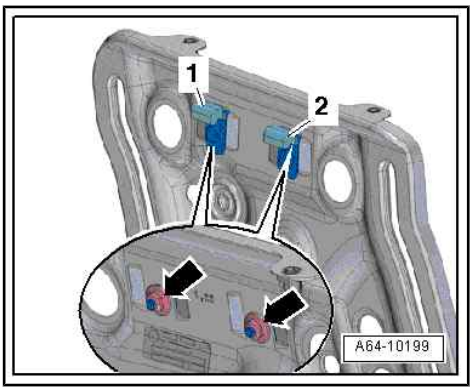
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - rear side window”, page 248 .

3.2.2 Removing and installing stop for rear side window

Removing

– Remove window regulator ⇒ page 117 .
– Remove rear side window ⇒ page 248 .
– Unscrew nuts -arrows- and remove stops -1 and 2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - rear side window”, page 248 .

3.3 Adjusting rear side window

⇒ “3.3.1 Adjustment dimensions”, page 249

⇒ “3.3.2 Adjusting rear side window”, page 251

3.3.1 Adjustment dimensions



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Slot dimension for inner cover at door window

Side window in pre-tensioned position (convertible roof closed, side trim removed)

-1- Inner cover

-2- Side window

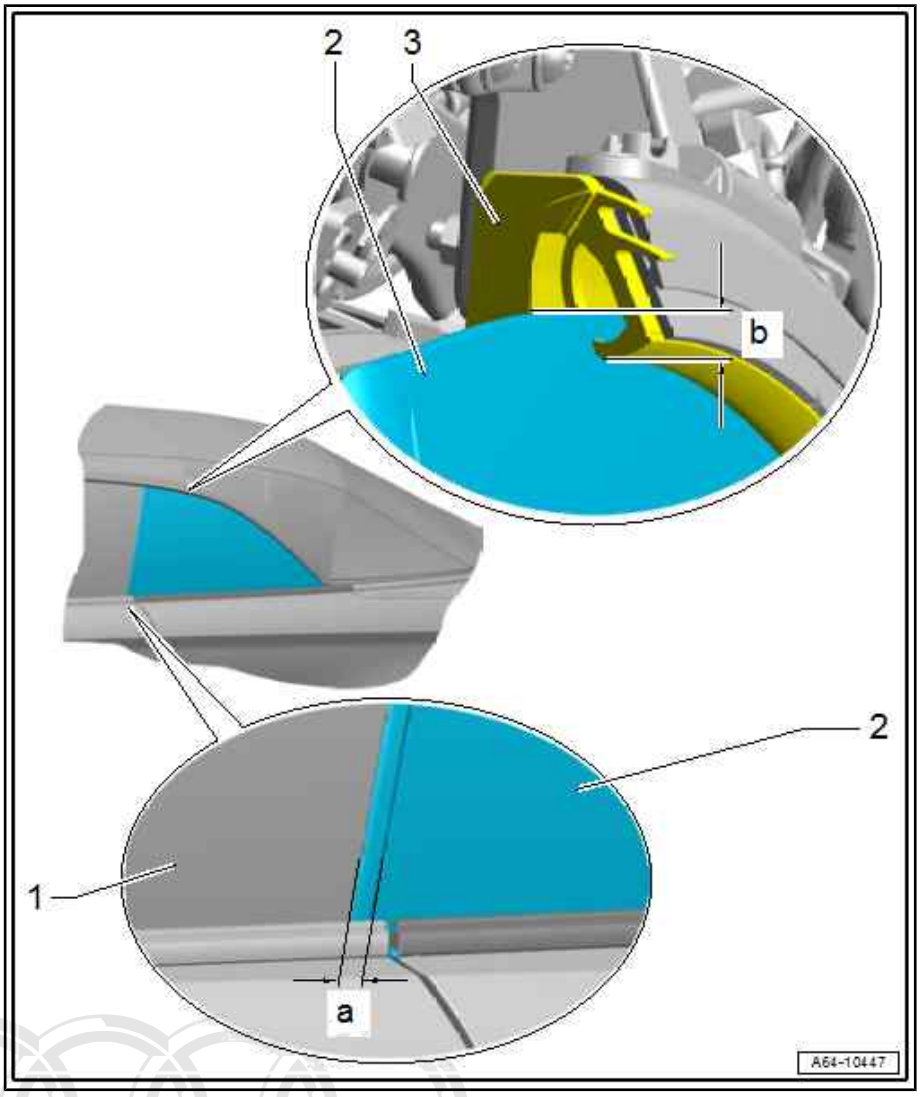
Slot dimension for door window

Side window in pre-tensioned position (convertible roof open, window slot trim strip (rear) removed)

-2- Side window

-3- Side panel (rear)

Door window immersion depth and gap widths



Door window to side window

Adjusting: lateral adjustment and height adjustment ⇒ page 249

-1- Door window

-2- Side window

Side window to convertible roof

To adjust, loosen nuts on mounting for side window ⇒ page 120 .

-2- Side window

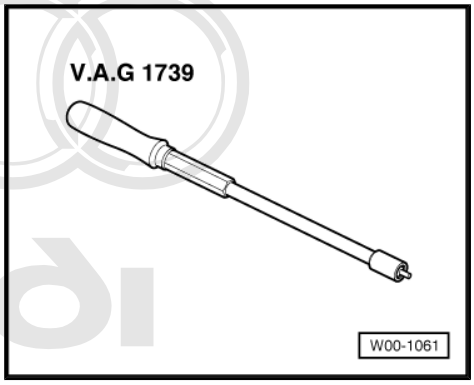
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

-3- Convertible roof seal

3.3.2 Adjusting rear side window

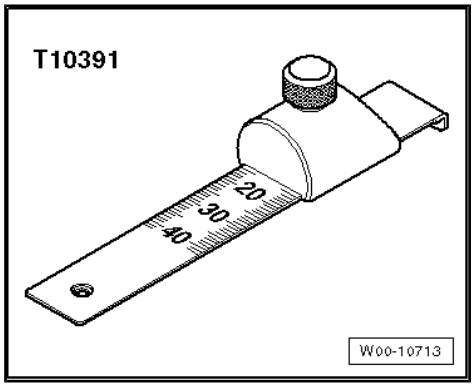
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Rear window adjusting tool - V.A.G 1739-

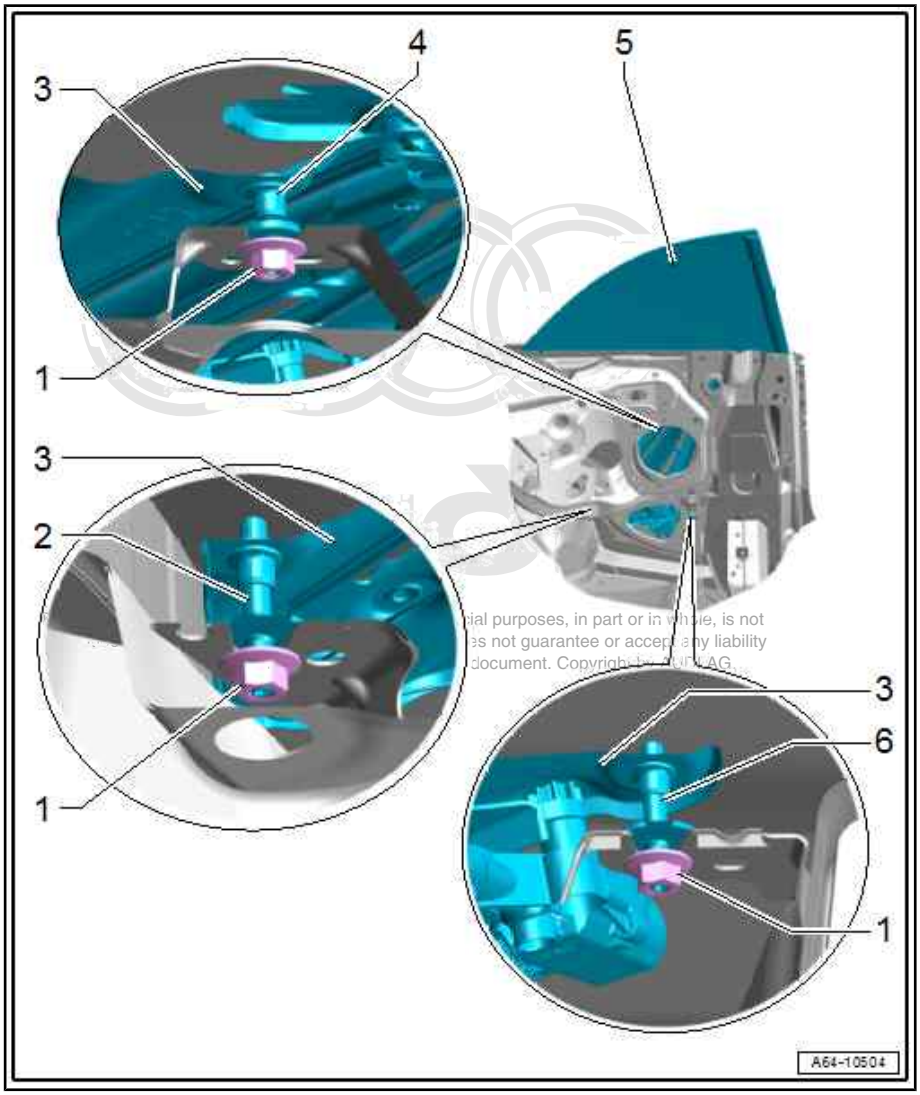


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Use this tool for lateral adjustment.
- Use this tool to adjust height.
- Gauge - T10391-



Lateral adjustment



Adjustment option - side window (rear edge)

For bringing top edge of side window -5- into contact with seal on convertible roof

Accessible after side trim (rear) has been removed ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim

– To adjust, loosen all lock nuts -1-.
– Turn adjusting pin -2- with Torx socket wrench.
– After adjusting, tighten lock nut -1- (tightening torque ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - rear side window”, page 248).

-3- Window regulator

Adjustment option - side window (top)

For bringing top edge of side window -5- into contact with seal on convertible roof

Accessible after side trim (rear) has been removed ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim

– To adjust, loosen all lock nuts -1-.
– Turn adjusting pin -4- with Torx socket wrench.

– After adjusting, tighten lock nuts -1- (tightening torque ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - rear side window”, page 248).

-3- Window regulator

Adjustment option - side window (front edge)

For bringing side window -5- into contact with door window (front)

Accessible after side trim (rear) has been removed ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim

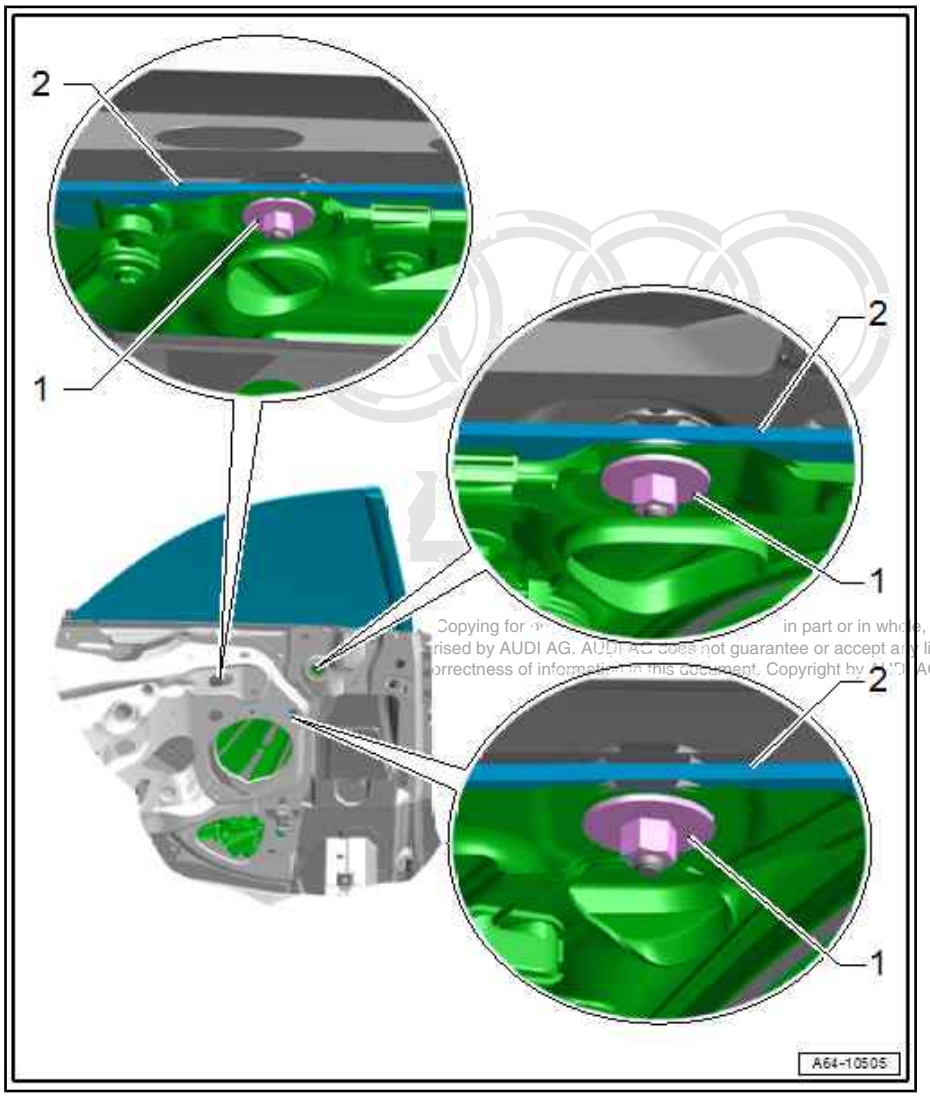
– To adjust, loosen all lock nuts -1-.

– Turn adjusting pin -6- with Torx socket wrench.

– After adjusting, tighten lock nuts -1- (tightening torque ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - rear side window”, page 248).

-3- Window regulator

Height adjustment



Copying for ... in part or in whole, is not ...rised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability ...orrectness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Adjustment option - side window

For bringing top edge of side window -2- into contact with seal on convertible roof

Accessible after side trim (rear) has been removed ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim

– To adjust height, loosen nuts -1- and move side window.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Door windows

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - front door window”, page 256

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing front door window”, page 256

⇒ “4.3 Adjusting front door window”, page 257

4.1 Exploded view - front door window

1 - Window regulator

2 - Bolt

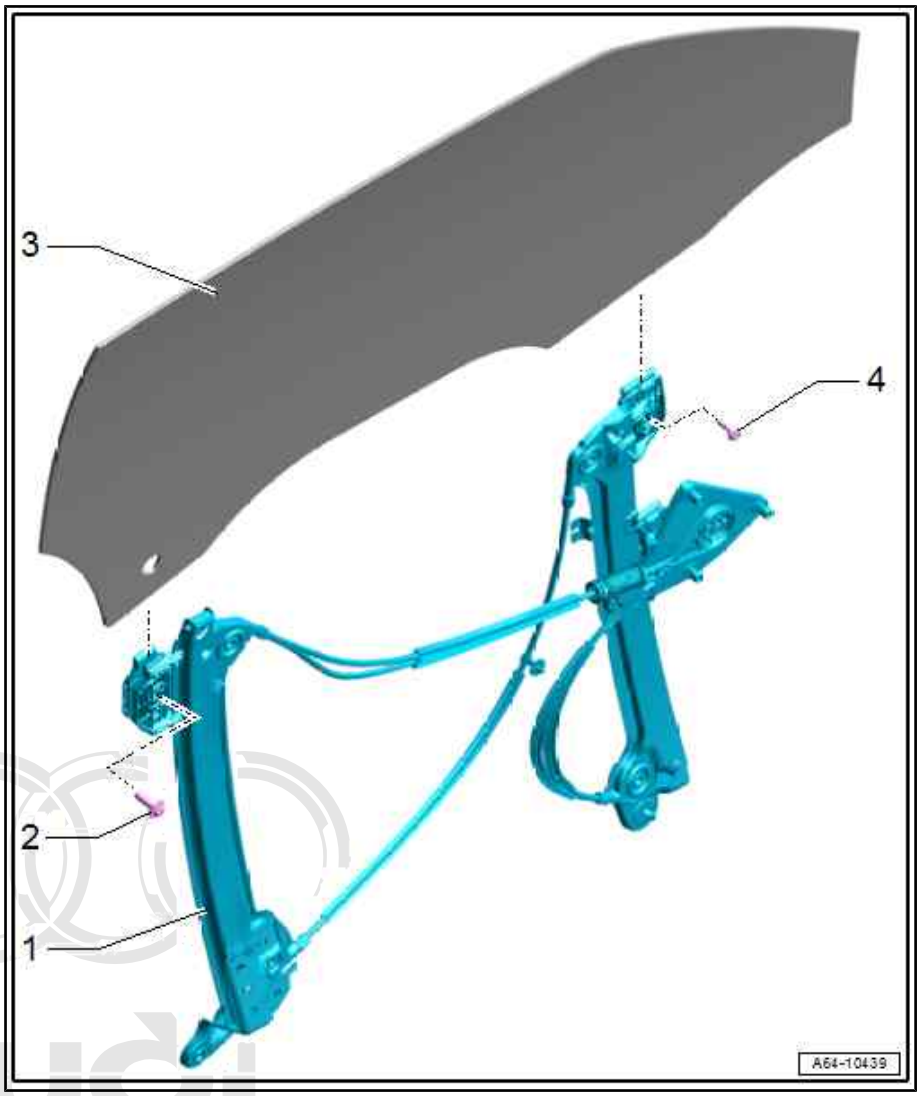
- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Door window

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 256
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 257

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm



4.2 Removing and installing front door window

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

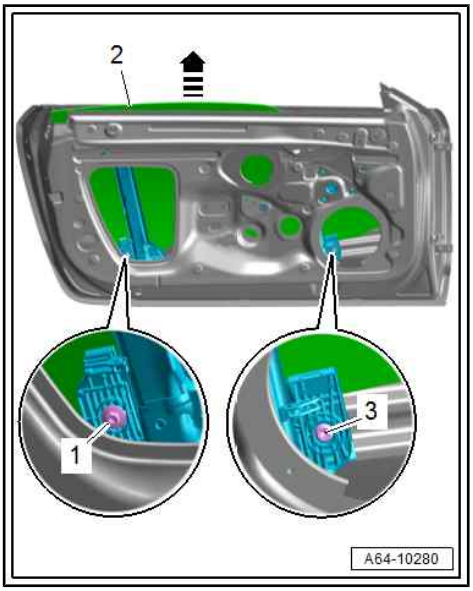
– Remove window regulator motor ⇒ page 97 .

– Remove bass loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .

– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 108 .

– Lower door window until bolts in opening are visible.

– Unscrew bolt -1- and loosen bolt -3- several turns.



Note

Pull out bolt -1- (rear) completely; otherwise door window cannot be removed.

– Swivel door window -2- (rear) to outside and out of mounting in clamping jaw.
– Pull door window upwards out of clamping jaws and lift out of door -arrow-.

Installing

• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 257 .

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Tilt door window forwards, insert it in door window guide and then rotate it into door slot.
– Push door window carefully and parallel downwards into clamping jaws. When doing so, make sure door window does not slip out of window guide (front).
– Press door window downwards into clamping jaws.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Before inserting rear bolt, check that door window is seated in mounting of clamping jaw.

– Tighten bolts.
– Adjust door window ⇒ page 257 .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - front door window”, page 256 .

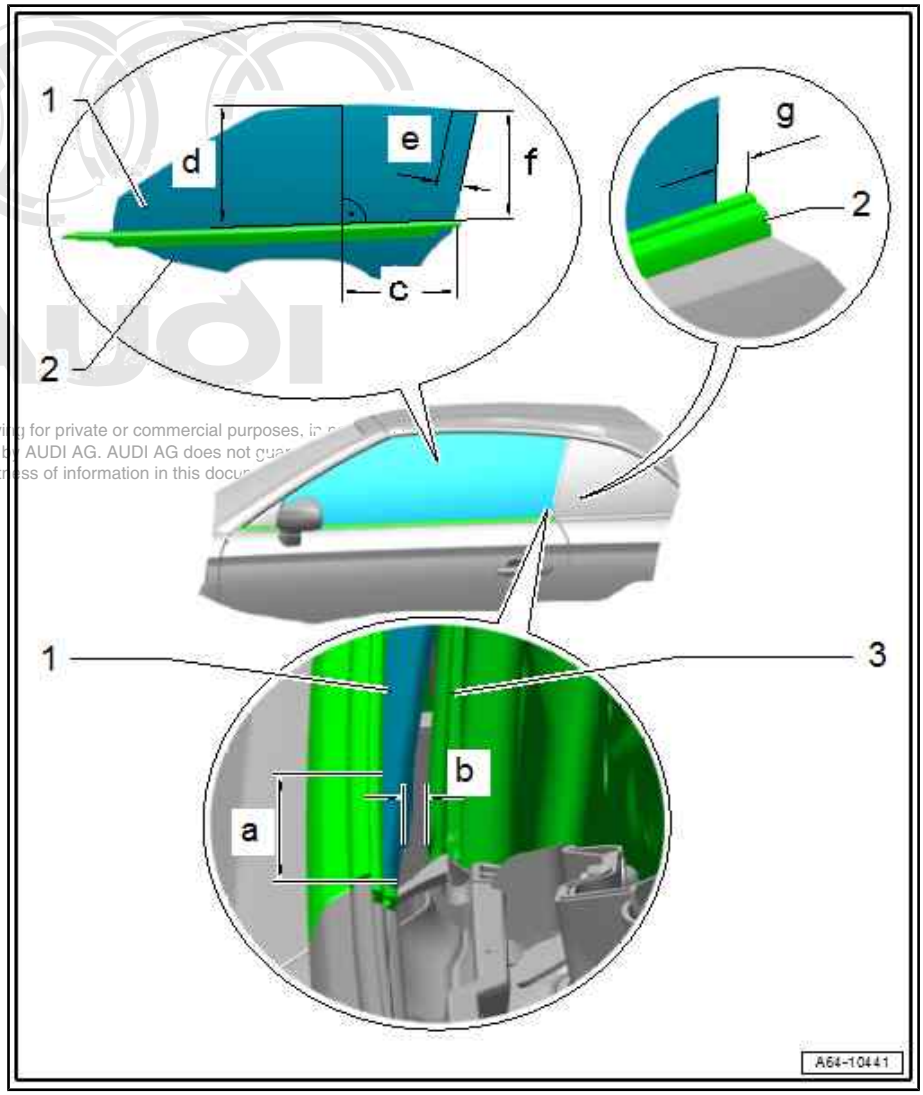
4.3 Adjusting front door window

⇒ “4.3.1 Adjustment dimensions”, page 257

⇒ “4.3.2 Adjusting door window”, page 260

4.3.1 Adjustment dimensions

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



Slot dimension for door window

Inspection dimension from outer edge of door window

Door window aligned correctly (door and convertible roof closed, window regulator in top position)

Door window in pre-tensioned position (door open)

Adjusting: lateral adjustment and height adjustment ⇒ page 257

-1- Door window

-3- Inside of door

Height dimension for door window

Inspection dimension from outer edge of door window

Adjustment dimension perpendicular to door window

Adjusting: lateral adjustment and height adjustment ⇒ page 257

-1- Door window

-2- Outer window slot trim strip

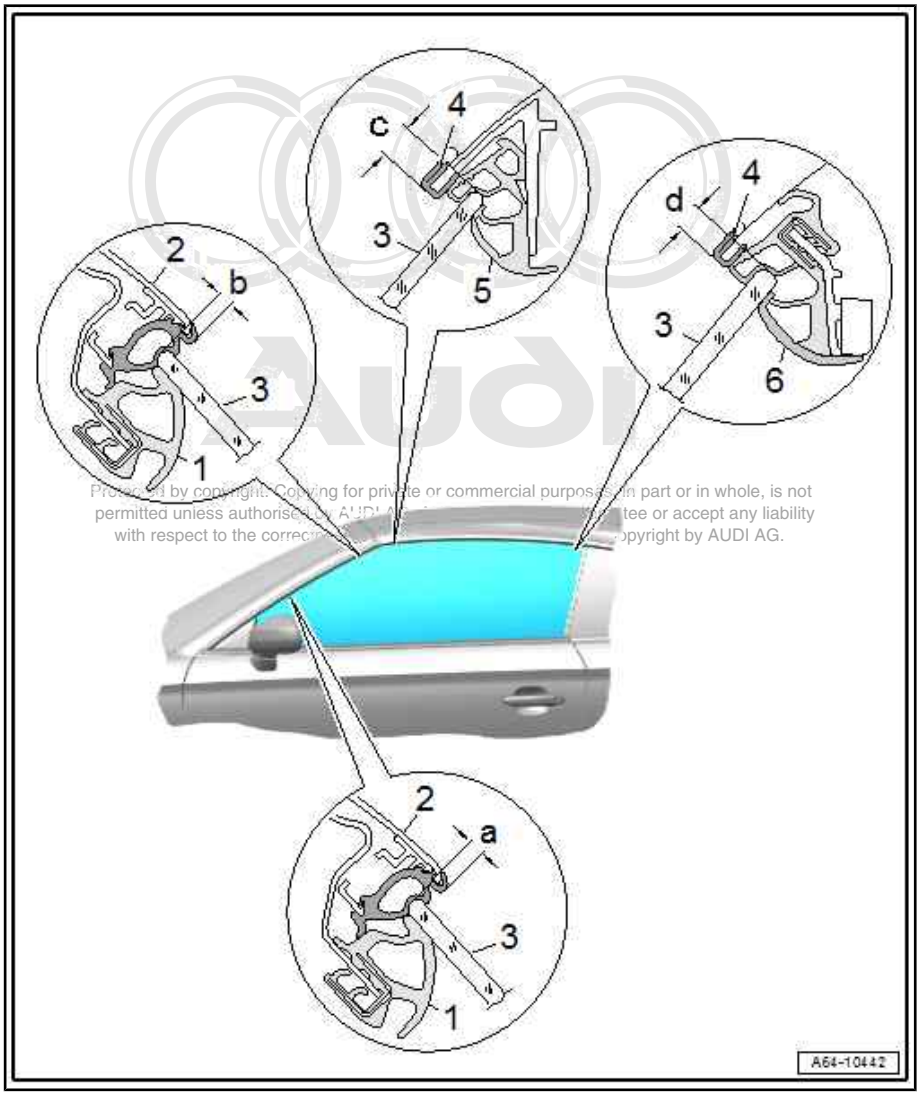
B-pillar, door window

Adjustment dimension for door window relative to outer edge of outer window slot trim strip

Adjusting: lateral adjustment and height adjustment ⇒ page 257

-2- Outer window slot trim strip

Door window immersion depth



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Door window to A-pillar (bottom)

-1- Door seal at A-pillar

-2- Side trim for windscreen frame

-3- Door window

Door window to A-pillar (top)

-1- Door seal at A-pillar

-2- Side trim for windscreen frame

-3- Door window

Front door window to convertible roof

-3- Door window

-4- Convertible roof cover

-5- Convertible roof seal (front)

Rear door window to convertible roof

-3- Door window

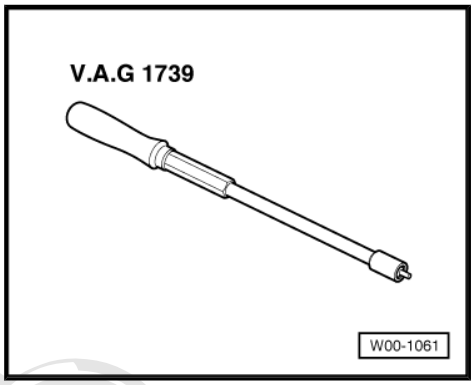
-4- Convertible roof cover

-6- Convertible roof seal (centre)

4.3.2 Adjusting door window

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Rear window adjusting tool - V.A.G 1739-

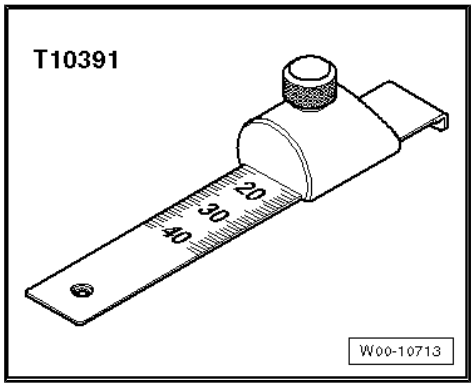


- Use this tool for lateral adjustment.
- Allen key, long reach - T10058-

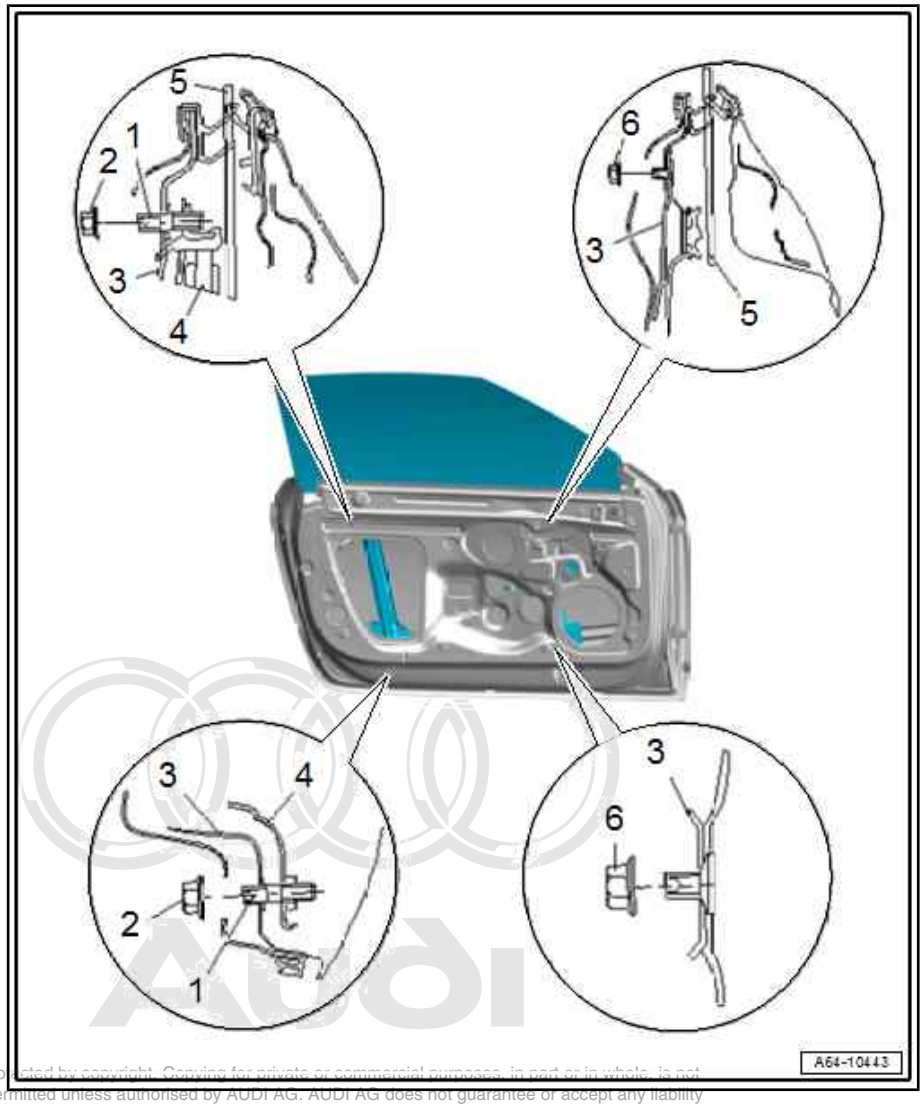


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Use this tool to adjust height.
- Gauge - T10391-



Lateral adjustment



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Adjustment option - door (bottom, rear)

For bringing top edge of door window into contact with seal in roof area

Accessible from the outside; it is not necessary to remove door trim

– To adjust, loosen lock nut -2- and turn adjusting pin -1- with Torx socket wrench.

– After adjusting, tighten lock nut -2- (tightening torque ⇒ page 92).

-3- Door

-4- Window regulator

Adjustment option - door (top, rear)

For moving door window in door window slot outwards or inwards

Accessible after door trim has been removed ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (front); Removing and installing door trim (front)

– To adjust, loosen lock nut -2- and turn adjusting pin -1- with Torx socket wrench.

– After adjusting, tighten lock nut -2- (tightening torque ⇒ page 92).

-3- Door

-4- Window regulator

-5- Door window

Adjustment option - door (top, front)

The window regulator is bolted on at front and cannot be adjusted

-3- Door

-5- Door window

-6- Nut for window regulator (tightening torque ⇒ page 92)

Data stored in this document is subject to copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

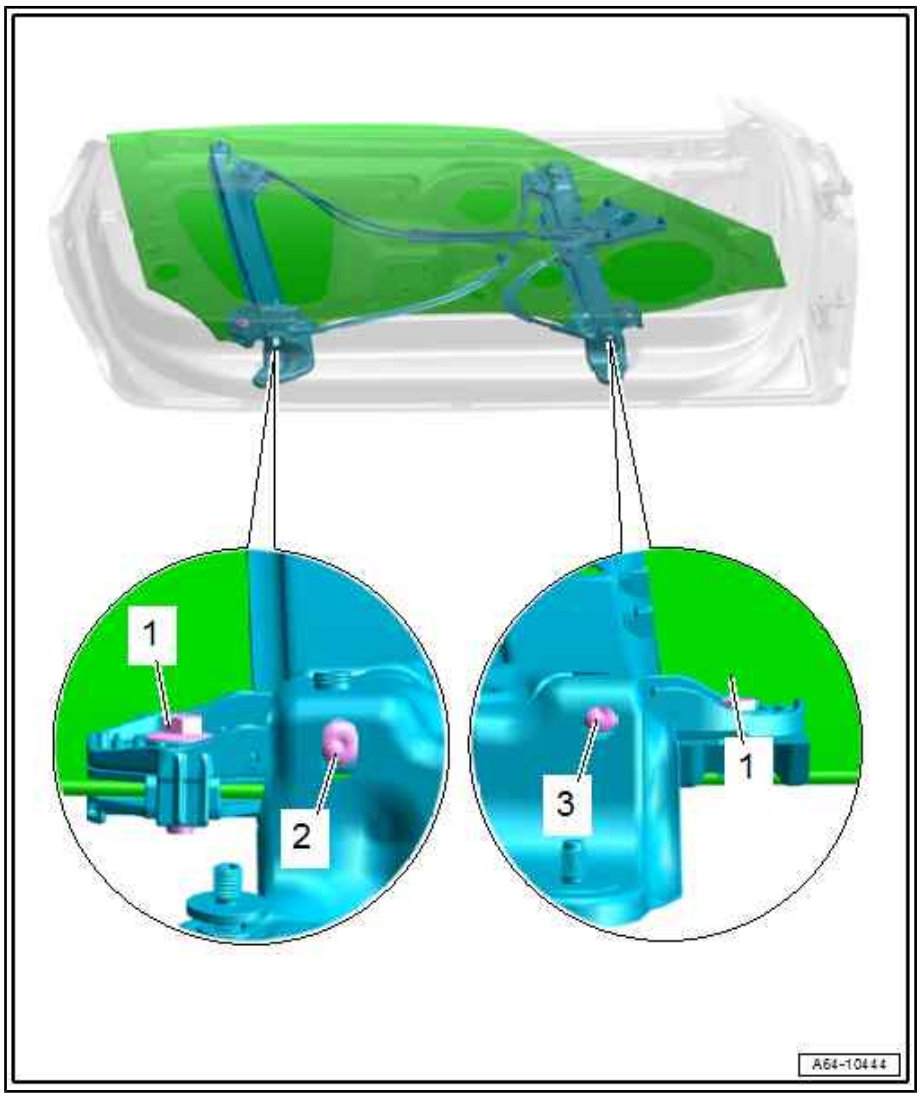
Adjustment option - door (bottom, front)

The window regulator is bolted on at front and cannot be adjusted

-3- Door

-6- Nut for window regulator (tightening torque ⇒ page 92)

Height adjustment



Adjustment option - door (bottom, rear)

For bringing top edge of door window -1- into contact with seal on convertible roof

Accessible through holes at bottom edge of door; it is not necessary to remove door trim

– For height adjustment, turn adjuster screw -2- with an Allen key

-2- Window regulator (rear)

Adjustment option - door (bottom, front)

For bringing top edge of door window -1- into contact with seal at A-pillar

Accessible through holes at bottom edge of door; it is not necessary to remove door trim

– For height adjustment, turn adjuster screw -3- with an Allen key

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

66 – Exterior equipment

1 Radiator grille/front trim panel

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - radiator grille”, page 264

⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing radiator grille”, page 267

1.1 Exploded view - radiator grille

⇒ “1.1.1 Exploded view - radiator grille, A3 up to model year 2016”, page 264

⇒ “1.1.2 Exploded view - radiator grille, A3 S line and S3 up to model year 2016”, page 265

⇒ “1.1.3 Exploded view - radiator grille, vehicles from model year 2017 onwards”, page 266

1.1.1 Exploded view - radiator grille, A3 up to model year 2016

1 - Emblem

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 307

2 - Mounting bracket (right-side)

- ❑ For parking aid sender
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 270

3 - Radiator grille

- ❑ Country-specific version with parking aid (refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue): Attach strip of sealant foam to radiator grille ⇒ page 269
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 267

4 - Bolt

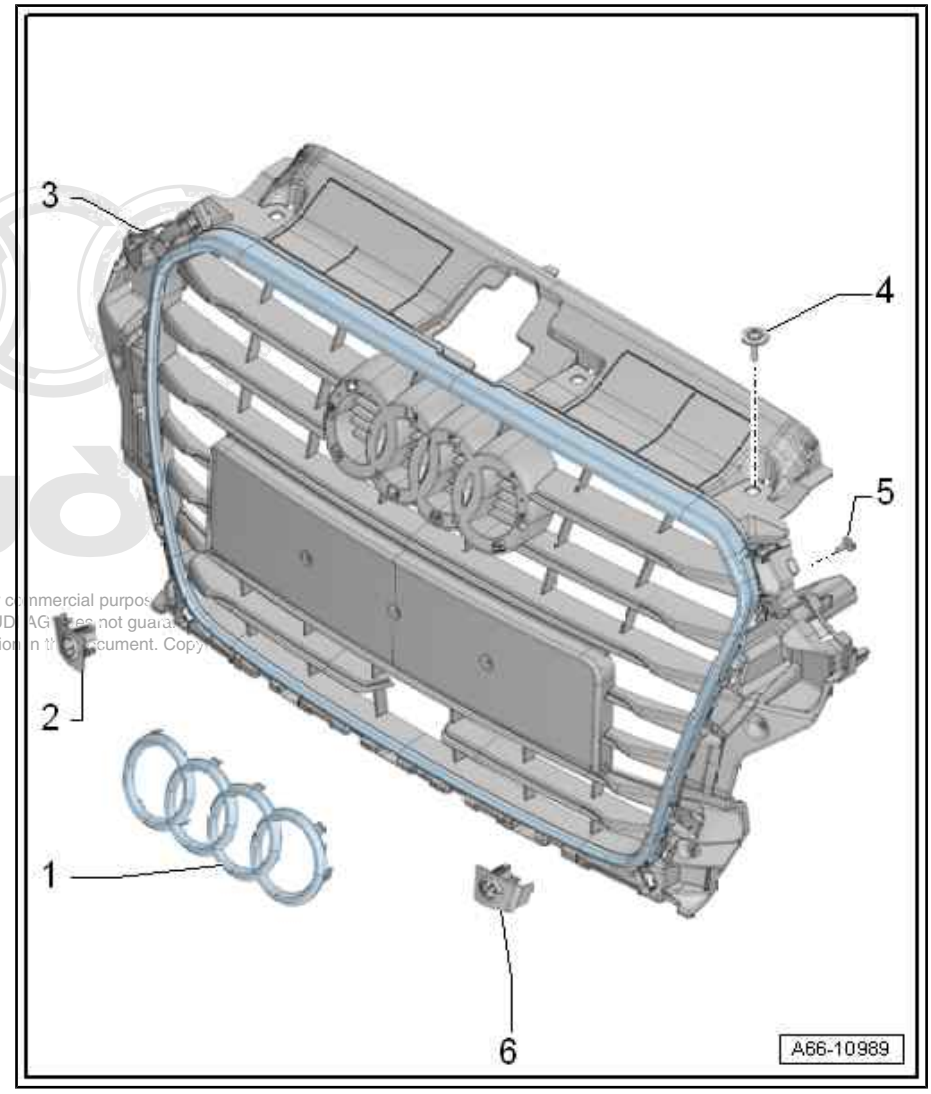
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

6 - Mounting bracket (left-side)

- ❑ For parking aid sender
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 270



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpos
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

1.1.2 Exploded view - radiator grille, A3 S line and S3 up to model year 2016

1 - Emblem

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 307

2 - Emblem

- ❑ Different versions ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 307

3 - Radiator grille

- ❑ Country-specific version with parking aid (refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue): Attach strip of sealant foam to radiator grille ⇒ page 269
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 267

4 - Reinforcement strut

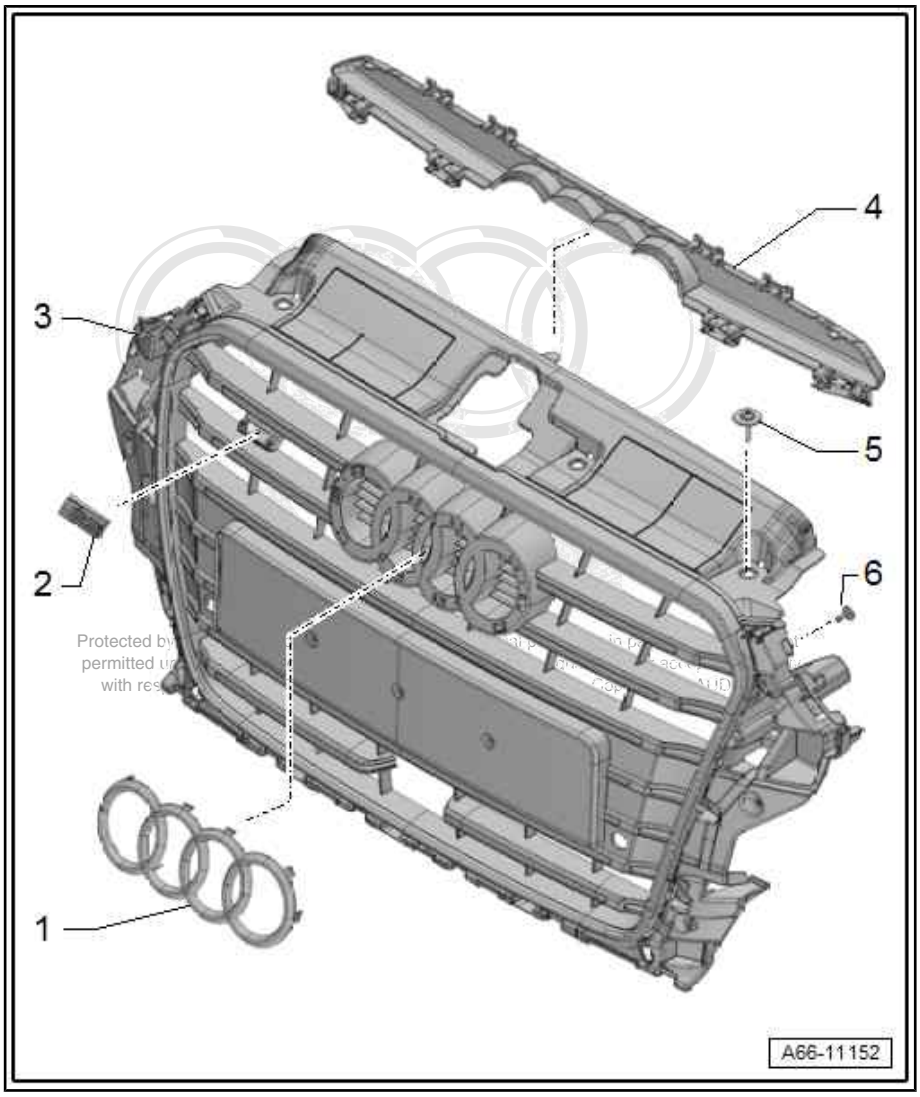
- ❑ For radiator grille

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm



1.1.3 Exploded view - radiator grille, vehicles from model year 2017 onwards

1 - Mounting bracket (left-side)
- ❑ For parking aid sender
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 270

2 - Radiator grille
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 268

3 - Mounting bracket (right-side)
- ❑ For parking aid sender
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 270

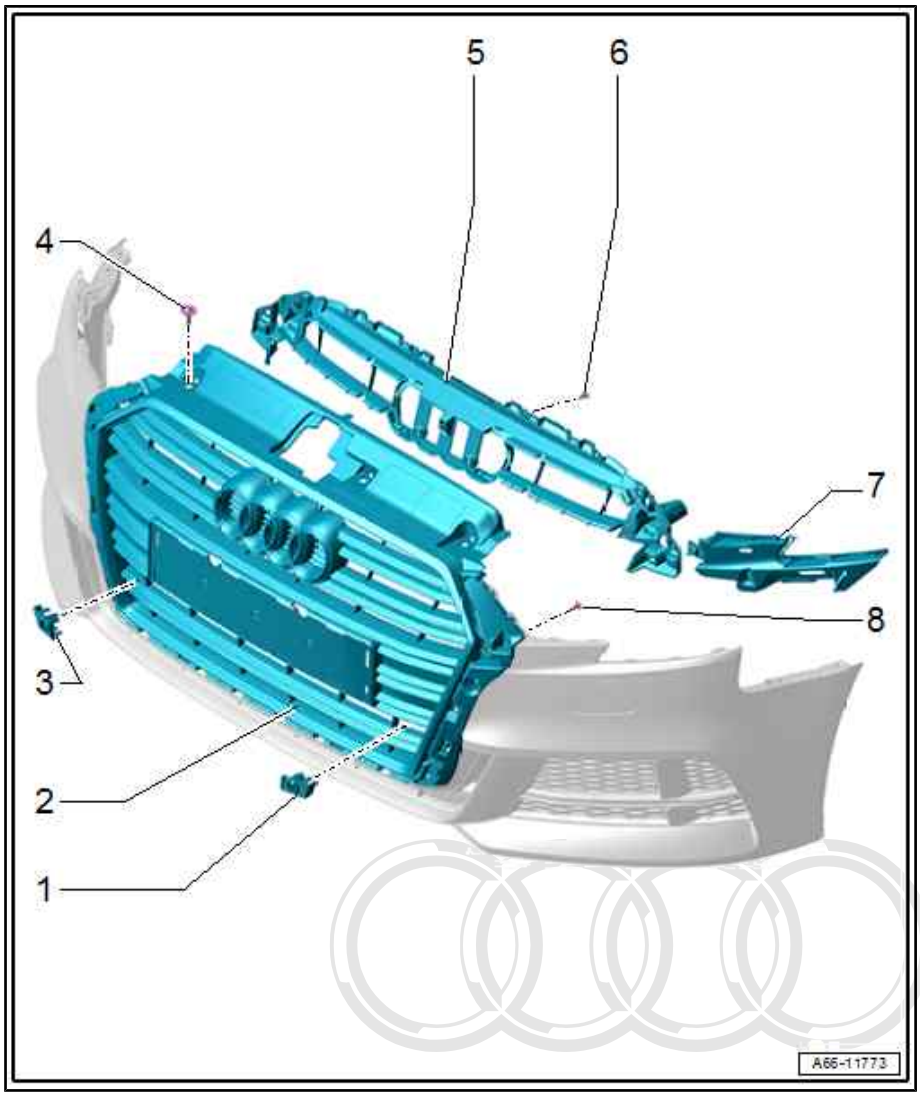
4 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

5 - Closure plate for radiator grille
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 269

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 10x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

7 - Closure plate for bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 268

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2 Removing and installing radiator grille

⇒ “1.2.1 Removing and installing radiator grille - vehicles up to model year 2016”, page 267

⇒ “1.2.2 Removing and installing radiator grille - vehicles from model year 2017 onwards”, page 268

⇒ “1.2.3 Attaching strip of sealant foam to radiator grille”, page 269

⇒ “1.2.4 Removing and installing closure plate for radiator grille”, page 269

⇒ “1.2.5 Removing and installing mounting bracket for front parking aid sender - vehicles up to model year 2016”, page 270

⇒ “1.2.6 Removing and installing mounting bracket for front parking aid sender - vehicles from model year 2017 onwards ”, page 270

1.2.1 Removing and installing radiator grille - vehicles up to model year 2016

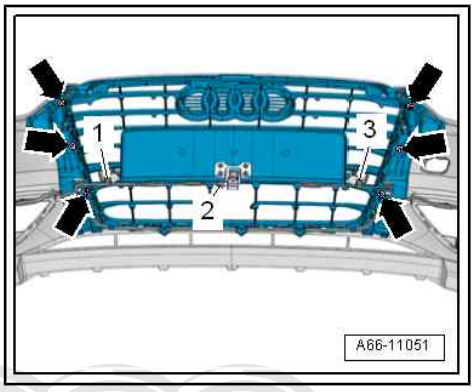
Removing

– Remove bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 202 .

– If fitted, move headlight washer fluid hose clear.

– Unplug electrical connectors -1, 2, 3- and move wiring harness clear.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.



– Release tabs and catches -arrows-.

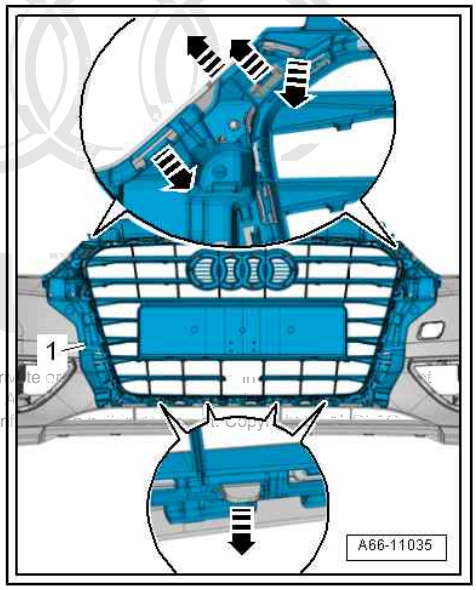
– Pull radiator grille -1- off bumper cover.

– If radiator grille is to be renewed, also remove the following components:

♦ Front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283- ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Crash sensors for airbags; Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags

♦ Mounting bracket for parking aid sender ⇒ page 270

♦ Emblem ⇒ page 310



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - radiator grille”, page 264 .

1.2.2 Removing and installing radiator grille - vehicles from model year 2017 onwards

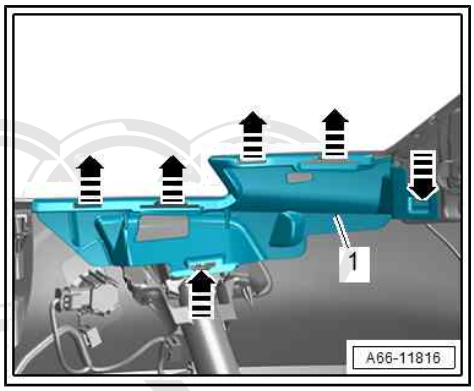
Removing

– Remove bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 202 .

– Remove air intake grille (centre) ⇒ page 217 .

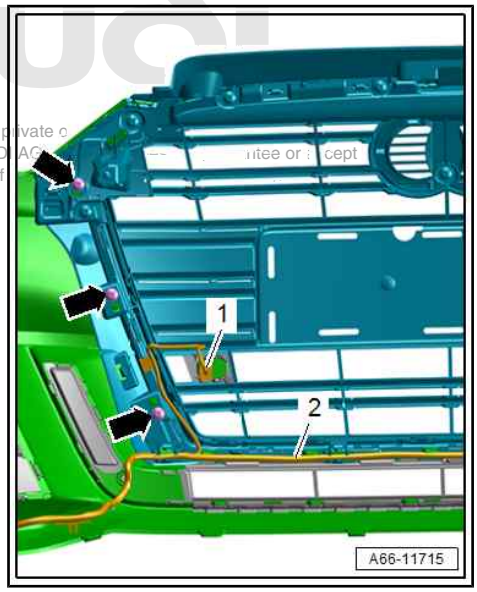
– Release fasteners -arrows-.

– Detach closure plate -1- for bumper cover.



– Unplug electrical connector -1- and move wiring harness -2- clear.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.



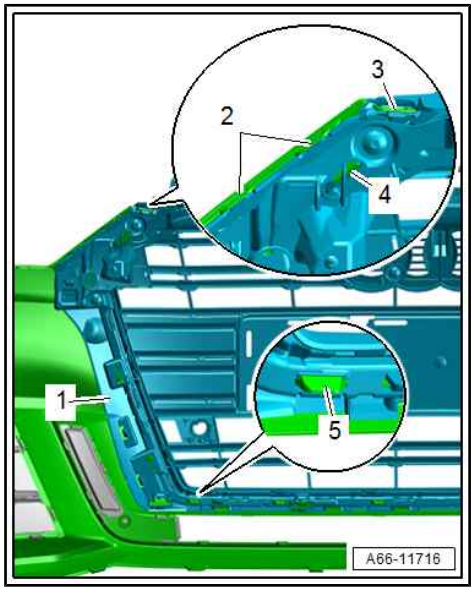
Protected by copyright. Copying for private o
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of

– Release tabs -2, 3- and fasteners -4, 5-.

– Pull radiator grille -1- off bumper cover.

– If radiator grille is to be renewed, also remove the following components:

- Front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283- ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Crash sensors for airbags; Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags
- Mounting bracket for parking aid sender ⇒ page 270
- Emblem ⇒ page 310



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “1.1.3 Exploded view - radiator grille, vehicles from model year 2017 onwards”, page 266 .

1.2.3 Attaching strip of sealant foam to radiator grille

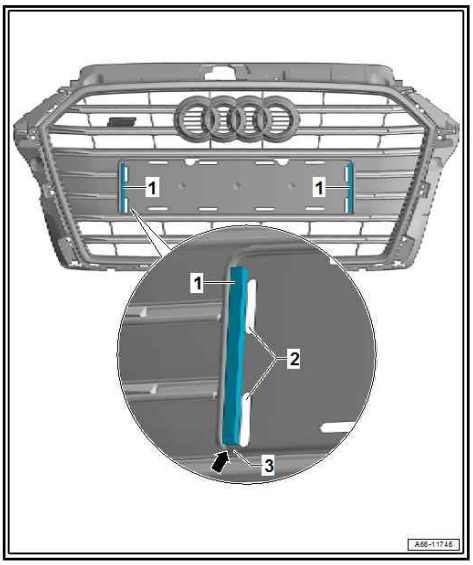
On some country-specific versions with parking aid (refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue), a strip of sealant foam must be attached to the radiator grille before installing the number plate holder for the corresponding country.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-
- • The bonding surfaces must be free of dust, grease and adhesive residue.

– Clean bonding surfaces with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .

– Position strip of sealant foam -1- at lower rounded corner -arrow- and attach between cut-outs -2- and number plate frame -3- (working upwards).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

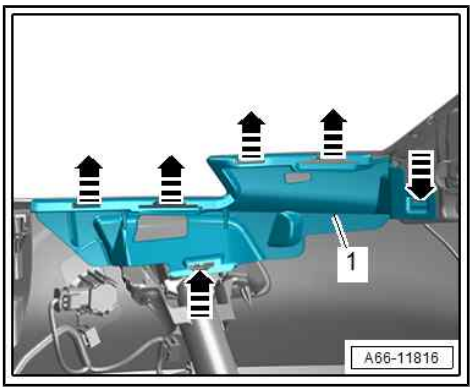
1.2.4 Removing and installing closure plate for radiator grille

Removing

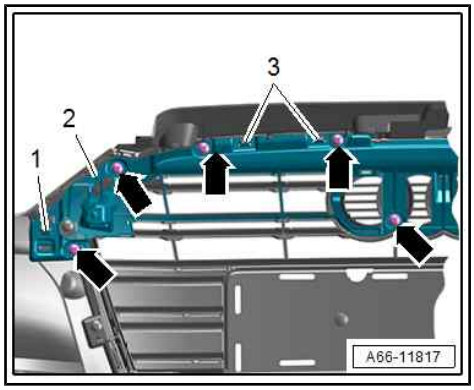
– Remove bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 202 .

– Release fasteners -arrows-.

– Detach closure plate -1- for bumper cover.



– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Release fasteners -1, 3-.
– Detach closure plate -2- for radiator grille.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

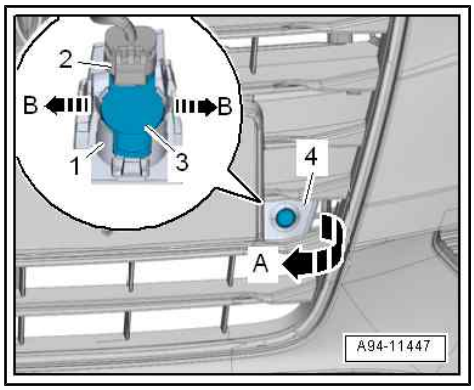
◆ ⇒ “1.1.3 Exploded view - radiator grille, vehicles from model year 2017 onwards”, page 266 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2.5 Removing and installing mounting bracket for front parking aid sender - vehicles up to model year 2016

Removing

– Disengage mounting bracket -4- for front parking aid sender in direction of -arrow A-.
– Press both retaining tabs to the side -arrows B- and at the same time press sender -3- out of mounting bracket -1-.



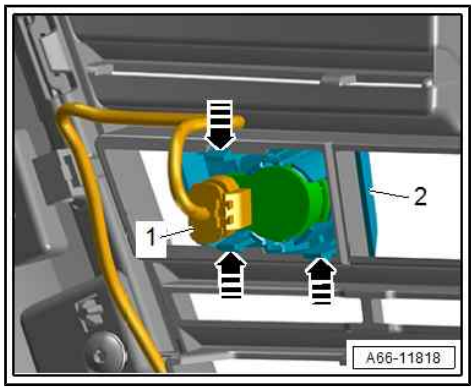
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

1.2.6 Removing and installing mounting bracket for front parking aid sender - vehicles from model year 2017 onwards

Removing

– Remove closure plate for bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 211 .
– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Release fasteners -arrows- and press mounting bracket -2- for parking aid sender towards front out of radiator grille.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2 Strips / trim panels / extensions

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - trim strip and covers”, page 271

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - trim panel for A-pillar”, page 274

⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - sill panel trim”, page 275

⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - side member trim”, page 276

⇒ “2.5 Exploded view - heat shield”, page 277

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing trim strip”, page 278

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing trim panel for A-pillar”, page 281

⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing sill panel trim”, page 281

⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing side member trim”, page 283

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing heat shield for floor”, page 286

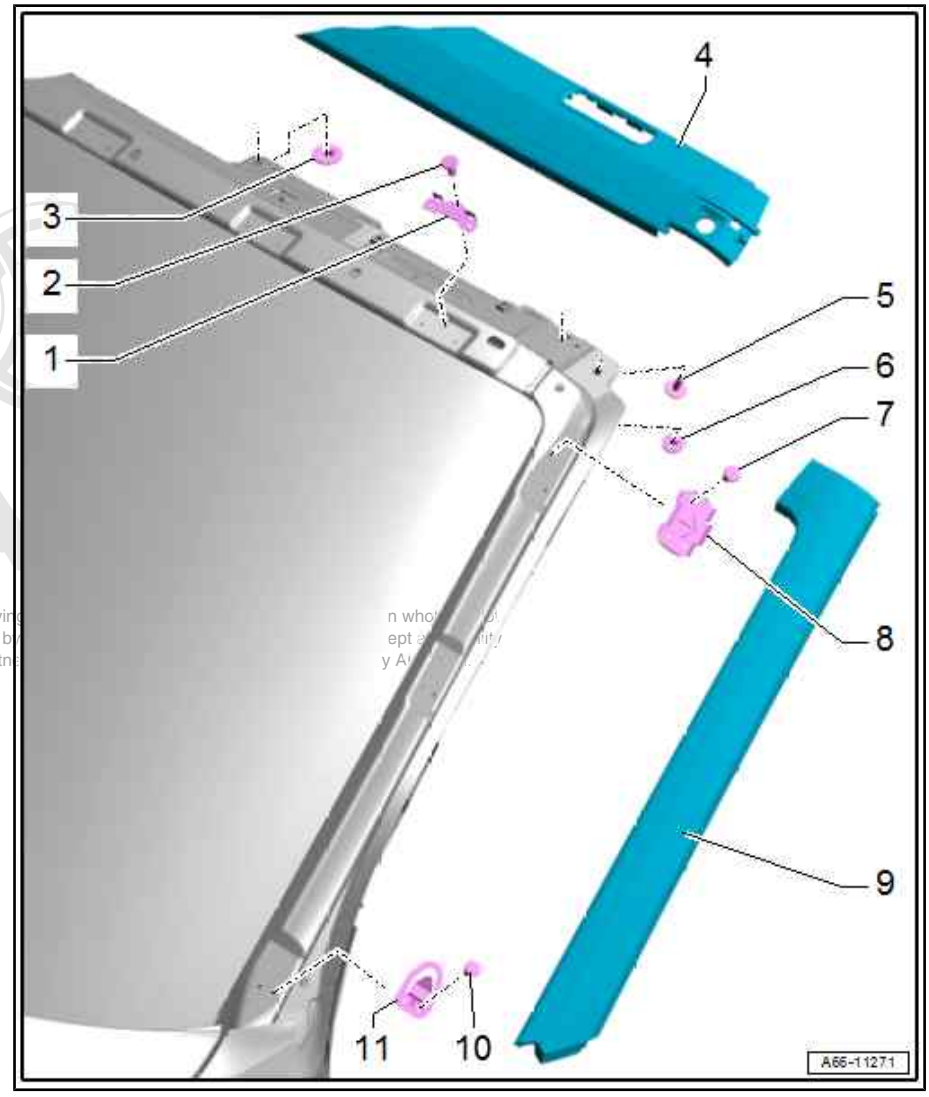
2.1 Exploded view - trim strip and covers

⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - trim strip and covers, trim for windscreen frame”, page 271

⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - trim strip and covers, trim strip for convertible roof compartment lid”, page 273

2.1.1 Exploded view - trim strip and covers, trim for windscreen frame

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Retaining clip

- For trim for windscreen frame
- 5x
- Renew after removing
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 279

2 - Pop rivet

- 3x
- For retaining clip
- ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Nut

- 2x
- 4.5 Nm

4 - Trim for windscreen frame

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 279

5 - Bolt

- Tightening torque ⇒ page 80

6 - Nut

- 4.5 Nm

7 - Pop rivet

- 3x
- For retaining clip
- ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

8 - Retaining clip

- For side trim for windscreen frame
- 2x
- Renew after removing
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 278

9 - Side trim for windscreen frame

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 278

10 - Pop rivet

- 2x
- For retaining clip
- ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

11 - Retaining clip

- For side trim for windscreen frame
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 278

2.1.2 Exploded view - trim strip and covers, trim strip for convertible roof compartment lid

1 - Nut

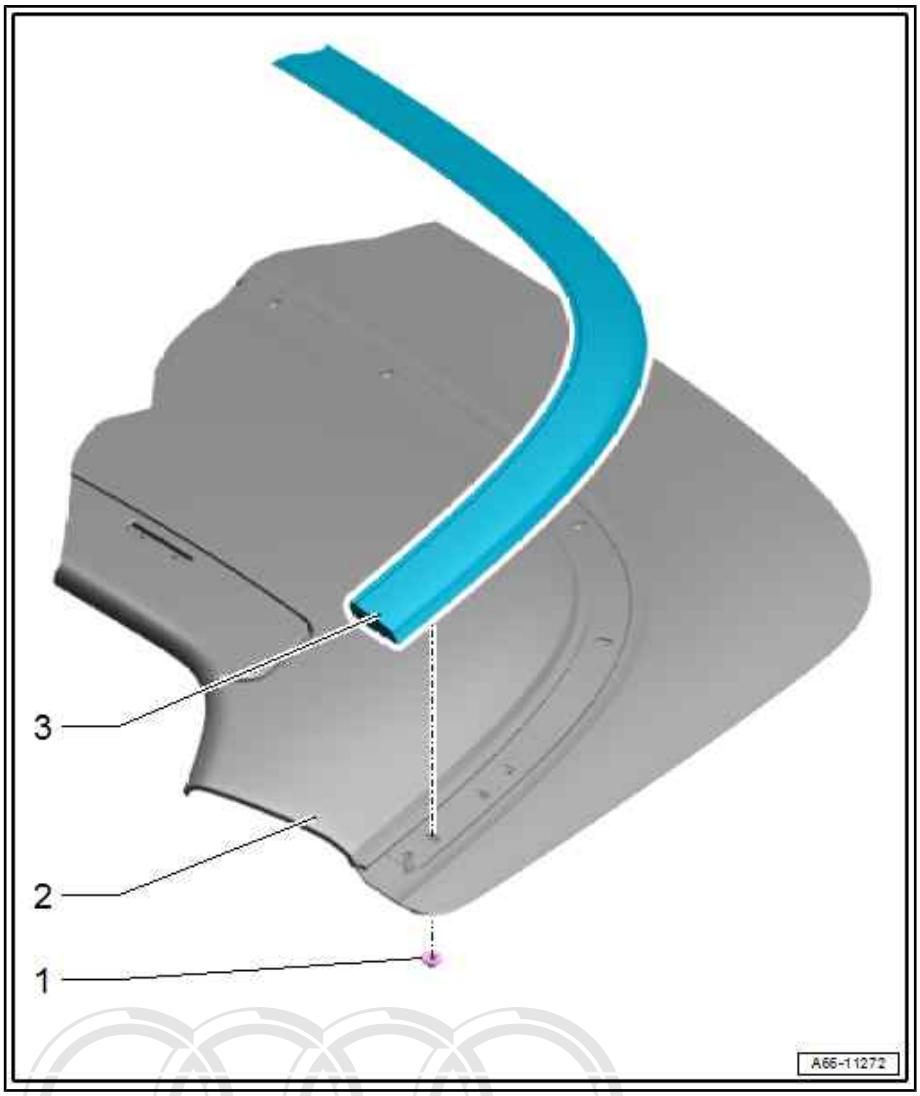
- ❑ 11x
- ❑ 2 Nm

2 - Convertible roof compartment lid

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 59

3 - Trim strip

- ❑ For convertible roof compartment lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 280



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Exploded view - trim panel for A-pillar

1 - Clip nut

2 - Sealing piece

- ❑ For trim panel for A-pillar

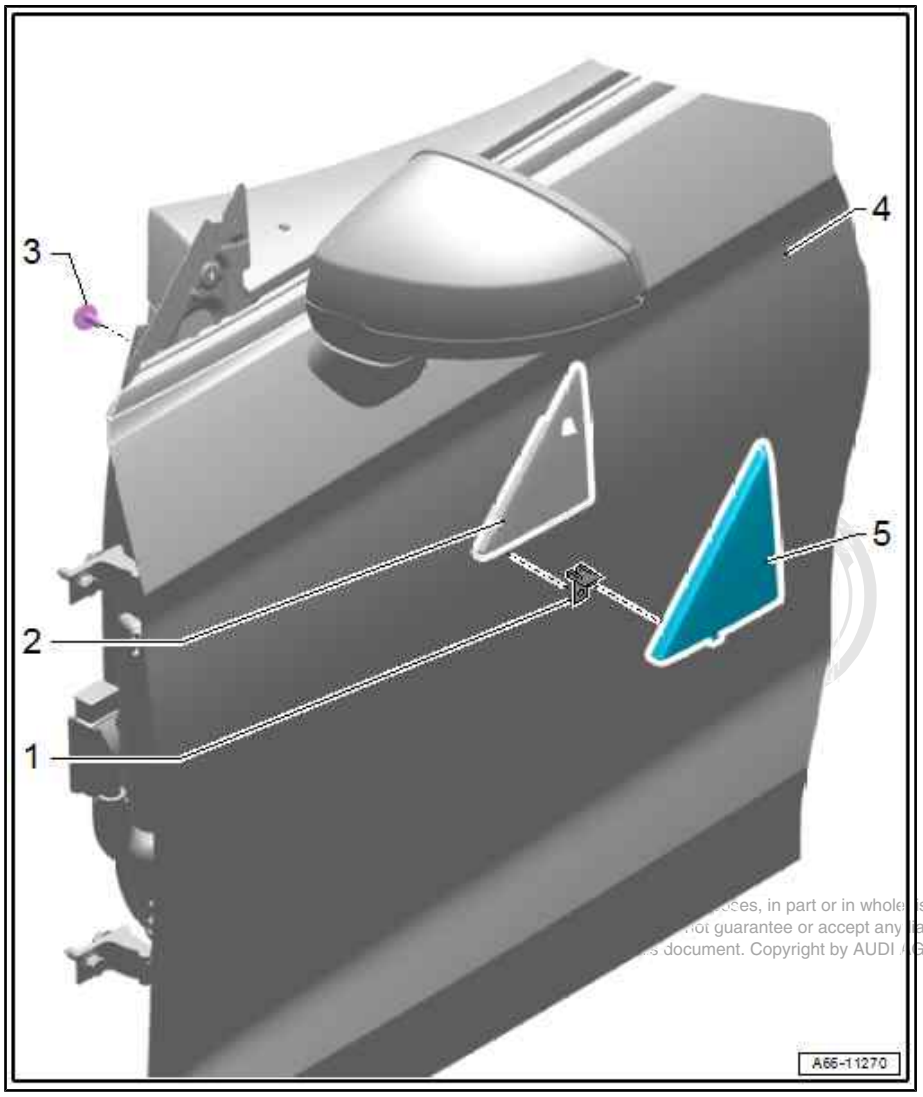
3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm

4 - Door

5 - Trim panel for A-pillar

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 281

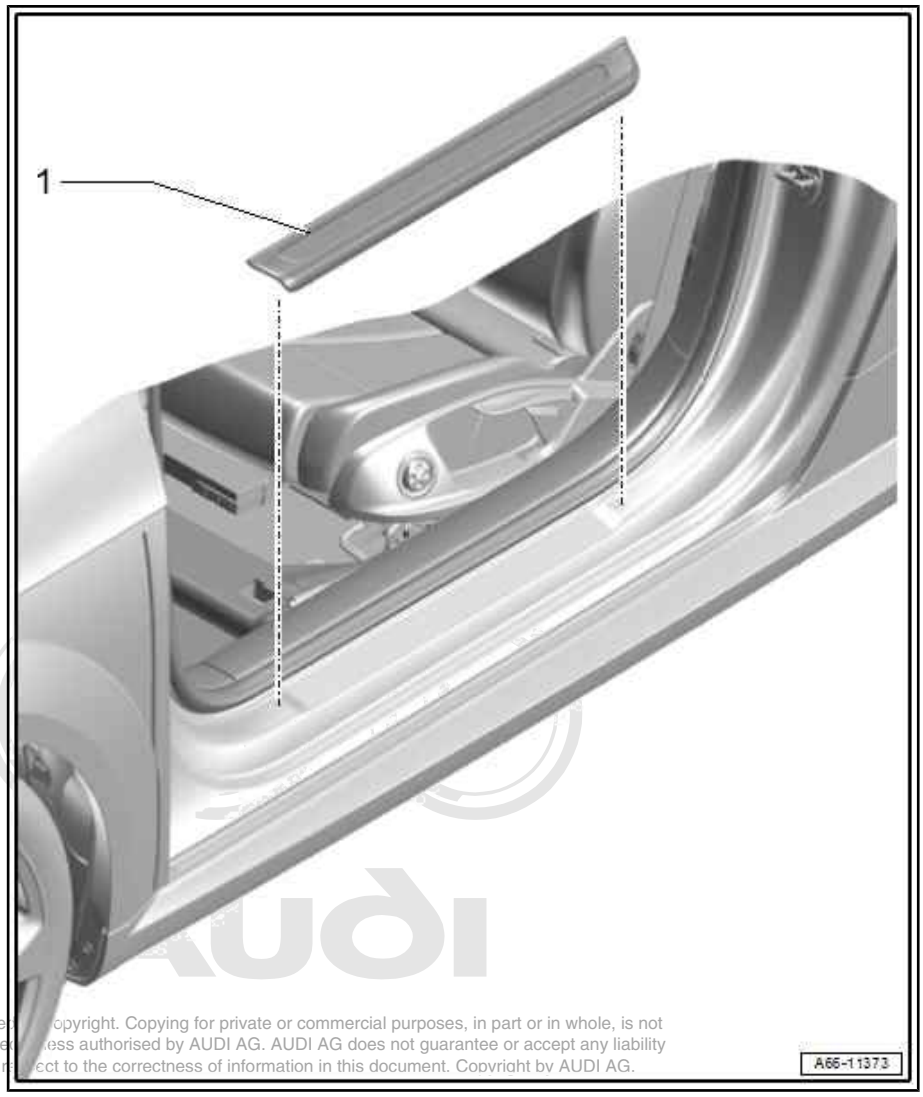


ces, in part or in whole is not
ot guarantee or accept any liability
document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Exploded view - sill panel trim

1 - Sill panel trim (front)

- ❑ Different versions ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 281



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4 Exploded view - side member trim

1 - Nut

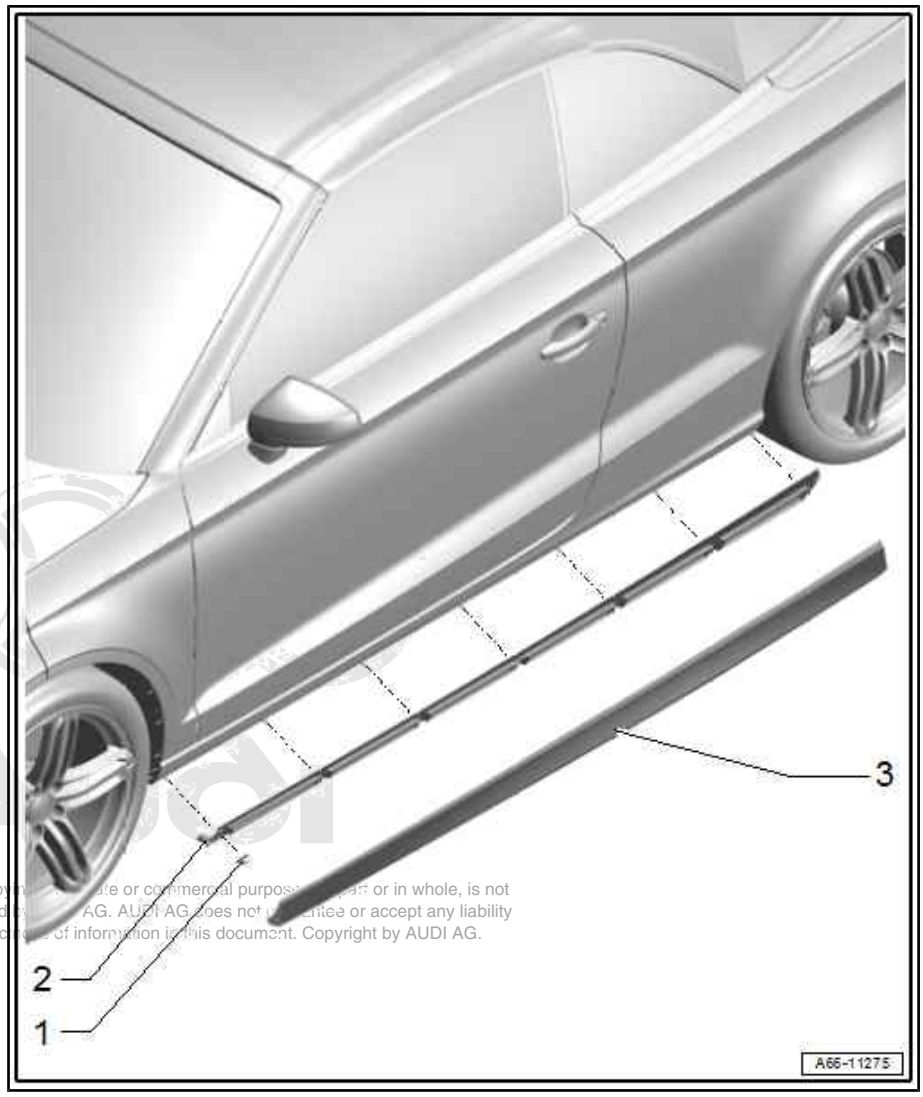
- ❑ 7x
- ❑ 2 Nm

2 - Mounting

- ❑ For side member trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 285

3 - Side member trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 283



Protected by copyright. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5 Exploded view - heat shield

⇒ “2.5.1 Exploded view - heat shield (front)”, page 277

⇒ “2.5.2 Exploded view - heat shield (rear)”, page 278

2.5.1 Exploded view - heat shield (front)

1 - Heat shield
- ❑ For floor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 286

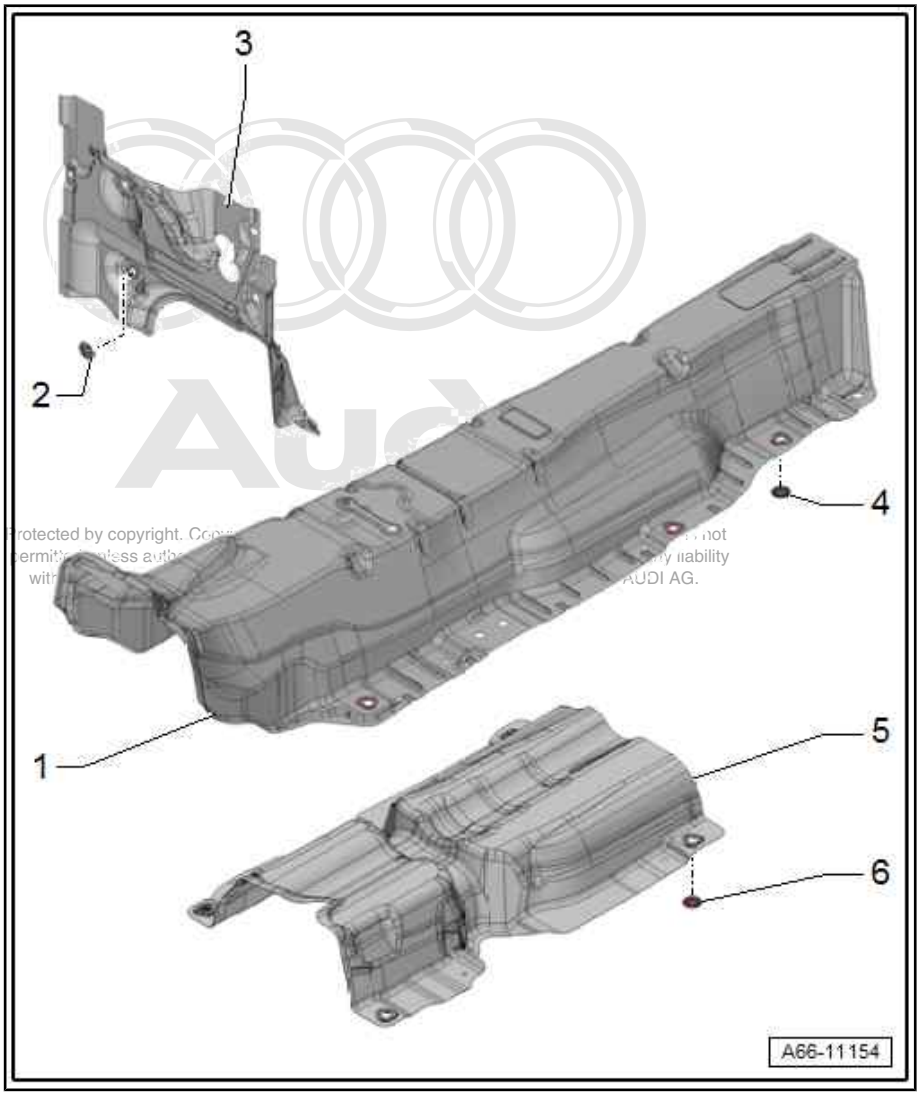
2 - Clamping washer
- ❑ 5x

3 - Heat shield
- ❑ For plenum chamber partition panel

4 - Clamping washer
- ❑ 6x

5 - Heat shield
- ❑ For propshaft
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 287

6 - Clamping washer
- ❑ 4x



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5.2 Exploded view - heat shield (rear)

1 - Heat shield

- ❑ For exhaust system (centre)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 288

2 - Heat shield

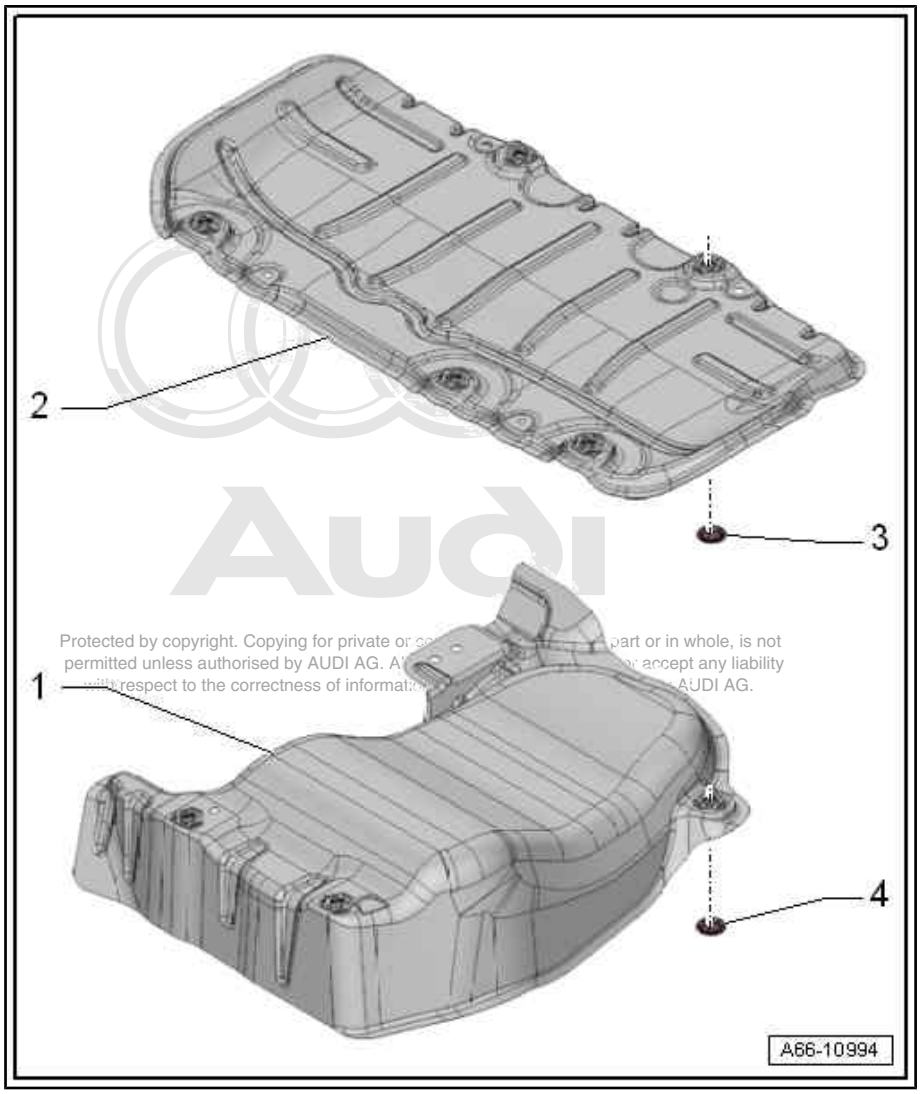
- ❑ For rear silencer
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 288

3 - Clamping washer

- ❑ Number fitted depends on version ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Clamping washer

- ❑ 3x



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or ... part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. A... accept any liability with respect to the correctness of informati... AUDI AG.

2.6 Removing and installing trim strip

⇒ "2.6.1 Removing and installing side trim for windscreen frame", page 278

⇒ "2.6.2 Removing and installing trim for windscreen frame", page 279

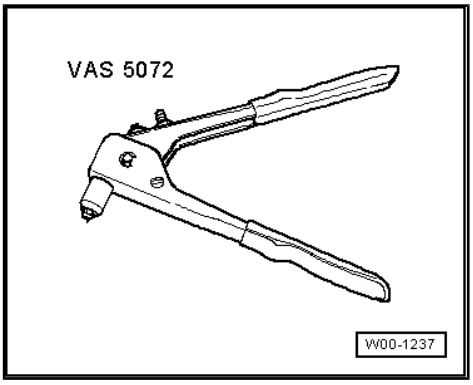
⇒ "2.6.3 Removing and installing trim strip for convertible roof compartment lid", page 280

2.6.1 Removing and installing side trim for windscreen frame

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 271 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072-



♦ Drill

♦ Pop rivets ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

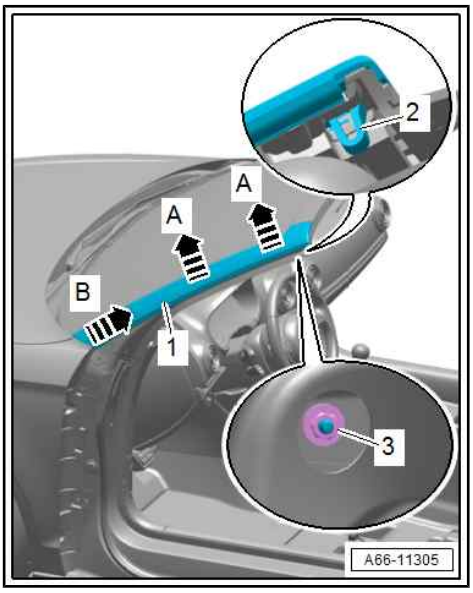
Removing

– Remove door seal at A-pillar ⇒ page 87 .

– Unscrew nut -3-.

– Release fastener -2- and release trim -1- for windscreen frame from retaining clips -arrows A-.

– Pull trim for windscreen frame upwards out of retaining clip at bottom -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

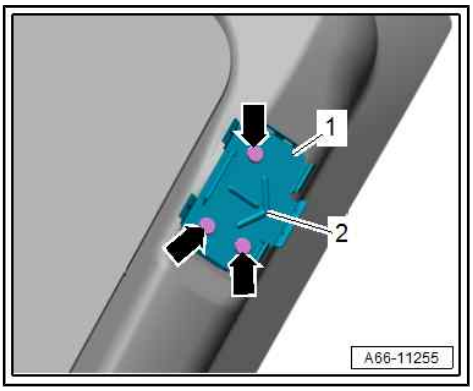
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Renew retaining clip -1-; to do so, drill off pop rivets -arrows- and knock out rivet stems.

• Take care to remove all remnants of the pop rivets drilled out.

– Detach retaining clip.

– When riveting on retaining clip, make sure that arrow -2- points towards outside.



Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - trim strip and covers, trim for windscreen frame”, page 271 .

2.6.2 Removing and installing trim for windscreen frame

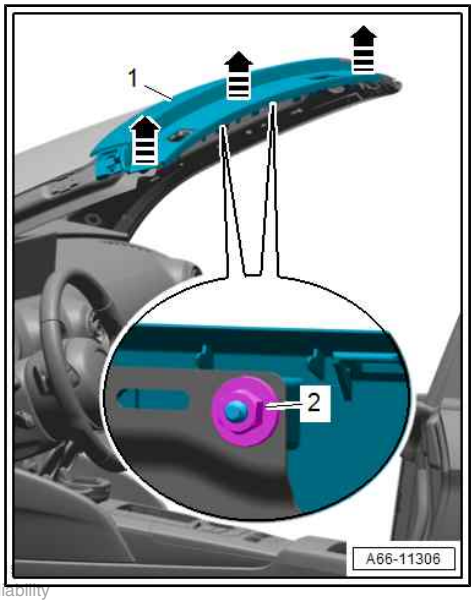
• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 271 .

Removing

– Remove trim panels for A-pillar (left and right) ⇒ page 278 .

– Remove nuts -2-.

– Prise off trim -1- for windscreen frame -arrows-; catches will be released automatically.



Installing

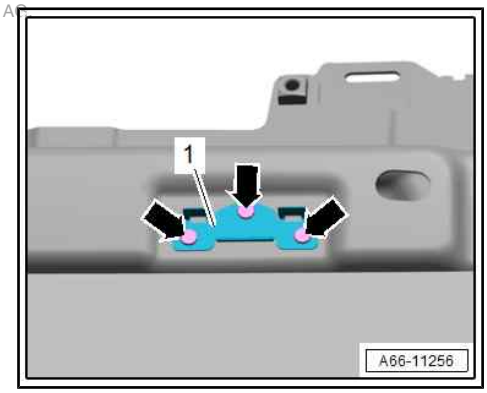
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Renew retaining clip -1-; to do so, drill off pop rivets -arrows- and knock out rivet stems.

• Take care to remove all remnants of the pop rivets drilled out.

– Detach retaining clip.



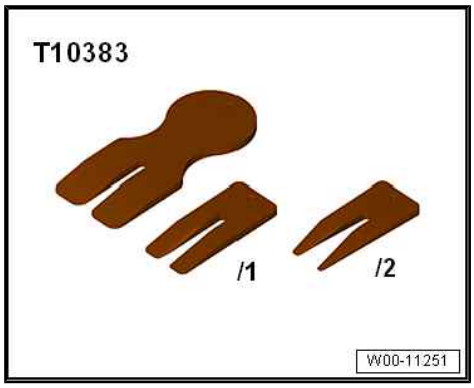
Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - trim strip and covers, trim for windscreen frame”, page 271 .

2.6.3 Removing and installing trim strip for convertible roof compartment lid

Special tools and workshop equipment required

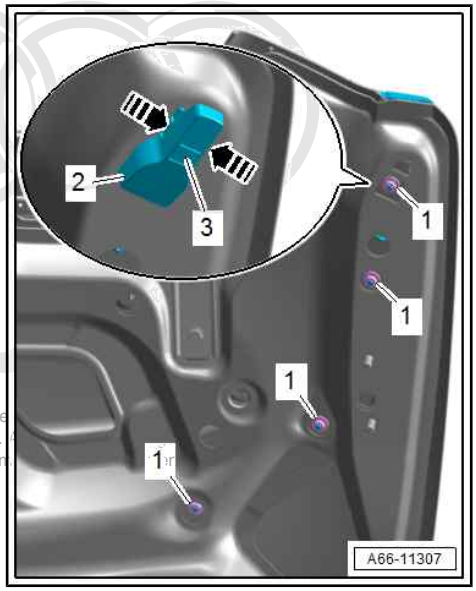
♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

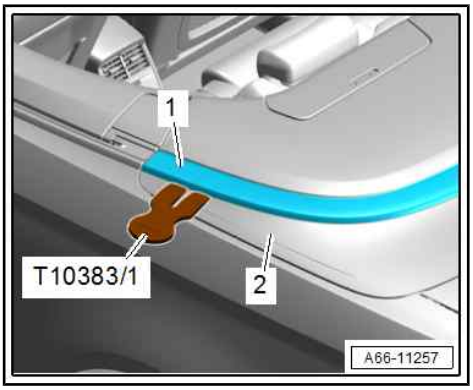
– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 137 .

– Pull out catch and release fastener -3-.
– Compress retainers -arrows- and disengage and swivel out buffer -2-.
– Remove nuts -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
with respect to the correctness of inform

– Close convertible roof compartment lid by hand.
– Carefully press trim strip -1- off convertible roof compartment lid -2- using wedge -T10383/1- .



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure guides are seated properly in mountings.

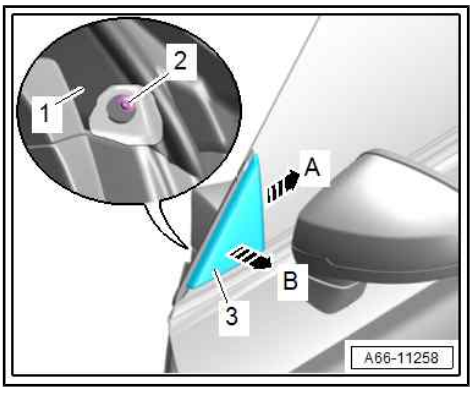
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - trim strip and covers, trim strip for convertible roof compartment lid”, page 273 .

2.7 Removing and installing trim panel for A-pillar

Removing

– Remove door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (front); Removing and installing door trim (front) .
– Pull off cover -1-.
– Remove bolt -2-.
– Press trim panel for A-pillar -item 3- out of window guide in direction of -arrow A- and remove towards side -arrow B-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

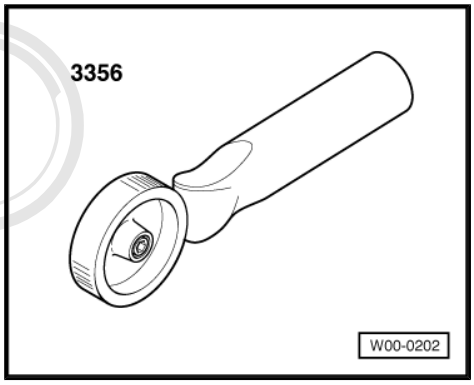
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - trim panel for A-pillar”, page 274 .

2.8 Removing and installing sill panel trim

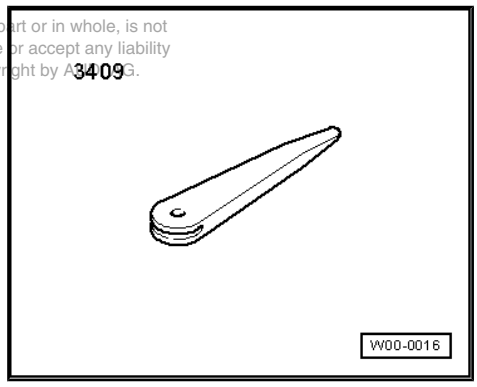
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Roller - 3356-

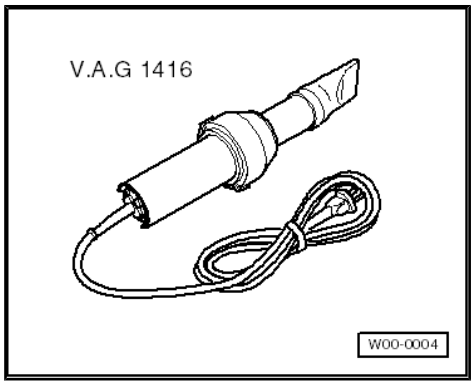


- Removal wedge - 3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-

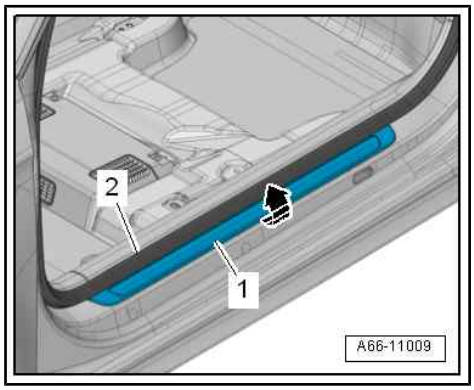


- Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

Removing

– Carefully heat sill panel trim -1- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .

– Using removal wedge - 3409- , carefully prise sill panel trim off side member -2- -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- The vehicle and the trim must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- If flash-off time exceeds three hours, primer - D 355 205 A2- must be applied again.

– Completely remove any residual adhesive.

– Clean bonding surface on body with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .

– Starting at grommet -5-, mark dimension -a- on side member towards door seal with a water-soluble marker.

• Dimension -a- = 91 mm

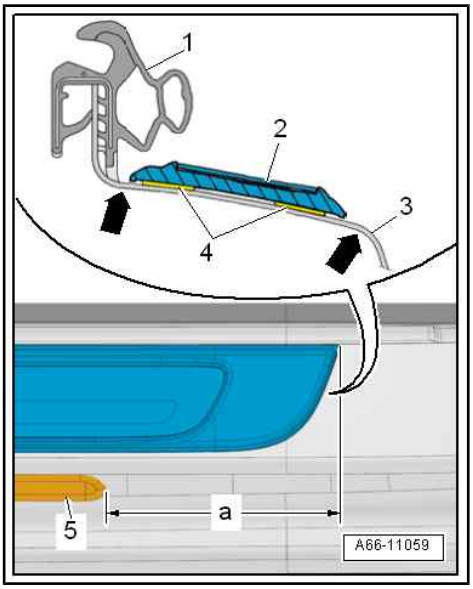
– Peel protective film off adhesive strip -4-.

– Align sill panel trim -2- centrally with long edges at transition area -3- between side member and door seal -1- and position it -arrows-.

– Press sill panel trim onto side member over entire length using roller -3356- .

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.

• Wait at least 24 hours before putting any load on the component.



2.9 Removing and installing side member trim

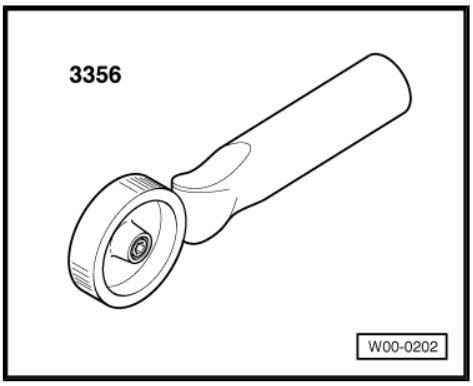
⇒ “2.9.1 Removing and installing side member trim”, page 283

⇒ “2.9.2 Removing and installing mounting for side member trim”, page 285

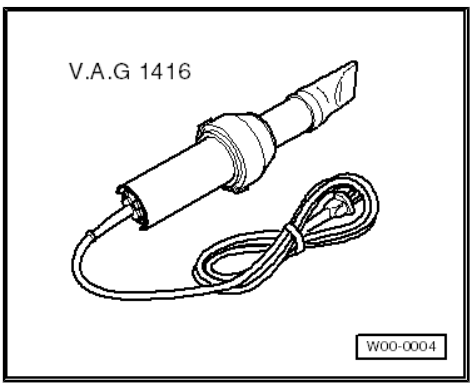
2.9.1 Removing and installing side member trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Roller - 3356-

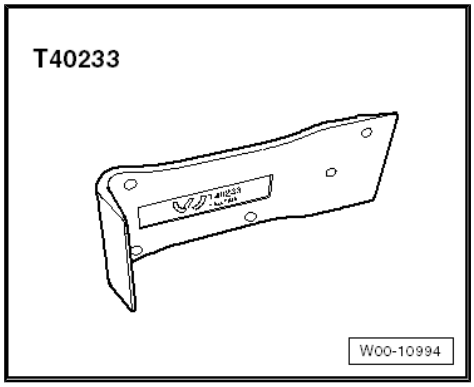


♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal wedge - T40233-



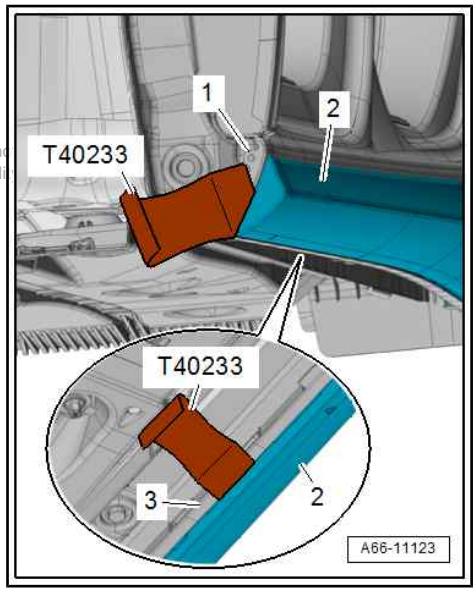
♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

Removing

– Using removal wedge - T40233- , unfasten side member trim (front) -2- at wheel housing -1-.

– Release fasteners of side member trim at mounting -3- using removal wedge - T40233- .

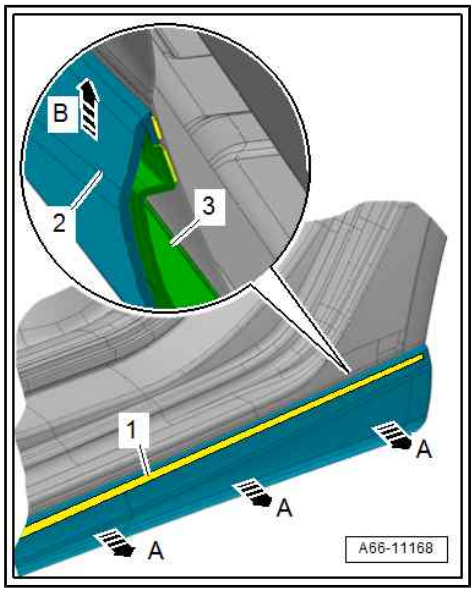
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is n
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liabili
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Carefully heat bonded area -1- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .

– Pull bottom of side member trim -2- slightly outwards -arrows A- and then lift side member trim -arrow B- out of mounting -3- (adhesive bond will be released).

– Detach side member trim and set it down on a soft surface.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

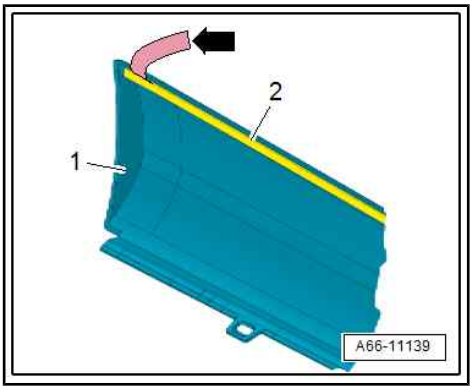
- The vehicle and the trim must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- If flash-off time exceeds three hours, primer - D 355 205 A2- must be applied again.

– Completely remove any residual adhesive.

– Clean bonding surface on body with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .

– Fold over ends of protective film or attach a removal aid -arrow- to protective film -2-.
– Fit side member trim -1- in position at mounting and press on so that it engages audibly.
– Pull off protective film using removal aid and press on side member trim using roller -3356- .

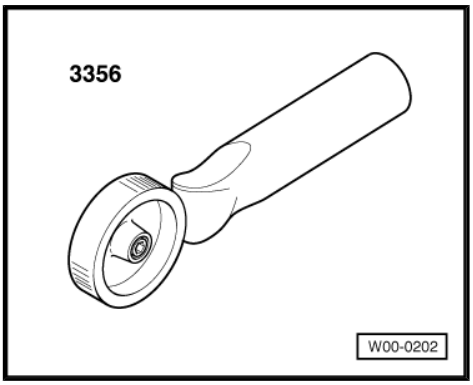
• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.
• Wait at least 24 hours before putting any load on the component.



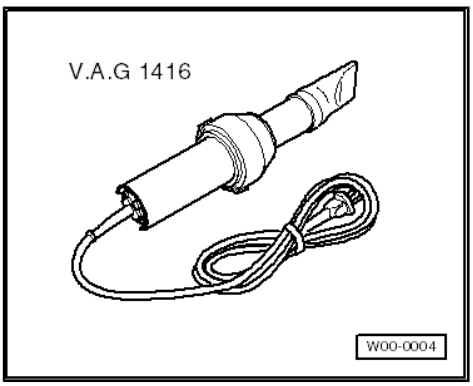
2.9.2 Removing and installing mounting for side member trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

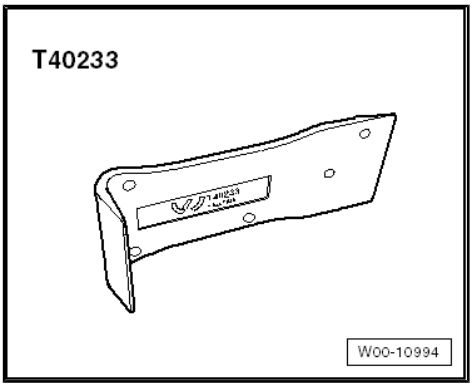
♦ Roller - 3356-



♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



♦ Removal wedge - T40233-



♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

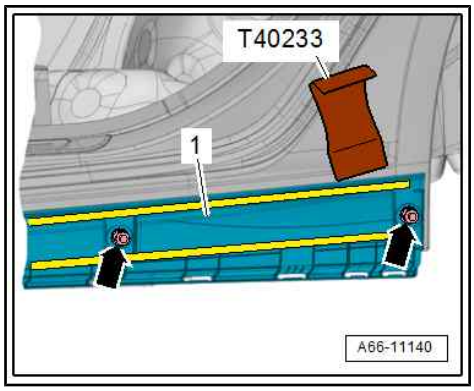
Removing

– Remove side member trim ⇒ page 283 .

– Unscrew nuts -arrows-.

– Carefully heat mounting -1- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .

– Use removal wedge - T40233- to prise off mounting.



Installing

Note

If re-installing the same side member trim, adhesive tapes must be renewed ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

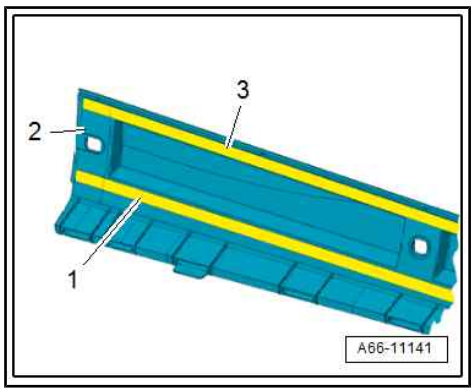
- The vehicle and the mounting must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- If flash-off time exceeds three hours, primer - D 355 205 A2- must be applied again.

– Completely remove any residual adhesive.

– Clean bonding surface on body with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .

– Pull protective film off adhesive tapes -1, 3-, press on side member trim -2- using roller -3356- and tighten nuts working from rear to front.

- Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.
- Wait at least 24 hours before putting any load on the component.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - side member trim”, page 276 .

2.10 Removing and installing heat shield for floor

⇒ “2.10.1 Removing and installing heat shield for floor”, page 286

⇒ “2.10.2 Removing and installing heat shield for propshaft”, page 287

⇒ “2.10.3 Removing and installing heat shield for exhaust system (centre)”, page 288

⇒ “2.10.4 Removing and installing heat shield for rear silencer”, page 288

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.10.1 Removing and installing heat shield for floor

Removing

– Remove underbody trim (centre) ⇒ page 294 .

Front-wheel drive vehicles:

– Remove tunnel cross-piece (front) ⇒ page 294 .

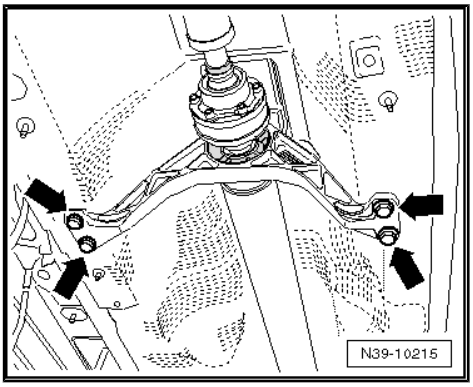
– Remove exhaust system (rear) ⇒ Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/ silencers; Exploded view - silencers .

Four-wheel drive vehicles:

– Remove heat shield for propshaft ⇒ page 287 .

– Remove bolts -arrows- for propshaft centre bearing.

– Detach propshaft at rear axle ⇒ Rear final drive; Rep. gr. 39 ; Propshaft; Removing and installing propshaft .



All vehicles (continued):

– Remove tunnel cross-piece (rear) ⇒ page 294 .

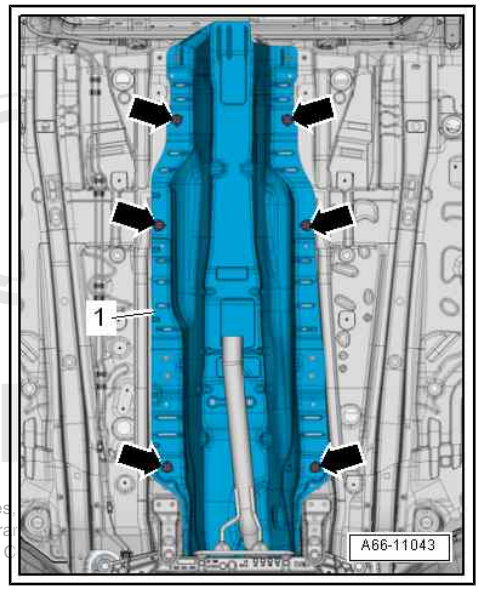
– Unfasten clamping washers -arrows- and detach heat shield towards rear.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.5 Exploded view - heat shield”, page 277 .



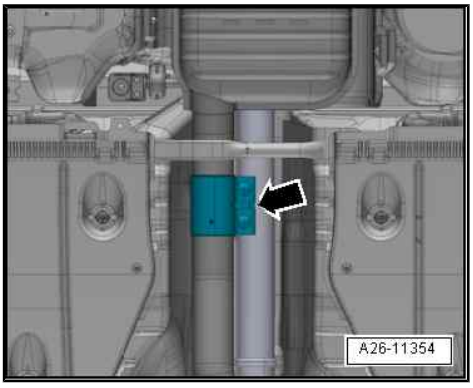
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

2.10.2 Removing and installing heat shield for propshaft

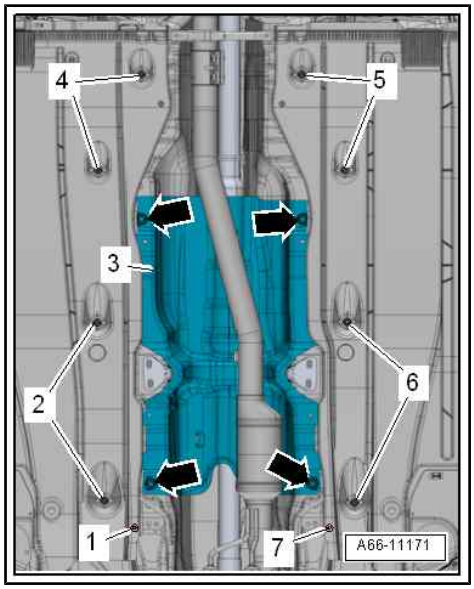
Removing

> **Caution**
>
> *Risk of damage to flexible joint due to incorrect handling.*
>
> ◆ *Do not kink flexible joint more than 10°.*
>
> ◆ *Install flexible joint so that it is not under tension.*

– Loosen bolted connections -arrow-, slide clamp to rear and leave front exhaust pipe hanging.



– Remove nuts -2, 4, 5, 6-.
– If fitted, unscrew bolts -1 and 7-.
– Unfasten clamping washers -arrows-.
– Take out heat shield -3- towards rear (as seen in direction of travel).



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

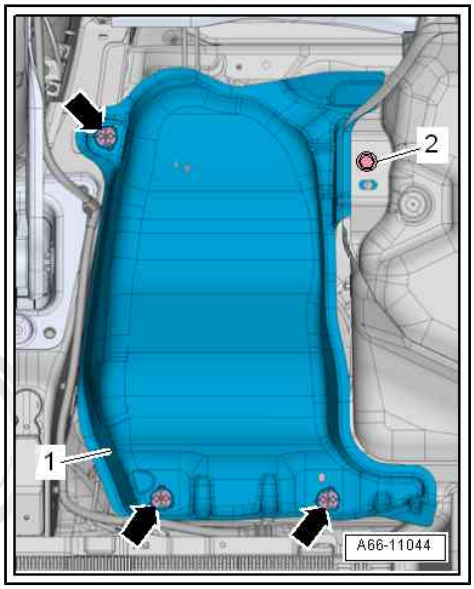
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.5 Exploded view - heat shield”, page 277 .
◆ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - underbody trim”, page 292 .

2.10.3 Removing and installing heat shield for exhaust system (centre)

Removing

– Remove exhaust system (rear) ⇒ Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/ silencers; Exploded view - silencers .
– Unfasten clamping washers -arrows-.
– Remove bolt -2-.
– Detach heat shield -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

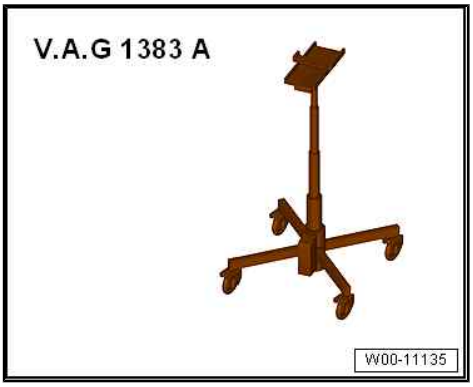
◆ ⇒ “2.5 Exploded view - heat shield”, page 277 .

2.10.4 Removing and installing heat shield for rear silencer

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

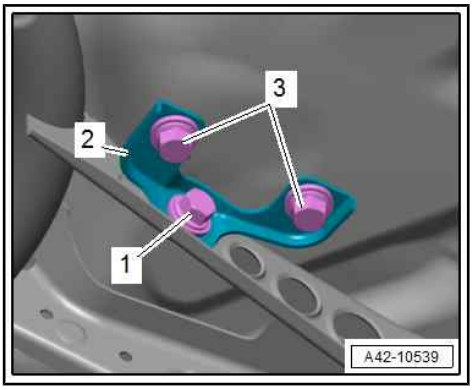
- Engine and gearbox jack - V.A.G 1383 A-



Removing

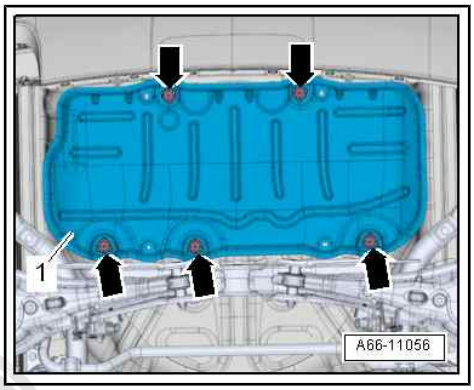
– Unfasten mounting for rear silencer and lower it slightly with engine and gearbox jack - V.A.G 1383 A- ⇒ Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Exploded view - silencers .

– If fitted, loosen bolts -3- securing bracket -2- for subframe.



– Unfasten clamping washers -arrows-.

– Detach heat shield -1-.



Note

The number of clamping washers fitted depends on the model version.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “2.5 Exploded view - heat shield”, page 277 .
- Bracket for subframe ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 42 ; Subframe; Exploded view - subframe

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Noise insulation

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - noise insulation”, page 290

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing noise insulation”, page 291

3.1 Exploded view - noise insulation

1 - Noise insulation (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 291

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 8 Nm

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 24 Nm

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - Spreader rivet
- ❑ 2x

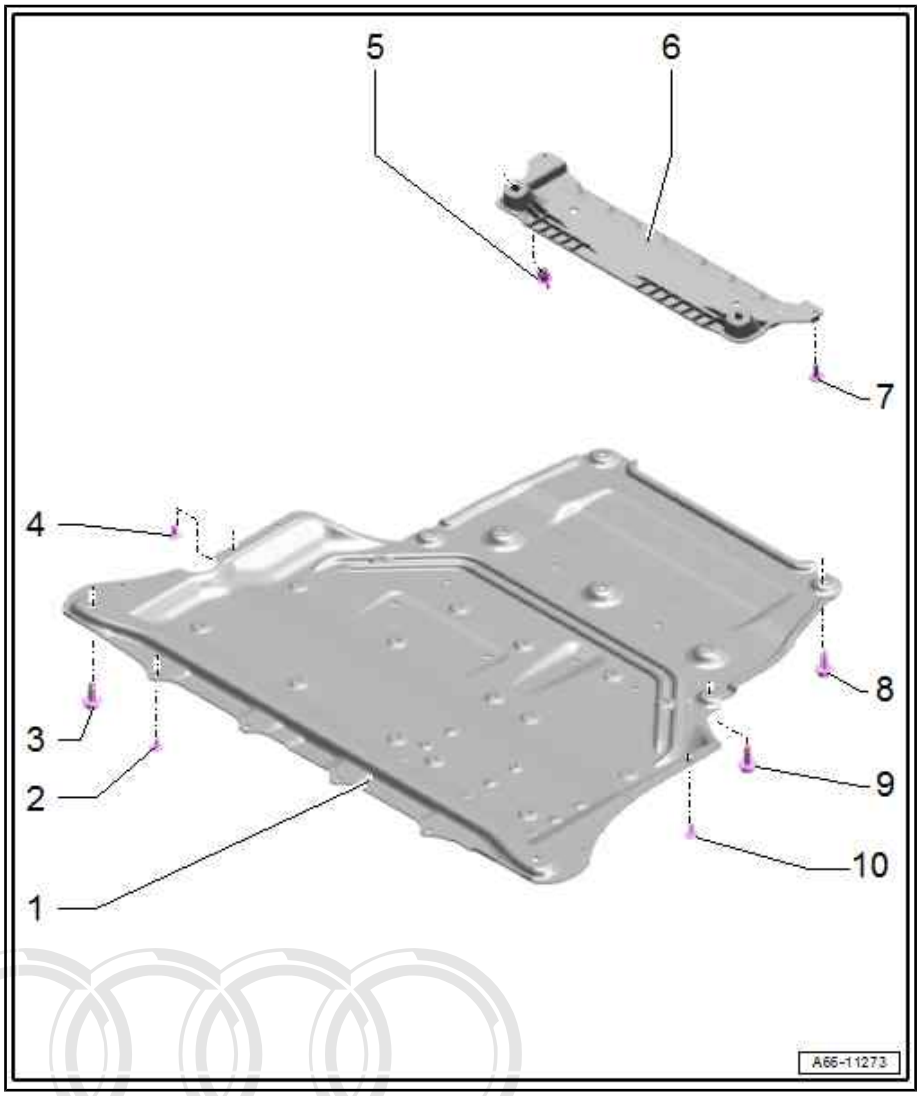
6 - Noise insulation (rear)
- ❑ For four-wheel drive
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 291

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 24 Nm

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 5x
- ❑ 24 Nm

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Removing and installing noise insulation

⇒ “3.2.1 Removing and installing noise insulation (front)”, page 291

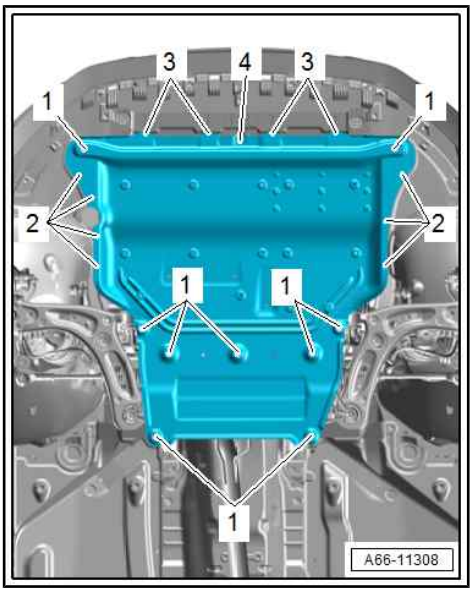
⇒ “3.2.2 Removing and installing noise insulation (rear) - vehicles with four-wheel drive”, page 291

3.2.1 Removing and installing noise insulation (front)

Removing

– Remove bolts -1 ... 3-.

– Detach noise insulation (front) -4-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - noise insulation”, page 290 .

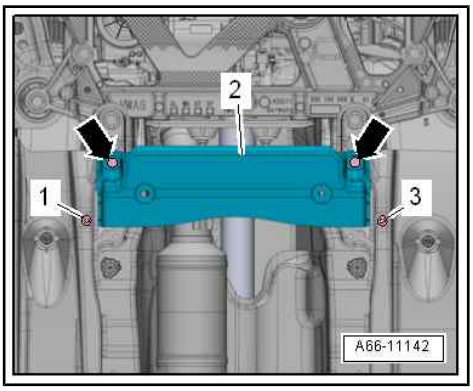
3.2.2 Removing and installing noise insulation (rear) - vehicles with four-wheel drive

Removing

– Loosen spreader rivets -arrows-.

– Remove bolts -1 and 3-.

– Detach noise insulation (rear) -2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - noise insulation”, page 290 .

4 Underbody trim

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - underbody trim”, page 292
⇒ “4.2 Exploded view - underbody struts”, page 293
⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing underbody trim”, page 294
⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing tunnel cross-piece”, page 294
⇒ “4.5 Removing and installing diagonal struts”, page 295

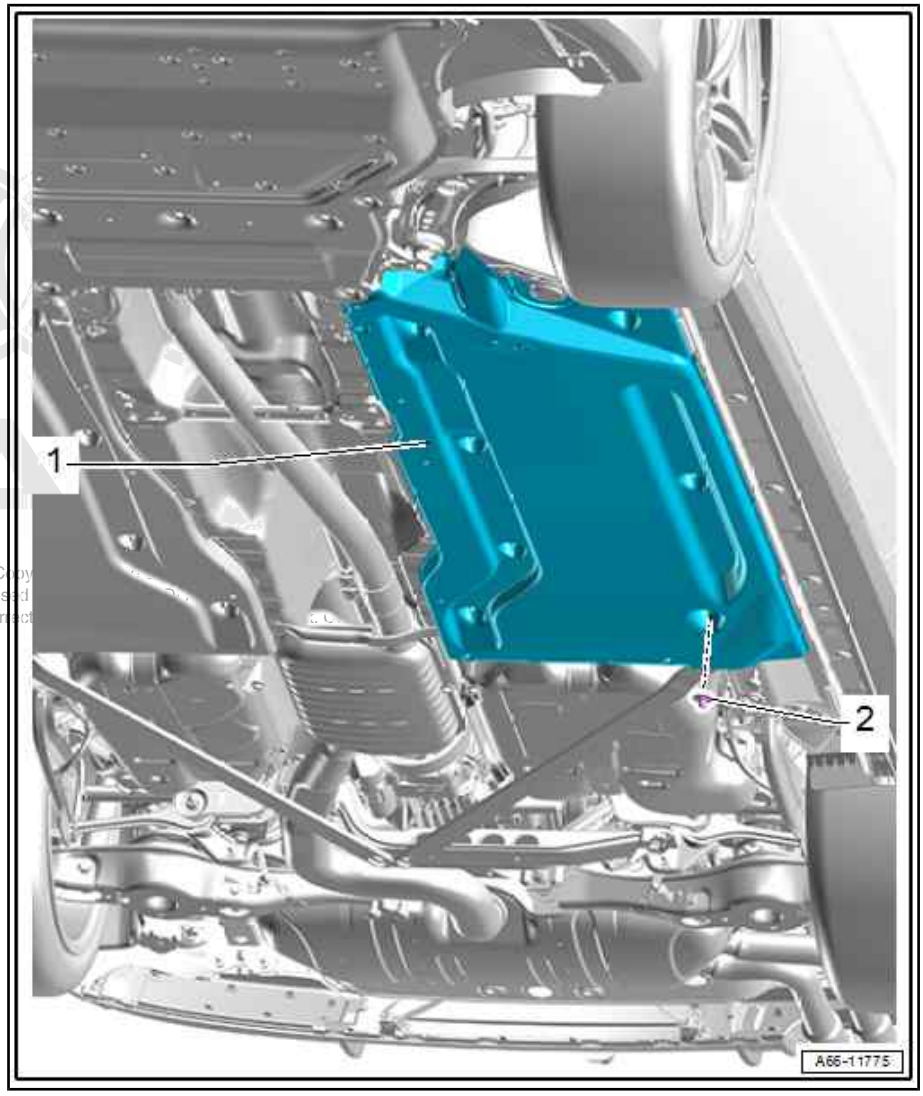
4.1 Exploded view - underbody trim

1 - Nut

- ❑ With retaining element
- ❑ 7x
- ❑ 2 Nm

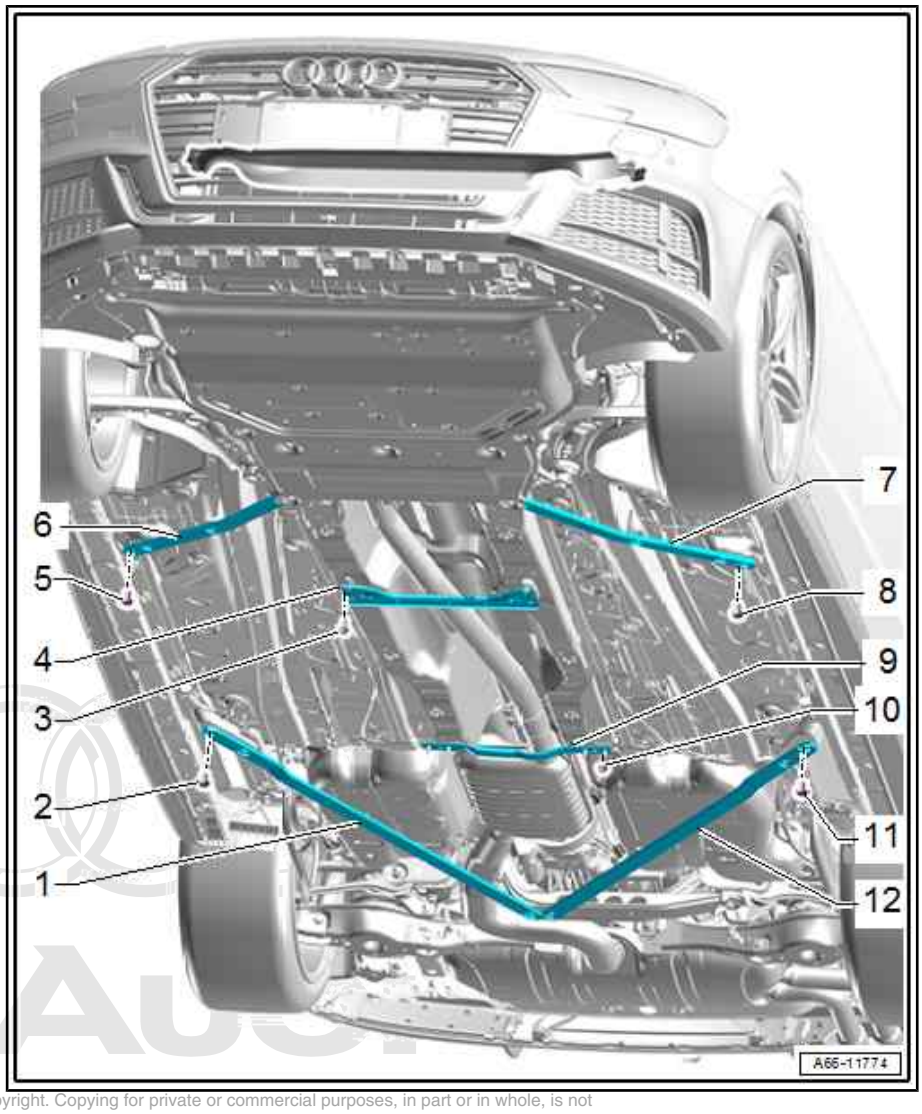
2 - Underbody trim (centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 294



Protected by copyright. Copy
permitted unless authorised
with respect to the correct

4.2 Exploded view - underbody struts



1 - Diagonal strut (rear right)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 295

2 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Vehicle must be on the ground when tightening the bolts
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 90 Nm + 45°

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 55 Nm

4 - Tunnel cross-piece (front)
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 294

5 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Vehicle must be on the ground when tightening the bolts
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 90 Nm + 45°

6 - Diagonal strut (front right)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 295

7 - Diagonal strut (front left)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 295

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Vehicle must be on the ground when tightening the bolts
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 90 Nm + 45°

9 - Tunnel cross-piece (rear)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 294

10 - Nut
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 55 Nm

11 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Vehicle must be on the ground when tightening the bolts
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 90 Nm + 45°

12 - Diagonal strut (rear left)

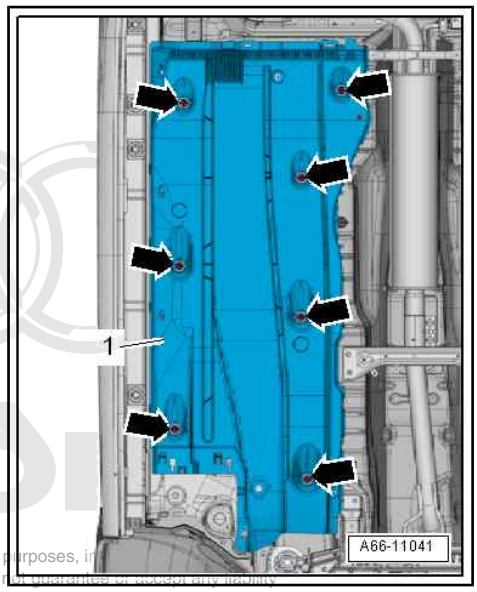
❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 295

4.3 Removing and installing underbody trim

Removing

– Unscrew nuts -arrows-.

– Detach underbody trim (centre) -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

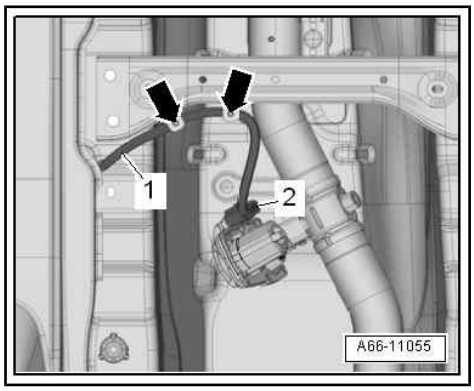
◆ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - underbody trim”, page 292 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.4 Removing and installing tunnel cross-piece

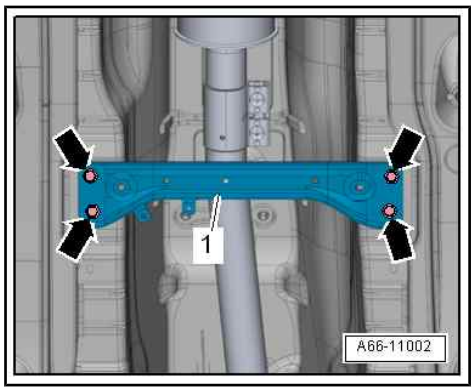
Removing tunnel cross-piece (front)

– Vehicles with TDI engine: Move electrical wiring harness -1- clear -arrows-.



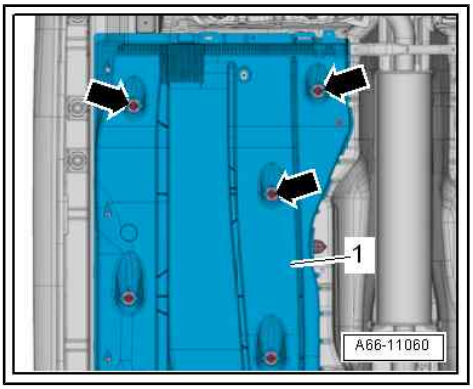
– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach tunnel cross-piece (front) -1-.



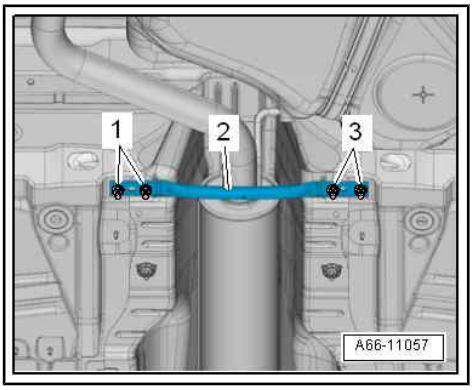
Removing tunnel cross-piece (rear)

– Unscrew nuts -arrows- and press underbody trim -1- downwards slightly.



– Remove nuts -1 and 3-.

– Detach tunnel cross-piece (rear) -2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - noise insulation”, page 290
- ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - underbody trim”, page 292 .

4.5 Removing and installing diagonal struts

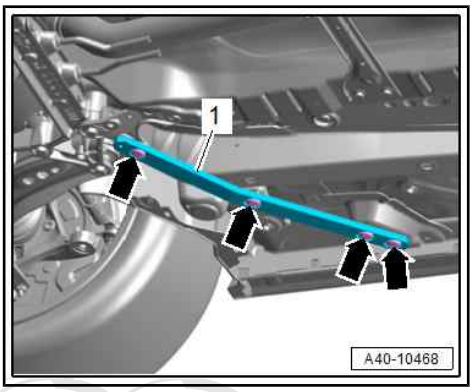
- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 293 .

Removing diagonal struts (front)

– Remove noise insulation (front) ⇒ page 291 .

– Remove underbody trim (centre) ⇒ page 294 .

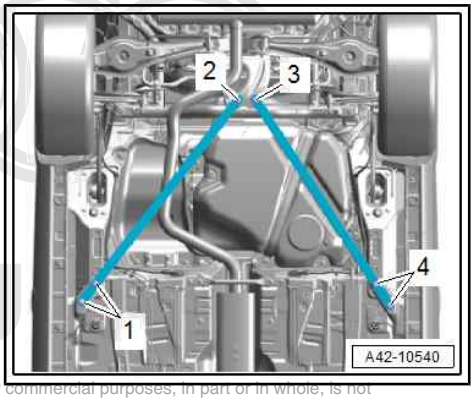
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach diagonal strut -1-.



Removing diagonal struts (rear)

– Release rear section of underbody trim (centre) and lower it slightly ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Underbody trim; Exploded view - underbody trim .

– Remove bolts -1 … 4- and detach diagonal struts.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Vehicle must be on the ground when tightening the bolts.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “4.2 Exploded view - underbody struts”, page 293 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Exterior mirrors

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - exterior mirror”, page 296

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing mirror glass”, page 297

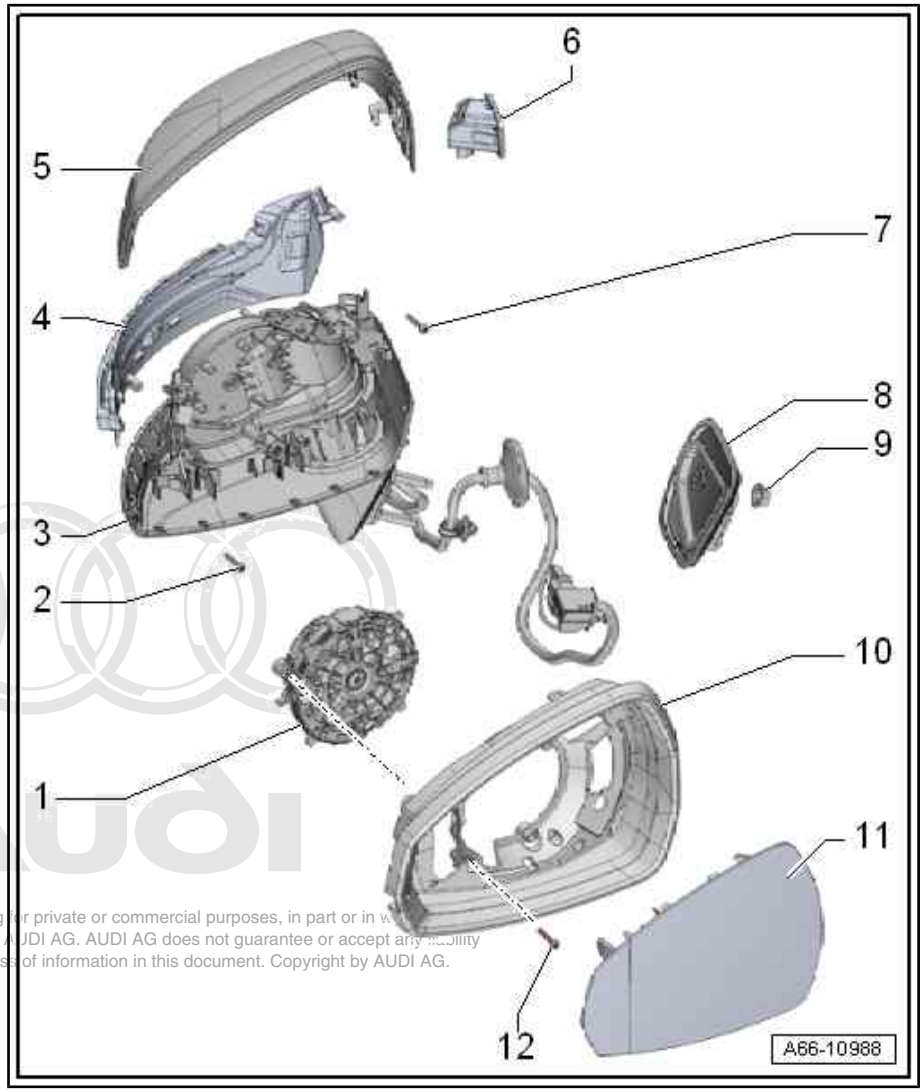
⇒ “5.3 Removing and installing mirror adjustment unit”, page 298

⇒ “5.4 Removing and installing mirror trim”, page 298

⇒ “5.5 Removing and installing cover for mirror”, page 299

⇒ “5.6 Removing and installing exterior mirror”, page 299

5.1 Exploded view - exterior mirror



1 - Mirror adjustment unit

- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 298

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

3 - Exterior mirror

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 299

4 - Turn signal repeater bulb in exterior mirror

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Lights in exterior mirror; Exploded view - lights in exterior mirror

5 - Cover for mirror

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 299

6 - Lane change assist warning lamp in exterior mirror

- ❑ Overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Lights in exterior mirror; Exploded view - lights in exterior mirror

8 - Seal (bottom)

- ❑ For mirror base
- ❑ Renew if damaged

9 - Nut

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 6 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Mirror trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 298

11 - Mirror glass

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 297

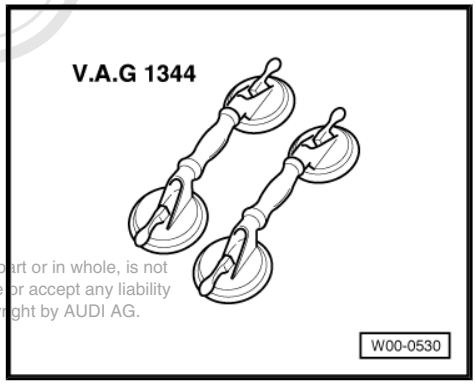
12 - Bolt

- ❑ 1x or 3x (depending on equipment version)
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

5.2 Removing and installing mirror glass

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Suction lifter - V.A.G 1344-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ♦ Protective gloves

Removing

WARNING

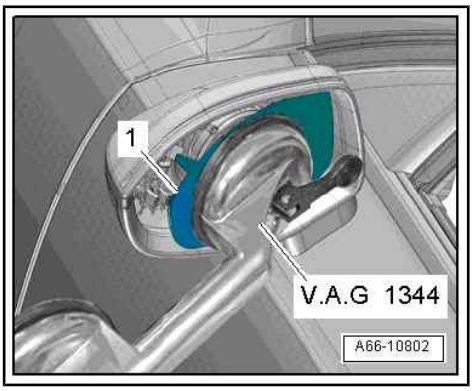
Risk of injury to hands and eyes due to glass splinters.

Danger of cutting yourself.

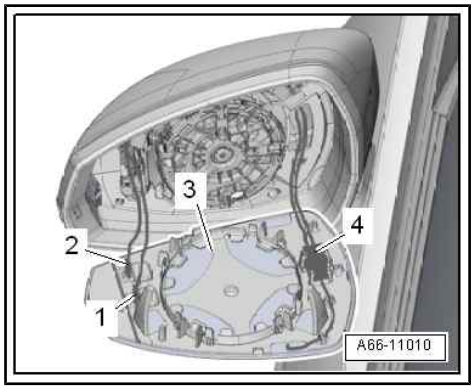
- *Wear safety goggles.*
- *Wear protective gloves.*

– Apply suction lifter - V.A.G 1344- centrally to mirror glass -1-.

– Pull mirror glass off mirror adjustment unit with suction lifter - V.A.G 1344- .



– Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 2- for mirror glass heating on rear of mirror glass -3-.
– If necessary, unclip electrical connector -4- from bracket and unplug.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Position mirror glass at mirror adjustment unit and press mirror glass on.

Note

Only exert pressure in the centre of the mirror when pressing on the mirror glass.

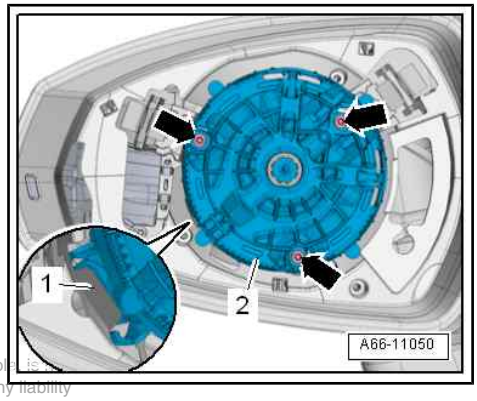
5.3 Removing and installing mirror adjustment unit

Removing

– Remove mirror glass ⇒ page 297 .

Version 1:

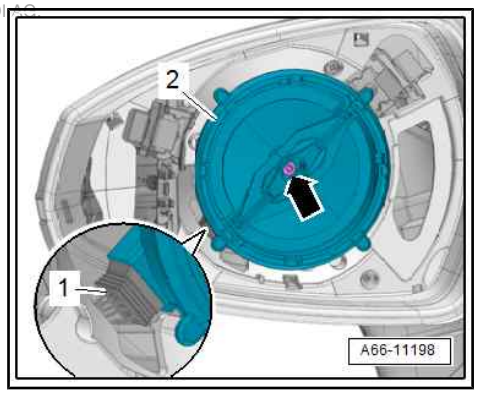
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Take adjustment unit -2- out of mounting.
– Unplug electrical connector -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Version 2:

– Remove bolt -arrow-.
– Disengage mirror adjustment unit -2- on outside of mounting.
– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Detach mirror adjustment unit.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

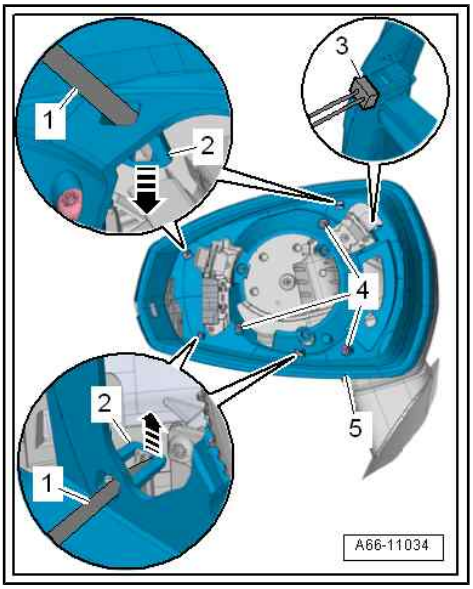
♦ ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - exterior mirror”, page 296 .

5.4 Removing and installing mirror trim

Removing

– Remove mirror adjustment unit ⇒ page 298 .

– Remove bolts -4-.
– Release retaining tabs -2- using a small screwdriver -1- -arrows-.
– Pull mirror trim -5- off towards rear.
– If necessary, pull electrical connector -3- out of mounting.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- You should hear mirror trim engage.

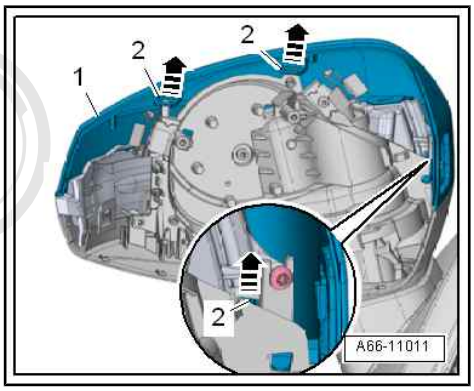
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - exterior mirror”, page 296 .

5.5 Removing and installing cover for mirror

Removing

– Remove mirror trim ⇒ page 298 .
– If fitted: Remove lane change assist warning lamp ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist .
– Release retaining tabs -2- -arrows-.
– Pull cover -1- for mirror off towards front.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - exterior mirror”, page 296 .

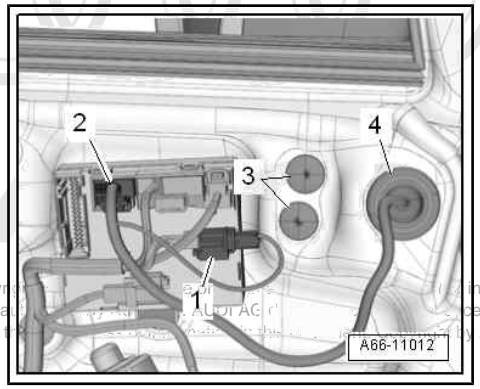
5.6 Removing and installing exterior mirror

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

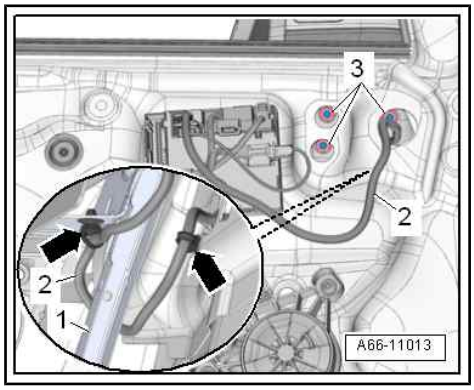
– Remove inner window slot trim strip ⇒ page 108 .
– Remove bass loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .
– Remove door window ⇒ page 256 .

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Unplug electrical wire and move electrical connector -1- clear.
– Prise out grommets -3 and 4-.



Protected by copyr... whole, is not permitted unless a... AUDI AG ... cept any liability with respect to t... y AUDI AG.

– Pull cable retainers -arrows- off door shell and move electrical wiring harness -2- clear.
– Remove nuts -3-.
– Detach mounting for mirror adjustment unit and at the same time guide wiring harness with grommet out through door shell and behind guide rail -1-.

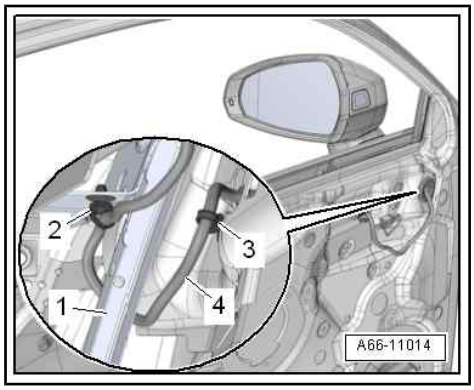


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Wiring harness must be routed and secured as described.

– Route electrical wiring harness -4- behind guide rail -1- for door window and secure cable retainers -2, 3- on door shell.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - exterior mirror”, page 296 .

6 Wheel housing liners

⇒ “6.1 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front)”, page 301

⇒ “6.2 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (rear)”, page 302

⇒ “6.3 Removing and installing wheel housing liner (front)”, page 303

⇒ “6.4 Removing and installing wheel housing liner (rear)”, page 304

6.1 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front)

1 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

2 - Grille for vented air
- ❑ For vehicles with auxiliary side radiator
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 303

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 9x
- ❑ 2 Nm

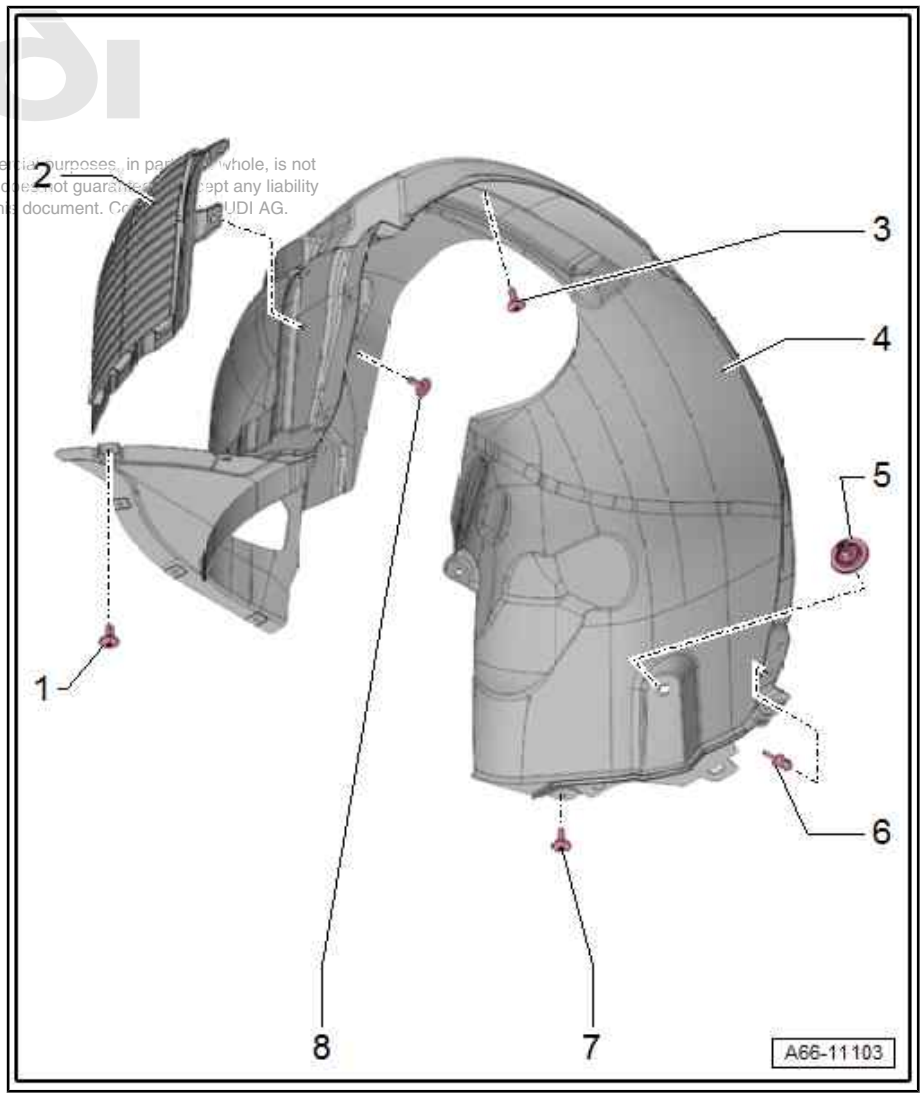
4 - Wheel housing liner (front)
- ❑ Different versions ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 303

5 - Nut
- ❑ 2 Nm

6 - Spreader rivet
- ❑ 5x

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 2 Nm

8 - Spreader rivet
- ❑ 4x



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

6.2 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (rear)

1 - Spreader rivet
- ❑ 3x

2 - Cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 306

3 - Wheel spoiler (rear)
- ❑ To remove, loosen front section of wheel housing liner (rear) and press to the side ⇒ page 304 .

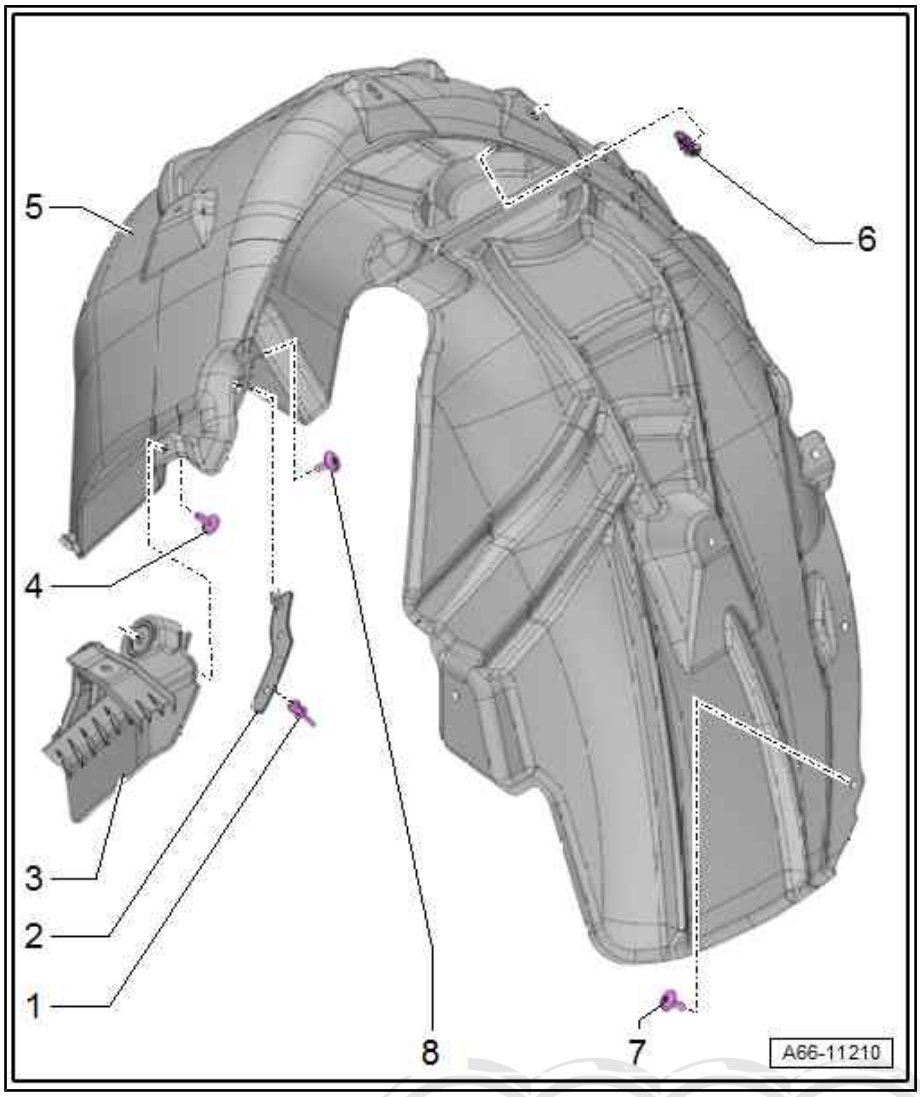
4 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - Wheel housing liner (rear)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 304

6 - Retaining clip
- ❑ 3x

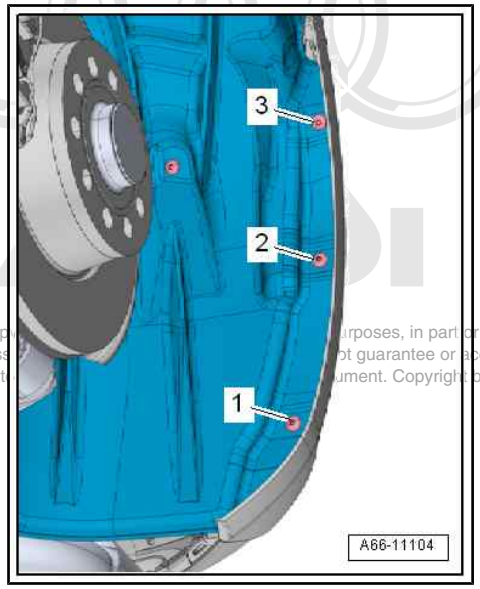
7 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 302

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2 Nm



Wheel housing liner - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolts to 2 Nm in sequence -1 … 3-.



Protected by cop urposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless ot guarantee or accept any liability with respect t ument. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.3 Removing and installing wheel housing liner (front)

⇒ “6.3.1 Removing and installing wheel housing liner (front)”, page 303

⇒ “6.3.2 Removing and installing grille for vented air”, page 303

6.3.1 Removing and installing wheel housing liner (front)

Removing

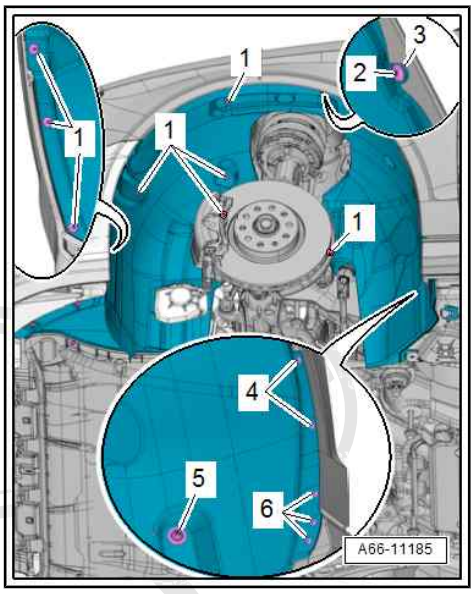
- Front wheel removed ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 44 ; Wheels and tyres .

– Remove bolts -1-.

– Unscrew bolt -2- and disengage retainer -3- at wing panel.

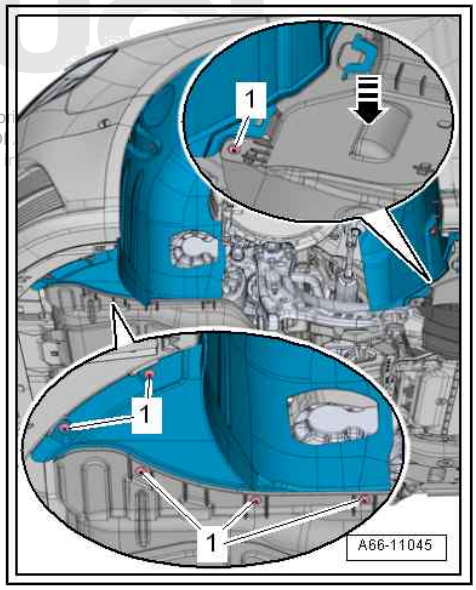
– Unscrew nut -5-.

– Remove spreader rivets -4 and 6-.



– Remove bolts -1-.

– Release fastener -arrow- and take out wheel housing liner.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI
with respect to the correctness of

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “6.1 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front)”, page 301

6.3.2 Removing and installing grille for vented air

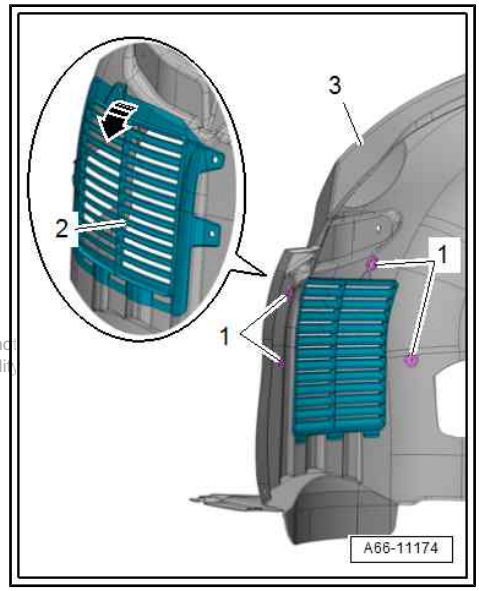
Removing

– Remove wheel housing liner (front) ⇒ page 303 .

– Remove spreader rivets -1-.
– Detach grille -2- from wheel housing liner -3- -arrow-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.4 Removing and installing wheel housing liner (rear)

⇒ "6.4.1 Removing and installing wheel housing liner (rear)", page 304

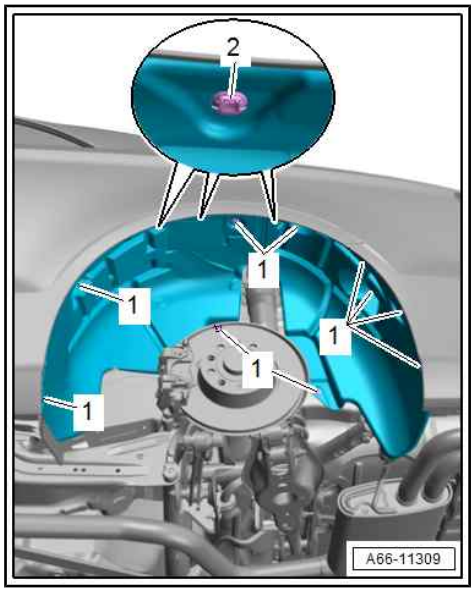
⇒ "6.4.2 Removing and installing cover", page 306

6.4.1 Removing and installing wheel housing liner (rear)

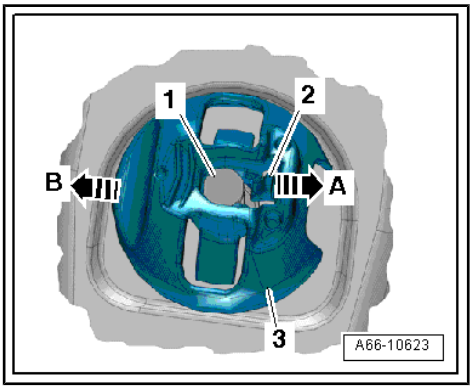
Removing

- Rear wheel removed ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 44 ; Wheels and tyres .

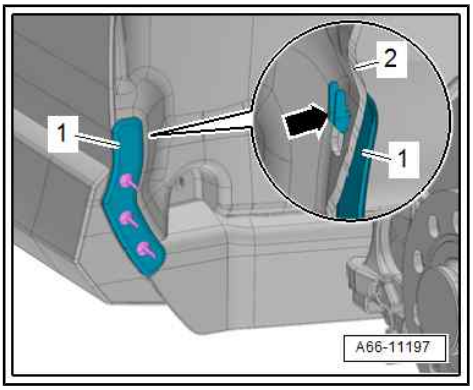
– Remove bolts -1-.
– Detach retaining clips -2- from wheel housing liner.



– To detach retaining clip -3-, use narrow long-nose pliers to disengage release lever -2- in direction of -arrow A- and press it off retaining pin -1- in direction of -arrow B-.



– Take out wheel housing liner -2- and, if fitted, detach from cover -1- -arrow-.



– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach wheel spoiler -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

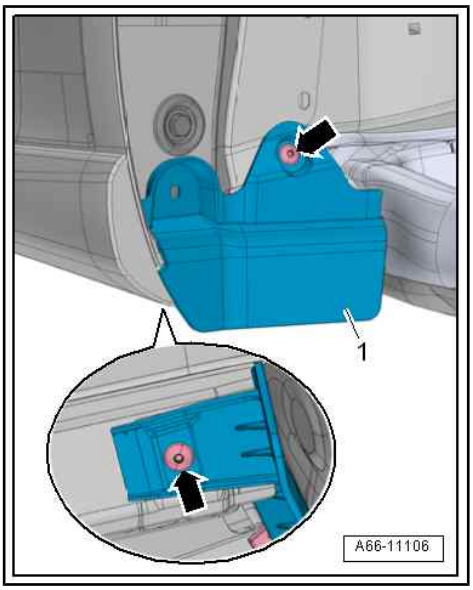
– After fitting, check that retaining clip is locked in position.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ Fig. ""Wheel housing liner - tightening torque and sequence"" , page 302 .

◆ ⇒ "6.2 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (rear)", page 302 .

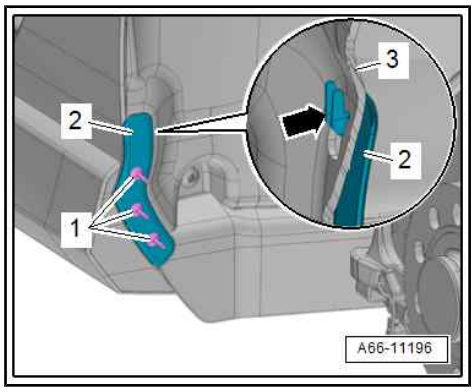


6.4.2 Removing and installing cover

Removing

– Remove spreader rivets -1-.

– Disengage cover -2- from wheel housing liner -3- -arrow- and detach.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7 Model badges and brand emblems

⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - model badges and brand emblems”, page 307

⇒ “7.2 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on rear”, page 308

⇒ “7.3 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on side”, page 309

⇒ “7.4 General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems”, page 309

⇒ “7.5 Removing and installing model badges and emblems for radiator grille”, page 310

7.1 Exploded view - model badges and brand emblems

1 - Audi rings

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 310

2 - S3 emblem

- ❑ Equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 311

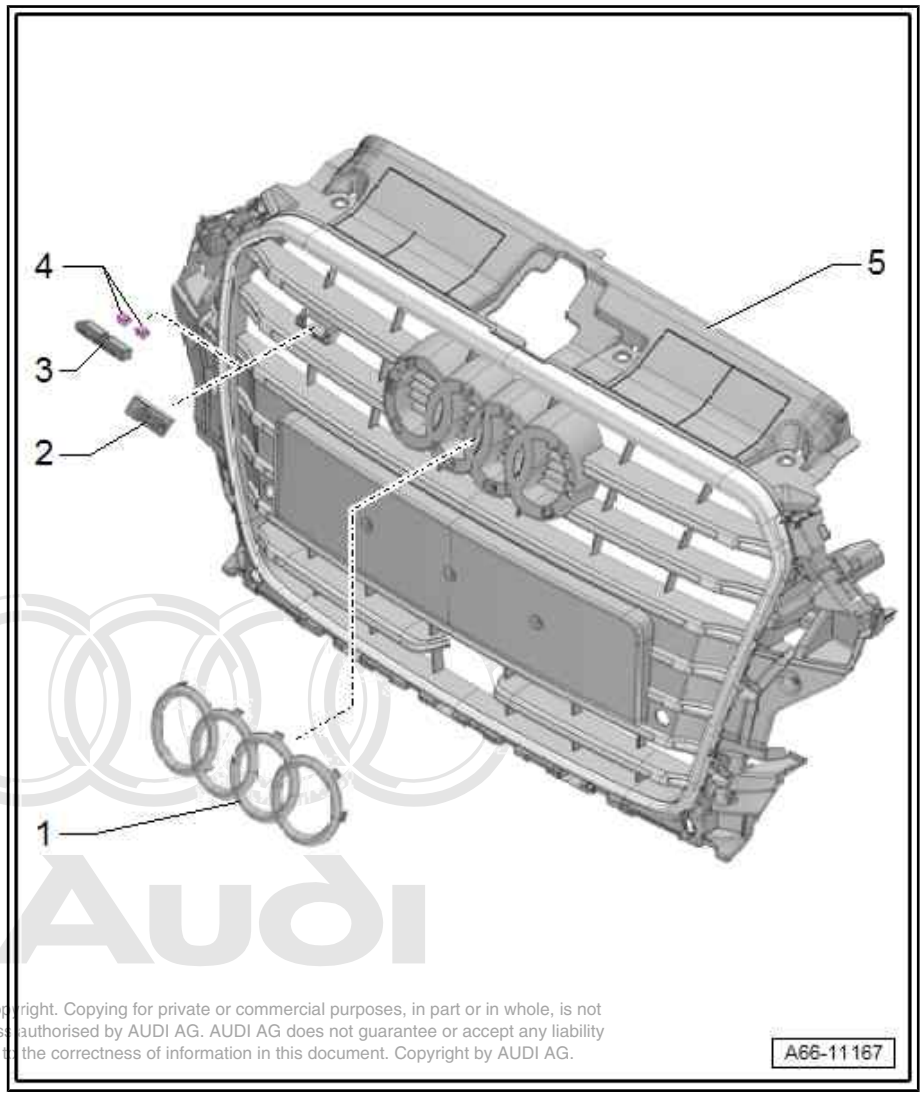
3 - quattro emblem

- ❑ Equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 310

4 - Retaining clips

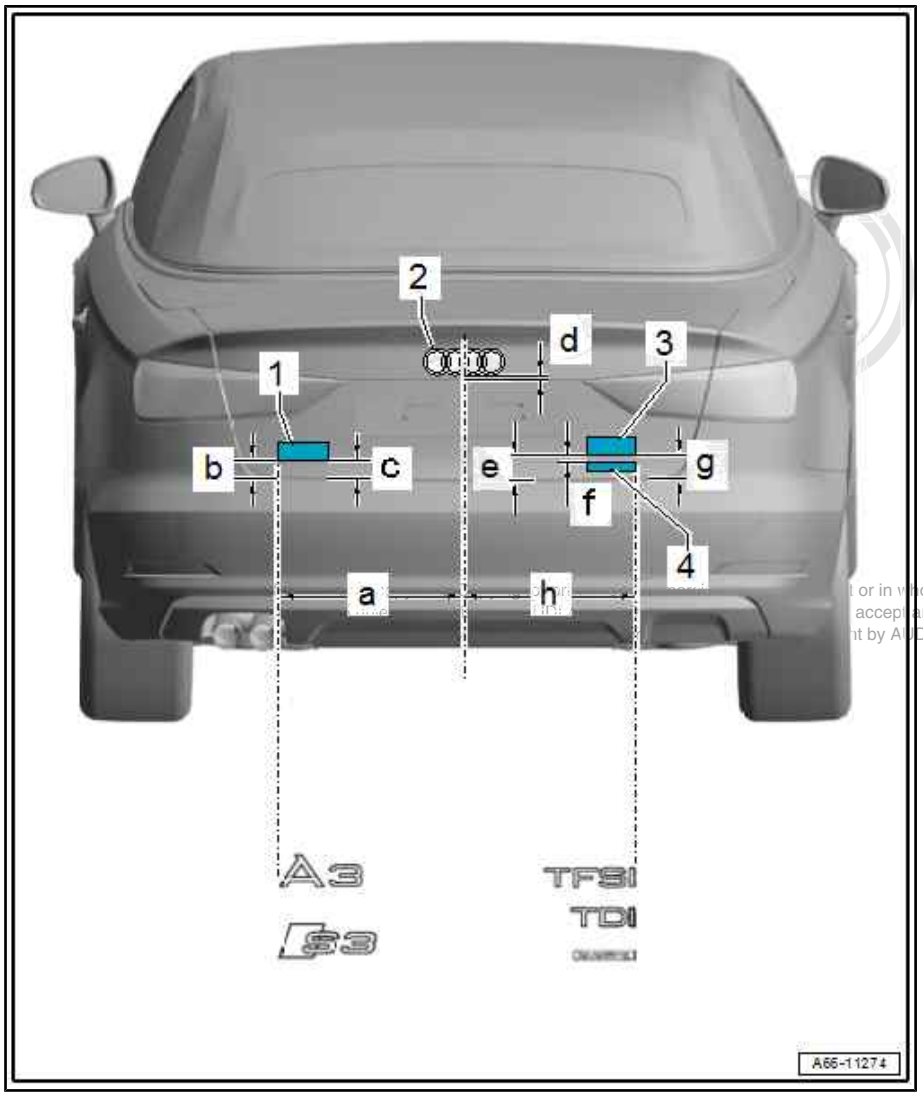
5 - Radiator grille

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 264



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.2 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on rear



t or in whole, is not
accept any liability
nt by AUDI AG.

Emblem (left-side)

-1- Emblem

Emblem (centre)

-2- Audi rings

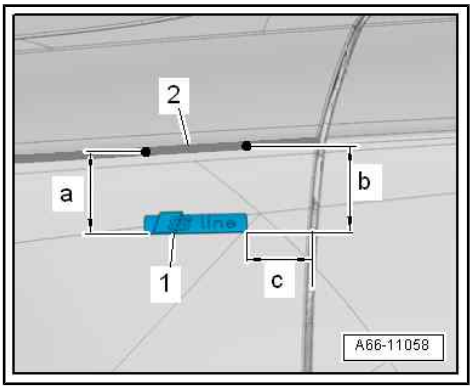
Dimension -d- = 12 mm

Emblem (right-side)

-3- Engine version

-4- “quattro” emblem

7.3 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on side



- Dimension -a- = 75 mm
- Dimension -b- = 78 mm
- Dimension -c- = 33 mm

-1- »S line« emblem

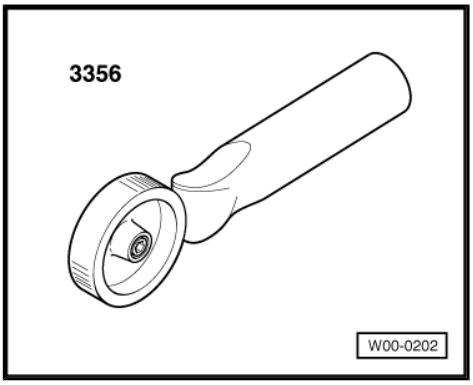
-2- Reference edge in wing panel

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.4 General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Roller - 3356-



♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

♦ Applicator - D 009 500 25-

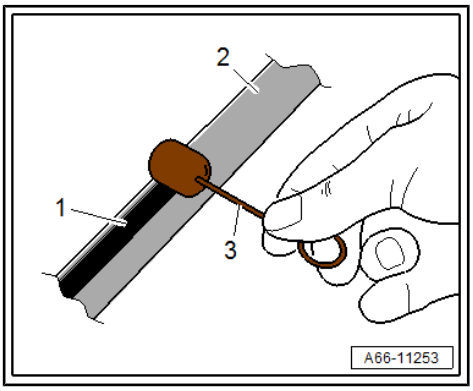
♦ Primer - D 355 205 A2-

- Any model badges and brand emblems that are removed must be renewed.
- The vehicle and the model badges/brand emblems must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- If flash-off time exceeds three hours, primer - D 355 205 A2- must be applied again.

– Completely remove any residual adhesive.

– Clean bonding surfaces with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .

– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area -2- on painted surface using applicator - D 009 500 25- -3- and allow to flash off.



– Heat bonding surfaces with a hot air blower to approx. 40°C.

– After installing, press on emblems with roller.

- Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 0.5 hours.

7.5 Removing and installing model badges and emblems for radiator grille

⇒ “7.5.1 Removing and installing Audi emblem”, page 310

⇒ “7.5.2 Removing and installing quattro emblem - vehicles up to model year 2016”, page 310

⇒ “7.5.3 Removing and installing quattro emblem - vehicles from model year 2017 onwards”, page 311

⇒ “7.5.4 Removing and installing S3 emblem”, page 311

7.5.1 Removing and installing Audi emblem

- General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems ⇒ page 309

Removing

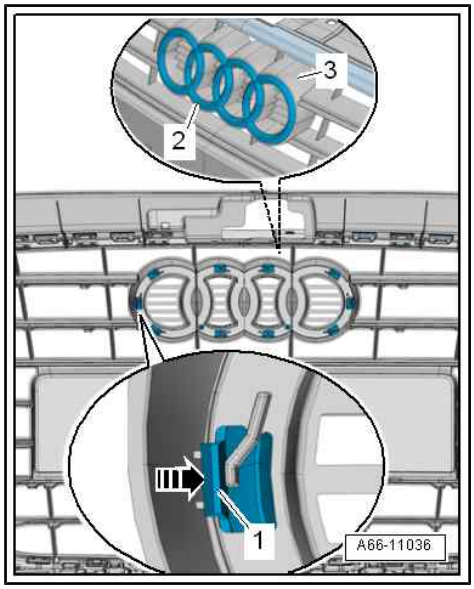
– Remove bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 202 .

– Vehicles from model year 2017 onwards: Remove closure plate for radiator grille ⇒ page 269 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– To release, press retaining catch -1- carefully in direction of -arrow-.

– Detach emblem -2- from radiator grille -3-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

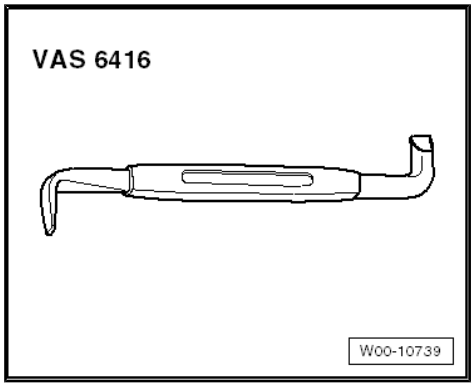
– Press on emblem until it engages audibly.

7.5.2 Removing and installing quattro emblem - vehicles up to model year 2016

- General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems ⇒ page 309

Special tools and workshop equipment required

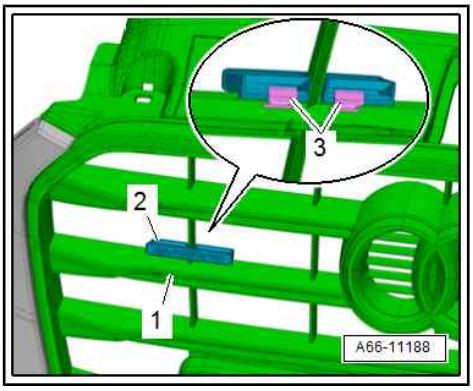
♦ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6416-



Removing

– Press off retaining clips -3- using angled screwdriver -VAS 6416- .

– Take quattro emblem -2- out of radiator grille -1-.



Note

If the emblem cannot be removed as described, the bumper cover (front) must be removed *⇒ page 202* *.*

Installing

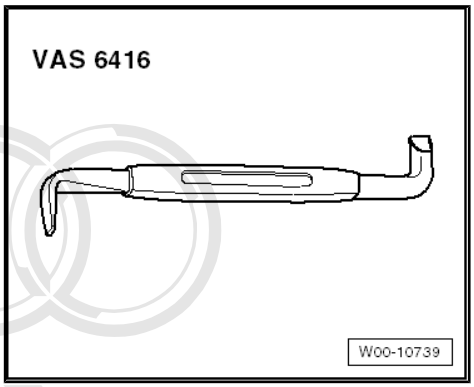
Install in reverse order of removal.

7.5.3 Removing and installing quattro emblem - vehicles from model year 2017 on-wards

- General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems ⇒ page 309

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6416-

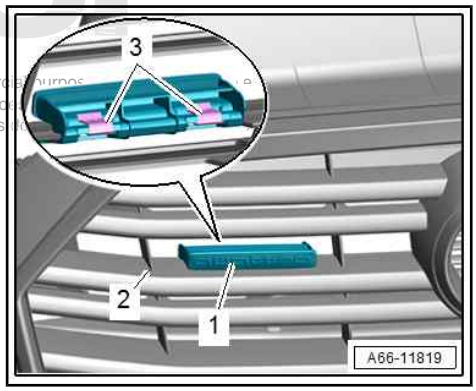


Removing

– Press off retaining clips -3- using angled screwdriver -VAS 6416- .

– Take quattro emblem -1- out of radiator grille -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



Note

If the emblem cannot be removed as described, the bumper cover (front) must be removed *⇒ page 202* *.*

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

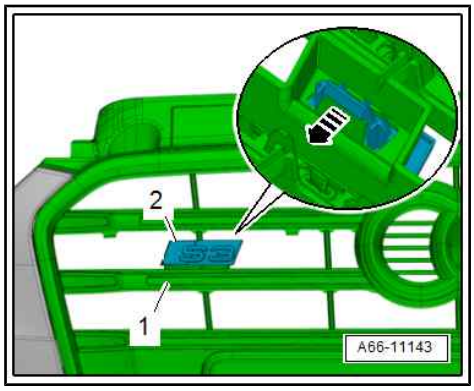
7.5.4 Removing and installing S3 emblem

- General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems ⇒ page 309

Removing

– Reach through openings on radiator grille and release fastener -arrow-.

– Take S3 emblem -2- out of radiator grille -1-.



Note

If the emblem cannot be removed as described, the bumper cover (front) must be removed ⇒ page 202 .

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Position S3 emblem on radiator grille and press it on until it engages audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 Towing bracket

⇒ “8.1 Exploded view - towing bracket”, page 313

⇒ “8.2 Removing and installing trailer detector control unit J345 ”, page 313

8.1 Exploded view - towing bracket

1 - Trailer socket - U10-

- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Towing bracket
- ❑ Pin assignment ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Towing bracket

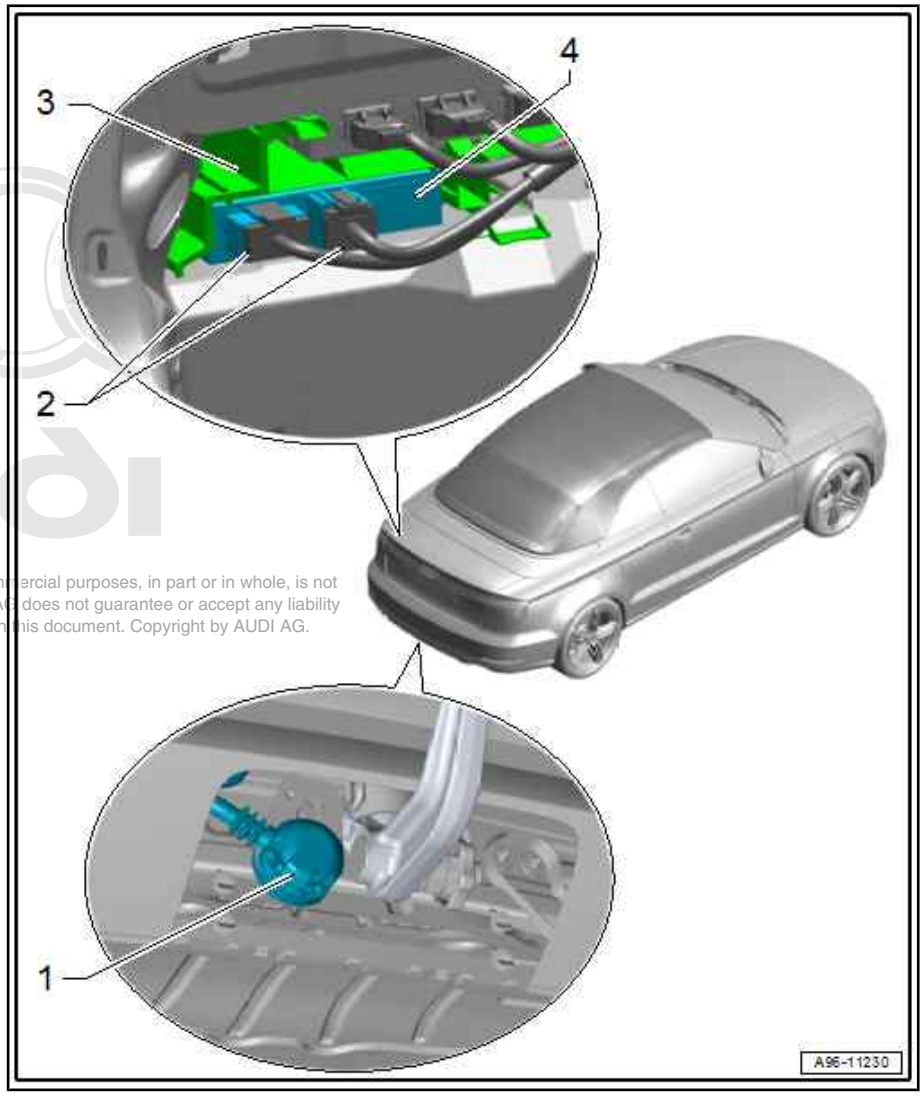
2 - Electrical connectors

3 - Retaining frame

- ❑ For trailer detector control unit - J345-

4 - Trailer detector control unit - J345-

- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 313



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8.2 Removing and installing trailer detector control unit - J345-

Note

If renewing the control unit, select the function “Replace control unit” for the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Removing

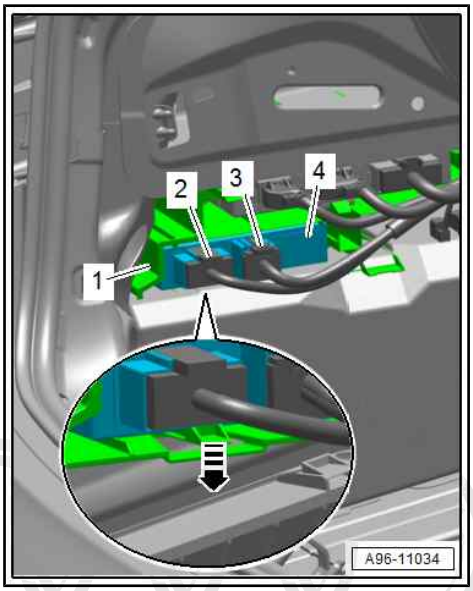
– Remove luggage compartment side trim (left-side) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim

panels; Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim .

Manual towing bracket:

– Unplug electrical connectors -2 and 3-.

– Release retaining tab -arrow- and pull trailer detector control unit -4- out of retaining frame -1-.



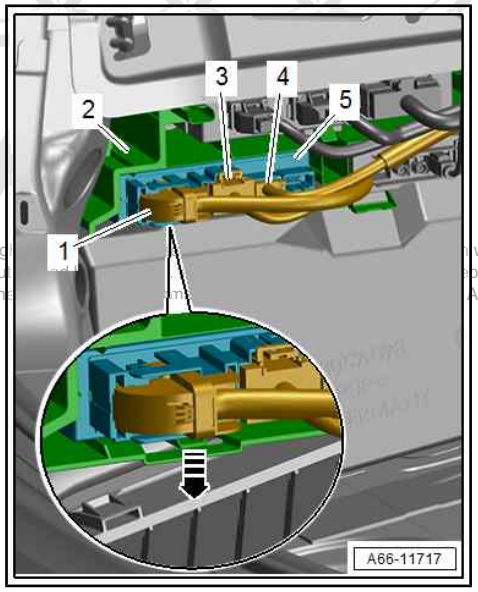
Note

If the retaining tab cannot be released, pull the hydraulic pump out of the side compartment.

Electric towing bracket:

– Unplug electrical connectors -1, 3, 4-.

– Release retaining tab -arrow- and pull trailer detector control unit -5- out of retaining frame -2-.



Note

If the retaining tab cannot be released, pull the hydraulic pump out of the side compartment.

Protected by copyrig whole, is not
permitted unless au ot any liability
with respect to th AUDI AG.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.